

New Hello!

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

Prepared by
Said Darahem
&

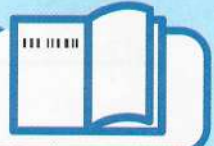
A Group of Experts in Teaching English

راجع

إجاباتك

نزل إجابات
الكتاب بصيغة

PDF



Contents

Module 1 Where I live

Unit 1	Around town	5
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1	53
Unit 2	Let's go shopping	57
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2	107
Unit 3	My community	111
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3	155
Review	Review A	159

Module 2 Young people

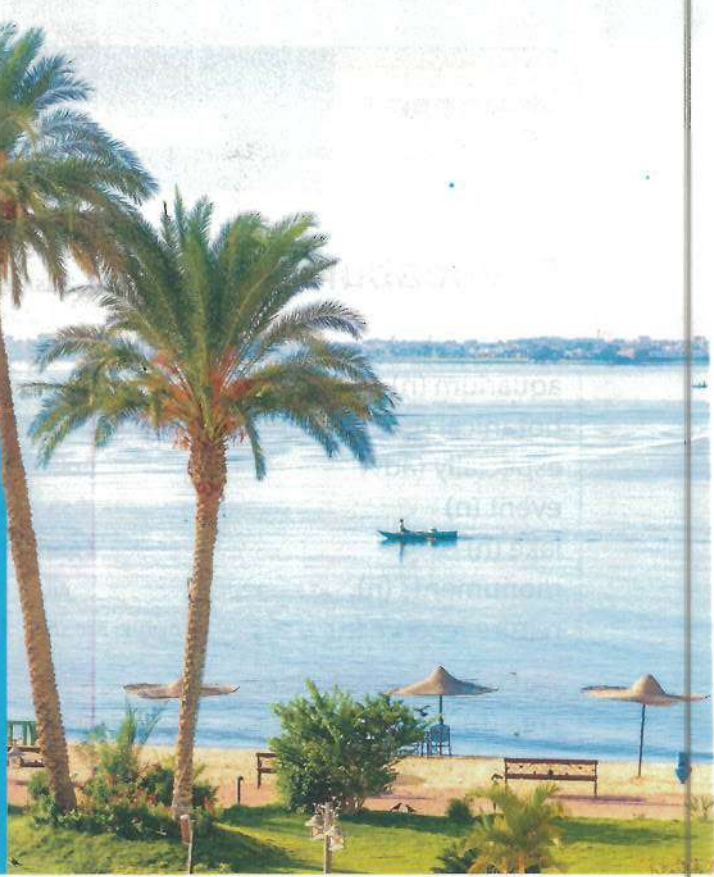
Unit 4	Have you ever travelled by plane?	163
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4	206
Unit 5	Young role models	210
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5	254
Unit 6	What's wrong?	258
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6	312
Review	Review B	316
	Challenging Questions Answers	319

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2024-2025
الفصل الدراسي الأول

Month	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year Three (SB + WB)		
September	Unit 1	December	Units 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Units 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2025)	General Revision
November	Review A + Units 4 & 5		

Unit 1

AROUND TOWN



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport; a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend
- Writing** A fact file; a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email
- Listening** Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out
- Speaking** Giving directions; talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport; making suggestions
- Language** The present simple for scheduled events
- Life Skills** Decision making; respect for diversity



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n)	معرض الأحياء المائية	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/أمن
botanical gardens (n)	حدائق نباتية	ruins (n)	أطلال/أنقاض
especially (adv)	خاصة	restaurant (n)	مطعم
event (n)	حدث	shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
lake (n)	بحيرة	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي
monuments (n)	أثار	station (n)	محطة
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	traffic (n)	حركة المرور

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	dictionary (n)	قاموس
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من/يفحص	include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمن
daughter (n)	ابنة	machine (n)	آلة
describe (d) (v)	يصف	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete:

dictionary – Ruins – station

- 1 are like big, old buildings that are all broken and falling apart.
- 2 You can use a to the meaning of difficult words.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
attractive (adj)	جذاب	beautiful	جميل	ugly/unattractive	قبيح
careful (adj)	حريص	cautious	حذر	careless	مهمل
expensive (adj)	غالي الثمن	costly	مكلف	cheap/inexpensive	رخيص الثمن
helpful (adj)	مفيد	useful	مفيد/نافع	useless	عديم الفائدة
important (adj)	هام/مهم	essential	هام/أساسي	unimportant	غير هام
interesting (adj)	شيق	exciting	مثير	boring	ممل

(n) = noun

(adj) = adjective

(prep) = preposition

(v) = verb

(adv) = adverb

(conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

near (adj)	قريب	close	قريب	far/distant	بعيد
peaceful (adj)	هادئ	quiet/calm	هادئ	noisy	صاخب
usual (adj)	معتاد	common/normal	شائع/عادي	unusual	غير معتاد

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do > a job	يؤدي وظيفة/مهمة	take > turns	يتبادل الأدوار
go > straight on	اذهب مباشرة إلى	turn > left/right	انعطف يساراً/يميناً

Prepositions

حروف الجر

compare with	يقارن بـ	late for	متأخر على
find out	يكشف	on/at the corner	على الناصية
interested in	مهتم بـ	run through	يجري عبر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
put	put	put
win	won	won

Check Point

Choose and complete:

won - on - for - take - boring

- It's important to turns when talking in a group.
- Look, there's a flower shop the corner!
- I have watched this film three times. It's very interesting.
The opposite of "interesting" is ".....".
- I am very happy because I the writing competition.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللفظية وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

aquarium معرض الأحياء المائية	a place where you can see beautiful fish
bank بنك	a place where you can borrow and save money
botanical garden حديقة نباتية	a place where people can see trees and other interesting plants
corner ناصية/زاوية	a place where two roads meet
especially خاصة	more than usual
lake بحيرة	a large area of water with the land around it

library (مكتبة (للقراءة)	a place where you can borrow and read books	(1) يُذكر
monument أثر	something that people build to remind ⁽¹⁾ us of an important person or event	
sports centre مركز رياضي	a place where you can play volleyball, tennis and other sports	(2) الاتجاه الأمامي
straight on مباشرة/في خط مستقيم	in a forward direction ⁽²⁾ , not left or right	
traffic حركة المرور	the cars, lorries, motorbikes ⁽³⁾ , etc. that use a road	(3) دراجات نارية

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
care (n) رعاية	-ful	تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة	careful (adj) حريص/حذر
help (v) يساعد			helpful (adj) مساعد/متعاون
peace (n) سلام			peaceful (adj) هادئ/آمن
use (v) يستخدم			useful (adj) مفيد
botany (n) علم النبات	-ical	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	botanical (adj) نباتي
history (n) تاريخ			historical (adj) تاريخي
pollute (v) يلوث	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pollution (n) تلوث
attract (v) يجذب	-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	attractive (adj) جذاب

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	attractive (adj) جذاب	تعطى عكس الصفة	unattractive غير جذاب
	important (adj) مهم/هام		unimportant غير هام
	interesting (adj) شيق		uninteresting غير شيق
	true (adj) صح		untrue غير صحيح
	usual (adj) معتاد		unusual غير معتاد
in-	expensive (adj) غالي الثمن		inexpensive رخيص الثمن

Study these Places

قم بدراسة هذه الأماكن

Ismailia الإسماعيلية	the Natural Science Museum متحف العلوم الطبيعية
Port Said بورسعيد	the Suez Canal قناة السويس
Suez السويس	

1

عند الافادة عن الوصول لمكان ما نستخدم الأفعال التالية:

reach + يصل إلى مكان

- The Suez Canal runs through the city before it **reaches** the sea.

get to + يصل إلى مكان

- Peter **got to** Cairo last month.

arrive in + يصل إلى بلد/مدينة (مدينة/دولة)

- Mazin **arrived in** London last Monday.

arrive at + يصل إلى مكان داخل المدينة (مكتب/بيت/مدرسة)

- Lobna **arrived at** school on time.

2

hear + (v-ing)

يسمع (جزءاً من الحدث)

- You can only **hear** the birds **singing**.

hear + inf.

يسمع (الحدث كله)

- She **heard** the phone **ring** and went to answer it.

3

library

مكتبة (لقراءة الكتب فيها أو استعارة الكتب منها)

bookshop

مكتبة (لبيع وشراء الكتب)

- I **borrowed** two books from the **library**.

- My father **bought** that book from the **bookshop**.

4

Superlative

صيغة التفضيل

تُحذف **the** في صيغة التفضيل (المقارنة بين مجموعة) إذا جاء قبلها (s) الملكية.

- The Sphinx in Giza is perhaps **Egypt's most** famous monument.

5

love/enjoy + (v-ing)/(noun)

يحب/يستمتع بـ

- I **love** **watching** fish.

- I **enjoy** **playing** chess.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is open every day. We can read or borrow books at any time.
a) museum b) library c) station d) bookshop
- I like to school on time.
a) get b) go c) reach d) arrive
- I enjoy pretty pictures with bright colours.
a) to painting b) painting c) to paint d) paint
- When we go to the beach, we can hear the waves
a) crashed b) crashes c) crashing d) to crash

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 1

Pre-listening question: - How far is your school from your house?

Dalia wants to go to the library. Listen and order the phrases her friend Mona uses to give her directions from the station. **SB page 3**

Mona Hello, Dalia. I'm at the library. Where are you?

Dalia Hi, Mona. I'm next to the **station**⁽¹⁾.

How do I get to the library?

Mona It's easy. From the station, **go straight on**⁽²⁾.

Dalia **How far**?⁽³⁾

Mona For about 20 metres.

Dalia OK. Do I go past the sports centre?

Mona Yes, but then **turn left**⁽⁴⁾.

Dalia OK.

Mona **Walk past**⁽⁵⁾ the **botanical gardens**⁽⁶⁾.

Dalia I'm walking past them now.

Mona Great! After the botanical gardens, turn right ...

Dalia Turn right after the botanical gardens ... OK.

Mona Then take the second road on the right.

Can you see a restaurant?

Dalia I think I can see it. It's **on the corner**⁽⁷⁾.

Mona Walk past the restaurant. The library is **between**⁽⁸⁾ the restaurant and the museum, **opposite**⁽⁹⁾ the bank.

Dalia Thanks, Mona. See you soon!



(1) محطة

(2) اذهب مباشرة

(3) كم تبعد؟

(4) اتجه يساراً

(5) امش صافياً

(6) الحدائق النباتية

(7) على الناصية

(8) بين

(9) مقابل

Post-listening questions:

1 What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

2 Where is the library?

3 How far is the library from the station?

Pre-listening question: - Describe your city.

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Listen to Nader and Judy talking about where they live.

Are these sentences T (true) or F (false)? Correct the false sentences. SB page 5

Nader My name's Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very **historical**⁽¹⁾ city, with lots of famous buildings, **ruins**⁽²⁾ and **monuments**⁽³⁾, but it's a modern city too, and there are lots of things to do here.

At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park, but sometimes we go to a **museum**⁽⁴⁾ or to the **aquarium**⁽⁵⁾. I love watching the fish! On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing **chess**⁽⁶⁾ with my grandad. He's very good at it, but sometimes I win!

Judy My name's Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city, with about one and a half million people, and there's always a lot to do at the weekend. On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this! There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the **nature reserve**⁽⁷⁾. On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the **sports centre**⁽⁸⁾ for my squash lesson. It's my favourite sport.



(1) تاريخي

(2) أنقاض / أطلال

(3) آثار

(4) متحف

(5) معرض الأحياء المائية

(6) شطرنج

(7) محمية طبيعية

(8) مركز رياضي



Post-listening questions:

1 Would you like to spend your weekend like Nader? Why/ Why not?

2 Do you think Aswan is a good place for shopping? Why?

4. Choose the correct prepositions.

WB page 73

I live **in** a small village in the south of Egypt. **At** the weekend, I usually do the same things. **On** Saturdays, I get up **at** 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. **At** lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, **in** the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do?



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Be careful while crossing the street. "Careful" is similar in meaning to
a) ugly b) attractive c) cautious d) useful
- There isn't a lot of traffic in Ismailia, so there isn't much
a) peace b) care c) pollution d) nature
- A is a place where two roads meet.
a) lake b) library c) bank d) corner
- "....." means something that people build to remind us of an important person or event.
a) A sports centre b) A monument
c) A lake d) A botanical garden
- I went to bed at my usual time. To get the antonym of "usual", add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) dis- c) re- d) in-
- My new phone is very expensive. The synonym of "expensive" is ".....".
a) wide b) useless c) cheap d) costly
- My uncle is very good at sports, and he is good at handball. WB
a) special b) especially c) private d) real
- A map can be helpful for finding your way in a new place. It is very
a) useless b) useful c) usual d) unusual
- People like to visit the of ancient Greece to learn about history.
a) stations b) reserves c) events d) ruins
- My grandparents' house is far. "Far" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) near b) distant c) costly d) cheap
- There are buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. SB
a) terrible b) horrible c) attractive d) ugly
- To get the noun of the verb "pollute", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive b) -ous c) -ful d) -ion
- Let's read this interesting book. The synonym of "interesting" is ".....".
a) excited b) ugly c) boring d) exciting
- This lesson isimportant. It isn't essential.
a) in- b) un- c) dis- d) im-
- Let's go to the nature and look at beautiful and colourful birds.
a) machine b) lake c) centre d) reserve

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Longman

sports – excited – visits – botanical – shopping – visit

We are going to have a tour today. We intend to (1)..... the Grand Egyptian Museum. It opens at 8 a.m. I'm sure we'll be (2)..... to see the wonderful monuments there. We will also go to the (3)..... gardens. My friend Taher won't come with us because he is going to the (4)..... centre to do his favourite sport as usual.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is a place where you can see beautiful fish. الأفصر ٢٠٢٤
 a) bank b) aquarium c) museum d) restaurant
- The suffix "....." gives the adjective of the noun "peace". الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ness b) -est c) -tion d) -ful
- There are many monuments and ruins in Luxor. The word "monuments" here refers to things and buildings. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
 a) historical b) modern c) new d) fashionable
- A is a large area of water with land around it. جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٢
 a) market b) lake c) mountain d) city
- The is a place where you can borrow, save or exchange money. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a) library b) lake c) bank d) aquarium
- There are many attractive buildings and lots of gardens in "New El-Alamein City". The word "attractive" means القنوية ٢٠٢٣
 a) dangerous b) dirty c) beautiful d) horrible
- To get the adjective of "help", we can add the suffix ".....". السويس ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ly b) -ful c) -able d) -ment
- On Fridays early morning, the streets are very peaceful. The synonym of the word "peaceful" is ".....". القنوية ٢٠٢٤
 a) quiet b) stupid c) brave d) noisy
- The antonym of the word "close" is ".....". الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
 a) near b) nearby c) neighbouring d) distant
- "....." means cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road. البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
 a) Sports centre b) Aquarium c) Monument d) Traffic
- I left home earlier than usual. The synonym of the word "usual" is ".....".
 a) normal b) strange c) unusual d) straight
- A large park or open area where scientists study plants and trees, and people can visit is called a/an السويس ٢٠٢٤
 a) aquarium b) ferry c) raft d) botanical garden

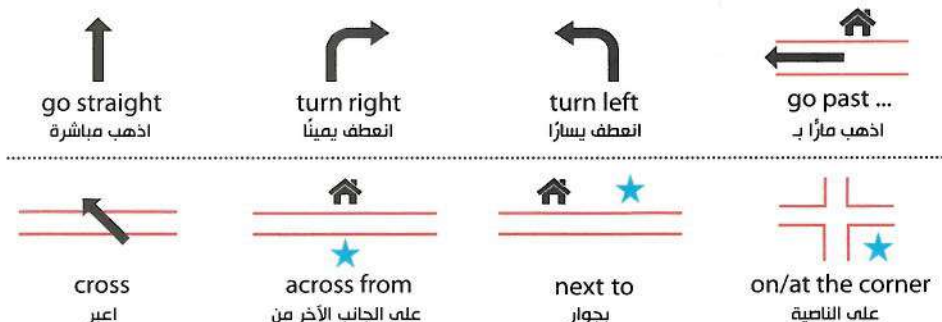
لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

1 Giving directions

إعطاء الاتجاهات



١. عند وصف مكان لشخص نستخدم:

تكملة الجملة **complement** + (مصدر الفعل). **Inf.**

- Turn right/left at the traffic lights.
- Go straight on this road. It's on the corner.

ويمكن استخدام حروف الجر التالية لوصف الاتجاهات:

next to	بجوار	on the right/left	على اليمين/اليسار
between ... and ...	بين (اثنين)	walk/go past	اذهب/امش ماراً بـ
go straight on	اذهب مباشرة	on/at the corner	على الناصية/الركن
opposite	في مقابل/مواجهة	from ... to ...	من ... إلى ...
across from	على الجانب الآخر من	near	بالقرب من

e.g.

- The bank is **next to** the shopping centre.
- The library is **on** the corner.
- **From** the station, go straight **on** and then turn left.
- My house is **opposite** the railway station.
- Take the first road **on** your right.
- Go **past** the post office.

٢. عند السؤال عن المسافة/ بُعد المكان الذي نريد الوصول إليه نستخدم (How far) بمعنى كم البعد/المسافة:

How far + is/are + (المكان/الأماكن)?

e.g. • **A:** How far is your school? **B:** It's 50 metres away.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 My school is across (of) the bank.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (from) لوجود حرف الجر **across**.
- 2 My house is (next) the bank and the library.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (between) لوجود مكانين بينهما **and**.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises (1)

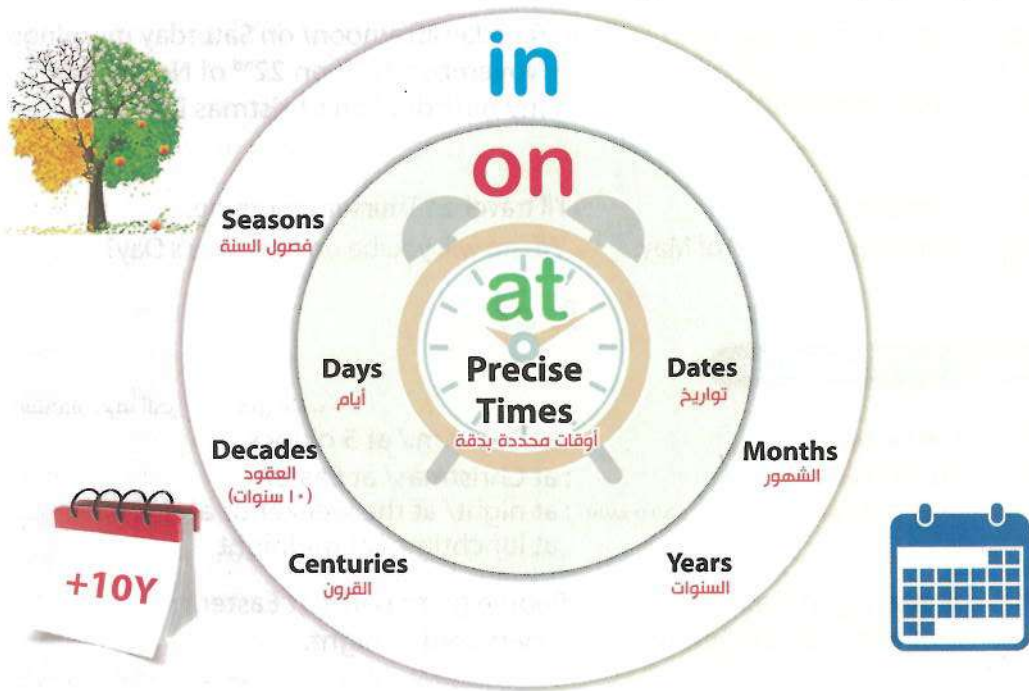
Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Going) straight on until you reach the traffic lights.
2. (Follows) the signs to the parking area.
3. The shoe shop is (between) to the computer mall.
4. He walked (pass) the beautiful garden where he used to play in his childhood.
5. My house is (opposite to) the post office. Longman
6. Cross the street, the museum is (of) the corner.
7. Turn left at the traffic light and go straight (at) for three miles.
8. Cross the bridge and (turning) left.
9. The sports centre is (next) the aquarium and the hospital.
10. Walk towards the tall building (at) the left.
11. A: (How often) is your house from the station?
B: It's about 200 metres.
12. (Takes) the second exit on the left.
13. The women's clothes shop is next (for) the jewellery shop.
14. The park is (cross) from our house, so we can easily cross the road.
15. When you reach the book shop, (across) the street and you'll find the bank.
16. (For) the bus stop, go straight on then turn right.
17. The nearest hospital is (between) to the shopping centre.
18. To go to the museum, take the first road (in) your right.
19. The park is between the hospital (to) the bank.
20. If you want to go to the library, (took) the second turning.

- Use the prepositions of time (**in/at/on**) to say when you do things.

استخدم حروف الجر للوقت (**in/at/on**) لتقول متى تفعل الأشياء.



1. in

Usage

الاستخدام

نستخدم حرف الجر (**in**) قبل الآتي:

- **Months** الشهور : in January/in April
- **Seasons** فصول السنة : in spring/in winter
- **Years** السنوات : in 1984/in the 1990s
- **Centuries** القرون : in the 20th century
- **Times of day** فترات اليوم : in the morning/ in the afternoon/ in the evening

فترات طويلة من الوقت:

in the past/in 3 years/ in the holidays

Examples

- I was born **in** October.
- We go to Hurgada **in** summer.
- I was born **in** 2007.
- We are **in** the 21st century.
- I usually do my homework **in** the evening.
- My uncle will travel **in** three weeks.

2. on

Usage

الاستخدام

نستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل الاتي:

- Days of the week أيام الأسبوع : on Monday/ on Wednesday
- Days + parts of days أيام + فترات اليوم : on Tuesday afternoon/ on Saturday mornings
- Dates التاريخ : on November 22nd/ on 22nd of November
- Special days/occasions الأيام المميزة/المناسبات : on my birthday/ on Christmas Day

Examples

- Do you work **on** Fridays?
- I'll travel **on** Thursday morning.
- Mona's birthday is **on** 20th of May.
- Where will you be **on** New Year's Day?

3. at

Usage

الاستخدام

نستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الاتي:

- Clock times الساعات : at 7:30 a.m./ at 5 o'clock
- Festivals مهرجانات : at Christmas/ at Easter
- Exact or a particular time وقت محدد : at night/ at the weekend/ at noon/ at lunchtime/ at midnight

Examples

- I have a meeting **at** 9 a.m.
- People go to parks **at** Easter.
- Jane went home **at** lunchtime.
- It gets cold **at** night.

لاحظ

لا يتم استخدام حرف جر مع الكلمات التالية:

- **every** day, night, year, etc.
- **next** week, year, month, etc.
- **today**, **tomorrow**, **yesterday**
- **last** night, year, etc.
- **this** morning, month, etc.

Examples

- My uncle will arrive **next** month.
- We went to the zoo **last** week.
- He did his homework **this** morning.
- She is travelling **tomorrow**.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Lucy is arriving (in) February 13th.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (on) لأنها يتبعها تاريخ.
- 2 The train leaves tomorrow morning (in) 8:00 a.m.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (at) لأنها يتبعها ساعة محددة.
- 3 I was born (on) 1992.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (in) لأنها يتبعها سنة.



► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hana and Sara have breakfast (in) eight o'clock in the morning.
2. Our class has a trip (at) May.
3. I visit my grandparents (of) holidays.
4. We usually go to the beach (at) the afternoon.
5. (on) winter, kids enjoy playing in the snow and making snowmen.
6. People stay up late (in) Christmas.
7. (In) a school day, I get up very early.
8. The concert is (at) Saturday evening.
9. The party will start (on) midnight.
10. (At) my birthday, I like to have a small party.
11. Families always have picnics (in) Easter.
12. The train arrives at the station (in) 2 p.m.
13. The film will start (at) five minutes.
14. On holidays, we go to bed late (in) night.
15. My mum has an interview (at) December 25th.
16. (At) the 21st century, we use smartphones for many daily tasks.
17. The next meeting will be (last) week.
18. I like to walk along the river (in) sunset.
19. We don't go to school (at) Fridays.
20. I always go to the park (in) the weekend.

أينأولها من الخارج ٢٠٢٣

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friends always go out and have dinner with each other (in) Christmas.
2. We usually get together (in) the weekend.
3. Is your area quiet (in) noon?
4. The building is (between) to the bookshop and opposite the café.
5. The match starts (in) 4 o'clock.
6. Go (paste) the traffic lights and turn right.
7. The museum is (near) the library and the train station.
8. Flowers are very wonderful (on) spring.
9. The library is (in) your left.
10. We usually go on holiday (at) July.
11. The cinema is (in) the corner of West Street and South Street.
12. Classes end (at) the 4th of July.
13. We want to go for a drink after dinner (at) Friday evening.
14. After two hundred metres, (turning) left.
15. It takes about ten minutes (for) my house to the school.
16. My parents always give me presents (at) my birthday.
17. If you want to get to the theatre, (taking) a taxi. It's better.
18. We usually meet (on) lunchtime.
19. (Going) down Sadat Street. The shop is on your left.
20. I always brush my teeth (on) the morning.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Speaking

Asking for and giving directions

طلب وإعطاء الاتجاهات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Where's the library, please?

أين المكتبة، من فضلك؟

Walk/Go past the restaurant, it's on the right.

امشِ ماراً بالمطعم، إنها على اليمين.



How do I go/get from the market to the cinema?

كيف أصل من السوق إلى السينما؟

Take the second road, turn right, it's on the left.

اسلك الطريق الثاني، اتجه يميناً، إنها على اليسار.



How far is it?

كم تبعد؟

For about 10 minutes.

حوالي ١٠ دقائق.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

► A tourist is asking Mazen about the Cairo Tower.

Mazen : Can I help you?

Tourist : (1)..... . Where's the Cairo Tower?

Mazen : (2)..... .

Tourist : (3)..... ?

Mazen : No, it isn't far from here.

Tourist : (4)..... ?

Mazen : It's about 5 minutes.

Tourist : Are there any other interesting places that I should visit?

Mazen : (5)..... .

Tourist : That sounds fantastic! I will visit the Egyptian Museum.



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a review of your visit to ...

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن زيارتك إلى ...

- I went on a nice trip to (المدينة).
- There are many buildings such as
- It has a famous monument
- It's (peaceful, attractive, horrible,).
- The people there are (friendly, kind, unfriendly,).
- You can visit and enjoy your time.
- There are lots of things to do there.
- You can also visit near the city.

Writing tips

To write a good paragraph, you should always:

- Choose a title that draws attention.
- Organise your ideas before you begin.
- Make sure you stick to the topic.

لكي تكتب موضوعًا جيدًا، يجب عليك أن تختار عنوانًا يجذب الانتباه، وأن تنظم أفكارك قبل البدء في الكتابة وتلتزم بموضوع الفقرة.

Example

"A review of your visit to Ismailia"

Last weekend, I went on a nice trip to Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live there. There isn't much pollution because traffic is slow. Ismailia is peaceful, but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do there, especially at the weekends. I go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it. There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum because I'm interested in animals. It was a nice trip and I enjoyed it there. It's a good place to go at the weekend.

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of your visit to Alexandria last summer"



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Basel is asking a policeman about the directions to the new shopping mall.

Basel : Good evening, sir.

Policeman : (1)..... . How can I help you?

Basel : (2)..... ?

Policeman : Go straight ahead, then turn right.

Basel : How far is it?

Policeman : (3)..... .

Basel : That's a long way! (4)..... ?

Policeman : Yes, I think you should take a taxi.

Basel : Thanks for your help.

Policeman : (5)..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الدنيا ٢٠٢٤

attractive - in - on - garden - population - heavy

My name is Salma and I live (1)..... Minia. It is in the middle of Egypt. The (2)..... of Minia is about 6 million people. If you come to Minia, you can visit many (3)..... places, like the international (4)..... on the east bank of the Nile and the wonderful monuments in Tal El-Amarna.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الدنيا ٢٠٢٤

- The aquarium has different kinds of
 a) cars b) buses c) ships d) fish
- "....." means in a forward direction, not left or right.
 a) Straight on b) Away from c) Corner d) Area
- When you finish your homework, remember to it for any mistakes.
 a) contain b) build c) include d) check
- The picnic basket sandwiches, fruit and juice for an outdoor meal.
 a) includes b) compares c) attracts d) consists
- Let's walk in the park and enjoy the peaceful sounds of nature. The synonym of "peaceful" is ".....".
 a) calm b) noisy c) distant d) boring
- To form the adjective from the verb "care", we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ful b) -ous c) -al d) -er

الدنيا ٢٠٢٣

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- (Turning) right at the traffic light, and you'll see the supermarket on your left.
- We always travel to Aswan (at) winter.
- The bank is (between) to the shopping centre.
- The party is at my house (in) the 15th of July.
- He usually eats lunch (of) noon.

الأفضل ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your home city"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

- The Nile through many countries including Egypt.
a) walks **b)** sails **c)** runs **d)** dives
- We need to do our best to make Egypt an attractive country. The word "attractive" is a/an ".....".
a) adjective **b)** adverb **c)** noun **d)** verb

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The restaurant serves breakfast (in) 7 to 10 a.m.
- We have plans (at) Saturday night.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

comfortable (adj)	مريح/مستريح	metro (n)	مترو
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	passenger (n)	مسافر/راكب
electric (adj)	كهربائي (يدار بالكهرباء)	platform (n)	رصيف محطة
energy (n)	طاقة	public transport (n)	مواصلات عامة
engineering works (n)	أعمال هندسية	railway (n)	سكة حديد
exhibition (n)	معرض	space (n)	الفضاء
ferry (n)	معدية	stop (n)	موقف
floor (n)	طابق/دور	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
guard (n)	حارس	tram (n)	ترام
map (n)	خريطة	valley (n)	وادي
paintings (n)	لوحات	rails (n)	قضبان حديدية

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

across (prep)	عبر	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
Central Station	محطة مركزية	information (n)	معلومات
crossword (n)	الكلمات المتقاطعة	journey (n)	رحلة
desert (n)	صحراء	poster (n)	ملصق إعلاني
form/type (n)	نوع	vehicle (n)	مركبة (وسيلة نقل)

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete:

form - farm - floor - platform

- The train leaves from five.
- The plane is the fastest of transport.
- We live on the third

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
busy (adj)	مزدحم	crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
comfortable (adj)	مريح	relaxing/relaxed	مريح/مستريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
easy (adj)	سهل	simple	بسيط	difficult/hard	صعب
leave (v)	يفادر/يترك	go/depart	يذهب/يرحل	arrive	يصل
passenger (n)	مسافر/راكب	traveller	مسافر	driver	سائق
start (v)	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ	finish/end	ينتهي

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

catch/get/take > a train

يلحق/ يأخذ قطاراً

get > somewhere

يصل إلى مكان ما

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the top	في القمة	look out of	ينظر من
get back	يعود	special about	مميز عن
good for	مفيد لـ	travel on water	يسافر على الماء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
catch يلحق	caught	caught
show يبين/يعرض	showed	showed/shown
build يبنى	built	built

Check Point

Choose and complete: at – about – take – leaves – built

- I the train when I visit my grandparents.
- The bus at seven. It goes in ten minutes.
- Can you tell me what is special your offer?
- We a sand castle on the beach.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللغوية وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال.



Definitions

التعريفات

comfortable	مريح	making you feel relaxed ⁽¹⁾
exhibition	معرض	a place where people can go to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc.
ferry	معدية	a form of transport ⁽²⁾ that carries people or cars across water
map	خريطة	something you can use to follow directions ⁽³⁾
metro	مترو	a vehicle you can use to travel in a city. Sometimes, it travels underground
passenger	مسافر/راكب	someone who is travelling, but not driving
platform	رصيف محطة	a place where you can catch a train/ the area in a station where you get on or off a train
timetable	جدول مواعيد	something you can use to find when a train or bus arrives or leaves
tram	ترام	a form of transport that uses rails like a railway ⁽⁴⁾ to travel along roads, usually in cities
valley	وادي	an area of land between two hills or mountains

(1) مستريح

(2) النقل

(3) اتجاهات

(4) سكة حديد

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
comfort (v/n)	يرتاح/راحة	-able		تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى صفة		comfortable (adj)	مريح
inform (v)	يبلغ	-ation		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		information (n)	معلومات
exhibit (v)	يعرض	-ion				exhibition (n)	معرض

البادئة Prefix

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		comfortable (adj)	مريح	تعطي عكس المعنى		uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

Study these places

قم بدراسة هذه الأماكن

Africa	إفريقيا	Bondi	شاطئ بوندي بأستراليا
Al Balyana	مدينة البليانا (بسوهاج)	Suez	السويس
Australia	أستراليا	Sydney	سيدني

1 look forward to + (n/v-ing)

يتطلع إلى

- I'm **looking forward to** the summer holiday.
- Hamza **looks forward to** travelling to Italy.

2 take + وقت + to + inf.

يستغرق (وقتًا) لكي...

- The journey **takes thirty minutes to get** to the station.

3 Shall + I/We + inf. ...? سوف / Let's + inf. هيا بنا

(هذه التعبيرات تستخدم للاقتراح)

- **A:** Which train **shall** we **get**?
- **B:** **Let's take** that.

4 see + object (مفعول) + (v-ing)

يرى (جزءًا من الحدث)

- You can **see** ferries **crossing** the Nile.

see + object (مفعول) + inf.

يرى (الحدث كله)

- I **saw** Dalia **tidy** her room.

5 Prepositions of transport:

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمواصلات:

by

(يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات مباشرة (بدون كلمة بينهما))

- I travel to work **by** train/bus/metro.

on (يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات التي يمكن التحرك داخلها بسهولة (يشترط وجود كلمة بينهما))

- I travel to work **on** a train/a bus/a plane.

in (يتم استخدامه قبل وسيلة المواصلات التي لا يمكن التحرك داخلها بسهولة (يشترط وجود كلمة بينهما))

- I travel **in** a car.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I saw my son in the street when I was going home.

a) playing b) to playing c) to play d) played

- 2 I'm looking forward a doctor.

a) becoming b) become c) to become d) to becoming

- 3 We usually travel our father's car.

a) by b) on c) in d) at

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question: - Do you like visiting museums? Why?

 **Khaled is going to the Space Exhibition from City University.**

Use the information from Exercise 1 to complete the chat with Fawzi. **SB page 6**



Khaled Hi, Fawzi. Would you like to come to the **Space Exhibition** ⁽¹⁾ tomorrow? My dad is taking me.

Fawzi Yes, please! What time does it start?

(1) معرض الفضاء

Khaled It starts at **9:30**. We're going by metro.

(2) معرض

Fawzi Which train shall we get?

Khaled The first metro train leaves at 8:20 and arrives at **8:30**.

Fawzi That's an hour before the **exhibition** ⁽²⁾ starts!

Khaled Perhaps we can leave later.

Fawzi What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled It finishes at **2 pm**.

Fawzi OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon to get back?

Khaled Yes, one leaves at 1:15 pm and arrives at **1:25**.

Fawzi Great! Let's take that.

Post-reading questions:

1 When does the exhibition finish?

2 Which place would you like to visit soon?

3 Do you think Khaled likes space? Why?

Pre-listening question: - How do you travel to other cities?

Listening Text



Lesson 3

SB page 7

Listen to Nadia and her mother. Where are they?

Nadia Which train do we need for Tanta?

Mother We need the train to Alexandria. Look, it stops at Tanta.

Nadia Oh yes. So the next train is at 11:30.

Mother That's right.

Nadia And when does it arrive?

Mother It arrives at 13:00.

Nadia Which platform does it leave from?

Mother It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from Platform 7.



Post-listening question:

- Where are Nadia and her mother going?

Lesson 3

WB page 74

Listen and choose the correct words.

Good morning. This **is** the 11:30 train to Luxor. It **leaves** in five minutes. The train **stops** at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It **doesn't** stop at Al Balyana today because there are engineering works. The train **arrives** in Luxor at 23:15.

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about Sydney?

Lesson 4

WB page 75

Complete the text with these words.

Some people think that **Sydney**⁽¹⁾ in Australia has the best **transport**⁽²⁾ in the world. Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. **Comfortable** buses go to the nearest beaches such as **Bondi**⁽³⁾. If you want to get somewhere quickly, **fast** trains leave from **Central Station**⁽⁴⁾ to many places, including the airport. It is quiet on the water, so ferries are **peaceful** and they are also **easy** to use. It is **interesting** to see the famous buildings from the water, too.

(1) مدينة سيدني

(2) النقل

(3) شاطئ بوندي

(4) محطة مركزية


Post-reading question:

- Why are ferries peaceful in Sydney?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 4

- What kinds of transport do you prefer for travelling?

 **Read the texts and answer the questions.**

SB page 8

I love travelling by train because it's interesting to look out of the window. In one journey, you can see **ferries**⁽¹⁾ crossing the Nile, green **valleys**⁽²⁾, peaceful villages and busy cities. Trains are often fast and **comfortable**⁽³⁾, too. Egypt has the oldest railway in Africa. More than 800 million **passengers**⁽⁴⁾ travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of **railway**⁽⁵⁾!

I take the train when I visit my grandparents in Edfu. It's my favourite journey.

Riham

Lots of people in Alexandria use the **tram**⁽⁶⁾ to travel around the city. It's a great way to travel! It's easy to use and it isn't expensive. Trams are **electric**⁽⁷⁾, so they are better for the **environment**⁽⁸⁾ than other types of transport.

Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual: they have two floors! I like sitting at the top and watching the streets below.

Hana

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think trams are better for the environment than other types of transport?
.....
- 2 Do you think travelling by train is enjoyable? Why?
.....
- 3 How many passengers travel by train in Egypt every year?
.....



(1) مَعْدِيَات

(2) أَوْدِيَة

(3) مَرِيح

(4) رِكَاب

(5) خَط سَكَّة حَدِيد

(6) تَرَام

(7) كَهْرِبَائِي

(8) الْبِيئَة



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The library is busy with students studying for their exams. It's
a) simple b) free c) crowded d) empty
- The metro carries millions of each day.
a) drivers b) passengers c) messengers d) divers
- It's time to start cleaning up our room. The antonym of "start" is ".....".
a) leave b) arrive c) end d) begin
- To get the adjective from "comfort", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -able c) -ation d) -ous
- Don't worry, this maths problem is easy. It isn't
a) difficult b) simple c) relaxed d) careful
- A is an area of land between two hills or mountains.
a) villa b) valley c) violin d) volley
- A is something you can use to find when a train or bus arrives or leaves.
a) timetable b) mop c) poster d) map
- If you a train now, you'll arrive in time.
a) leave b) miss c) take d) stay
- We are going to leave soon. The synonym of "leave" is ".....".
a) depart b) arrive c) catch d) get
- Which does the train leave from?
a) street b) lane c) pavement d) platform
- Their car is more modern, it's more
a) bad b) boring c) comfortable d) relaxed
- The is the vehicle you can use to travel. Sometimes, it travels underground.
a) passenger b) metro c) platform d) timetable
- A is a form of transport that uses rails like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities.
a) tram b) bus c) platform d) ferry
- I don't like waiting for transport.
a) public b) general c) special d) private
- Trains on the can take us to faraway places.
a) energy b) railway c) space d) map

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤

peaceful – when – while – flight – railway – journey

Egypt has the oldest (1) in Africa. I like travelling by trains because it is very interesting to look out of the window. I take the train (2) I want to visit my grandfather in Upper Egypt. In the (3), you can see ferries crossing the Nile, green valleys, (4) villages and busy cities.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We took a to cross the Nile. We enjoyed the voyage a lot. الأنشودة بالخارج ٢٠٢٤
 a) train b) ferry c) metro d) plane
- She was so comfortable and warm in bed. She didn't want to get up. "Comfortable" means ".....". الذهبية ٢٠٢٣
 a) cold b) rich c) relaxed d) poor
- To make a noun from the word "inform", we add the suffix ".....". المفرد ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ion b) -ation c) -al d) -less
- The is an area between two mountains. أسوان ٢٠٢٣
 a) lake b) island c) pond d) valley
- A passenger travels by train. The word "passenger" means ".....". الأنشودة بالخارج ٢٠٢٣
 a) driver b) officer c) traveller d) pilot
- To give the opposite of "comfortable", we add the prefix ".....". الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
 a) im- b) un- c) ir- d) co-
- I usually do the in the newspaper in my free hour. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
 a) crossword b) password c) crossroad d) keyword
- Do you think this dictionary is easy to use? "Easy" is a synonym for ".....". Longman
 a) big b) correct c) simple d) difficult
- A is the area in a station where you get on or off a train. الغفارة ٢٠٢٤
 a) park b) platform c) school d) garden
- Tourists usually use a to follow directions. Longman
 a) map b) cap c) metro d) driver

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

- e.g. • I **get** up at six o'clock every day.
• The sun **rises** from the east.

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present simple to express habits and facts.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والحقائق.

- e.g. • Soha usually **walks** to school in the morning. (Habit) عادة
• Dogs **walk** on four legs. (Fact) حقيقة

2. We use the present simple to talk about scheduled events.

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأحداث المجدولة عن مواعيد المواصلات العامة/البرامج المذاعة في التلفاز/ مواعيد المواصلات/ فتح أو إغلاق الأماكن العامة/ وأى خدمات عامة لكل الجمهور.

- e.g. • The first metro train **leaves** at 8:20.
• The TV show **starts** at 10:30 a.m. tomorrow.

Form التكوين

A) Affirmative الإثبات

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • We **have** an English class next Monday.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + **s/es/ies**

- e.g. • The film **starts** at 7:00 p.m.

B) Negative النفي

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + **don't + inf.** مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • Hady and I **don't watch** football matches on TV.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + **doesn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • My brother **doesn't get** up early at the weekend.

A) Yes/No questions: السؤال بفعل مساعد

Do/Does + subject + الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. A: Do you have an English class tomorrow?

A: Yes, we do.

B: No, we don't.

e.g. A: Does your favourite programme start at 7 p.m.?

A: Yes, it does.

B: No, it doesn't.

B) Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. word + do/does + subject + الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. A: When do you have an English class?

B: Next Monday.

e.g. A: When does the train to Luxor leave?

B: It leaves at 5 a.m. tomorrow.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The train (arrive) in London at 3:45 p.m.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (arrives) لأن وصول القطار في موعد محدد ومجدول مسبقاً.

2 When (do) the plane to Rome leave?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (does) لأن the plane اسم مفرد والجملة تعبر عن مواعيد محددة ومجدولة مسبقاً.

3 (Is) the train to Benha leave from that platform?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لأن the train اسم مفرد والجملة تعبر عن مواعيد محددة ومجدولة مسبقاً.

4 My friends and I (not/ go) out on Saturdays.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't go) لأنها تدل على عادة.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The train to Alexandria (leave) in five minutes. أينابؤنا من الخارج ٢٠٢٤
- The train (depart) at 3 p.m., so we need to be at the station by 2:30 p.m.
- When (do) the shop open at the weekends?
- The concert (begin) at 8 p.m. tonight as usual.
- Our match (be) at ten this evening.
- Ahmed's plane (arrive) at 9 p.m. البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
- What time (is) the film finish?
- Maria (have) an English class at 4.
- Do you (likes) football?
- She always (go) for a run in the park every morning.
- The journey often (take) two hours to Ismailia. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- My sister's birthday (be) on Tuesday.
- The plane (reach) at 4:00 a.m. tomorrow. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
- A:** What time (do) the train leave? **B:** It leaves at 6 o'clock. السويس ٢٠٢٢
- Our first lesson (starting) at 8 o'clock. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
- Luxor plane (arriving) at 9:30. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
- The cinema (open) at 11 a.m. and closes at midnight.
- Every day, Amany (walk) to school with her brother.
- The library always (open) at 8:00 in the morning. منيا ٢٠٢٢
- The first metro train (leave) at 6:30. السويس ٢٠٢٤



1. Speaking

Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة الجداول الزمنية والمواصلات العامة

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد

← online



When is the exhibition?

متى يكون المعرض؟

It is at 09:30.

إنه في التاسعة والنصف.



What time is the next train?

ما موعد القطار التالي؟

The next train goes in five minutes.

القطار التالي سينطلق خلال خمس دقائق.



Which platform does the train leave from?

من أي رصيف سيغادر القطار؟

It leaves from Platform 7.

سيغادر من الرصيف رقم سبعة.



How long does the journey take to Luxor?

كم المدة التي تستغرقها الرحلة إلى الأقصر؟

It takes about 6 hours.

تستغرق حوالي ٦ ساعات.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

Basel is booking a train ticket to Aswan.

Ticket officer: Good evening, sir. How can I help you?

Basel: (1)..... How much is it?

Ticket officer: (2).....

Basel: (3).....?

Ticket officer: The train to Aswan is at 9:30.

Basel: (4).....?

Ticket officer: The journey takes three hours.

Basel: Which platform does the train leave from?

Ticket officer: (5).....

Basel: Thank you very much.



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة مقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about types of transport

كيفية الكتابة عن أنواع المواصلات

Example

Types of transport of the city you live in

I live in Alexandria. I live with my parents, one sister and two brothers. We live in a large house with a garden. Alexandria has the best transport because buses, trains, ferries and planes are comfortable. You can travel on a plane from Alexandria Airport. Of course, it's the fastest type of transport. Alexandria has comfortable buses that use natural gas and don't pollute the environment. If you want to get somewhere comfortably, you can use trams. They are on all the streets of Alexandria. It is peaceful on the water, so ferries are interesting and they are also easy to use. It is fun to see the famous buildings from the water, too.

How to write a review of a place you visited

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن مكان قمت بزيارته

Example

A review of my trip to El-Orman Garden

My name is Karim. I'm very happy to visit El-Orman Garden! It's a famous place to visit. The garden opens at 9 a.m., and it takes about an hour to get there by car. The online reviews are fantastic. The gardens are very big and there are lots to see. Make sure that you wear comfortable shoes! You can see wild flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. You could bring some food with you or you could go to a nearby café for lunch. There is also a lovely shop near the garden that sells pottery and jewellery! If you want to spend a wonderful time, you should go to the El-Orman Garden.



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

messengers – passengers – first – comfortable – transport – one

The Cairo metro is the fastest form of (1) in the capital. It is the (2) metro system in Africa and the Arab world. It was opened in 1987 as Line 1 from Helwan to Ramsis square with a length of 29 kilometres. It carries nearly 4 million (3) per day. The system consists of three lines numbered from 1 to 3. It's an easy and (4) way to go around the city.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الإسمايلية ٢٠٢٤

Ismailia Mango Festival is an annual event held in August. The governorate holds it to celebrate the mango season. Mango is one of the most beloved fruits in our country. The festival has many events such as road shows with mango-shaped cars, mango cutting competitions and musical shows. The main events take place in Ismailia City, Golf club and Mohamed Ali Street. They are open to the public for free. The festival aims to create a memorable and enjoyable experience. It attracts more tourists and supports local business, hotels and industries. The festival is attended by VIPs including the city governor and ambassadors from all over the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The festival is held in
 a) August b) September c) June d) July
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) mango b) festival c) Ismailia d) governorate
- The festival supports local
 a) education b) medicine c) camping d) business

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?

- How does the governorate celebrate?

- Do you think that the festival is useful for the city? Why/ Why not?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is something you can use to follow directions.
 a) metro b) map c) ferry d) tram
- A is someone who is travelling, but not driving.
 a) diver b) driver c) passenger d) reader

البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

3. You should look left, then right when you the road.
a) travel b) get c) catch d) cross
4. She lives in a high building with many
a) floors b) stops c) trams d) ferries
5. The lesson starts at ten to nine. The synonym of "start" is ".....".
a) catch b) cross c) end d) begin
6. "Exhibit" is a verb, but the noun can be formed by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -ation c) -able d) -ive

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The train (arrive) in Luxor at seven o'clock every day.
2. What time (does) your lesson tomorrow?
3. Samar gets up early and (have) breakfast.
4. Luxor plane (arriving) at 9:30.
5. I (meeting) my friends at 5 every Friday.

مطروح ٢٠٢٤

دمياط ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Transport in your city"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 How (far) does the journey take to Luxor?
- 2 Can you tell me when (does the next bus leave)?
- 3 This shop (not) opens on Friday.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

advert (n)	إعلان	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	khedive (n)	الخدوي
brochure (n)	منشور	nearby (adv/adj)	مجاور/قريب
century (n)	قرن	online review (n)	نقد عبر الإنترنت
final (n/adj)	نهائي	pottery (n)	الفخار
gardener (n)	بستاني/جنايني	practise (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب
indoors (adv)	داخل مبنى	swimming pool (n)	حمام السباحة
invitation (n)	دعوة	wild (adj)	بري

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

address (n)	عنوان (مكان)	missing (adj)	مفقود
feelings (n)	مشاعر	share (d) (v)	يشارك
mask (n)	قناع	the country (n)	الريف
activity (n)	نشاط	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: address – advert – invitation – share

- 1 Don't photos with people you don't know.
- 2 I didn't accept his because I'm busy.
- 3 The colourful in the magazine shows kids playing in a water park.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
agree (v)	يوافق	accept	يقبل	disagree/refuse	لا يوافق
closed (adj)	مغلق	locked	مقفل	open	مفتوح
different (adj)	مختلف	dissimilar/unlike	غير متشابه	similar/alike	متشابه

fantastic (adj) رائع	wonderful/awesome رائع	horrible/terrible فظيع
famous (adj) مشهور	well-known معروف	unknown غير معروف
indoors (adv) داخل مبنى	inside بالداخل	outdoors خارج مبنى
lovely (adj) جميل	beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح
politely (adv) بأدب	nicely بلطف	impolitely/rudely بوقاحة
protect (v) يحمي	save/keep يحفظ	harm/damage يضر/يتلف

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

get > married يتزوج	make > sure يتأكد
make > a decision يأخذ/يصنع قرارًا	make > suggestions يقدم اقتراحات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

agree on يوافق على	meet up يتقابل
arrange to يرتب لـ	reply to يرد على
for lunch على الغداء	thank for يشكر على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
become يصبح	became	become
bring يحضر	brought	brought
grow ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
sell يبيع	sold	sold

Check Point

Choose and complete:

sells – to – for – make – unknown

- 1 You should sure you have all your books before leaving.
- 2 Thanks your help.
- 3 Messi is a famous footballer. The antonym of "famous" is ".....".
- 4 The new market fresh fruits and vegetables.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللفظية وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال.



Definitions

century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	one hundred years
indoors	داخل مبنى	inside a building
jewellery	مجوهرات	pretty ⁽¹⁾ things that people wear, such as rings ⁽²⁾ , necklaces ⁽³⁾ , etc.
pottery	الفخار	pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay ⁽⁴⁾

التعريفات

- (1) جميل
- (2) خواتم
- (3) عقد/قلادة
- (4) طين الصلصال

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
invite (v) يدعو	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	invitation (n) دعوة
suggest (v) يقترح	-ion	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	suggestion (n) اقتراح
garden (n) حديقة	-er	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل	gardener (n) بستاني/جنايني

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	agree (v) يتفق	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree (v) لا يتفق
im-	politely (adv) بأدب		impolitely (adv) بوقاحة

Language Notes

- 1 **indoors** داخل مبنى / **outdoors** خارج مبنى
 • I like reading **outdoors**.
indoor داخلي / **outdoor** خارجي
 • He spends his time **indoors**.
 هي ظرف تصف الفعل، لا يأتي بعدها اسم
 • I like **outdoor** activities.
 هي صفة تصف الاسم ويأتي بعدها اسم
 • He likes doing **indoor** games.
- 2 **a ten-year-old** + اسم
 لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة **year** وتعني في هذا السياق بالغاً من العمر ١٠ سنوات (يأتي بعدها اسم لأنها تعتبر صفة للاسم لذلك لا تجمع).
 • He is a **ten-year-old** boy.
- 3 **mind + (v-ing)/(noun)**
 • I don't **mind walking** round the lake.
 يمانع
- 4 **I'd prefer to + inf.**
 • **I'd prefer to go** to the park.
 أفضّل أن

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 5

Put the dialogue into the correct order. Then listen and check. WB page 76

Injy Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Lina?

Lina That would be great, Injy. Shall we go to the museum?

Injy I'm not sure. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.

Lina OK. Shall we go to the shops, then?

Injy I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. How about the park?

Lina I like the park, but I think it would be nice to go on a ferry on the river.
Would you like to do that?

Injy Yes, I'd love to! Why don't we meet by the bridge?

Pre-listening question: - What do you prefer to do in your free time?

Lesson 5

Listen to the conversation. Why doesn't Basel want to go to the sports centre, park or the museum?

SB page 9

Basel Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up⁽¹⁾ tomorrow?

Taher Hi, Basel. That would be great. Shall we go to the sports centre?

Basel I'm not sure. I hurt my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.

Taher Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?

Basel Maybe⁽²⁾, but it's a long way to walk.
I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors⁽³⁾.

Taher Oh, OK. How about the museum?

Basel Perhaps⁽⁴⁾ ... but it's always busy on Saturdays.

Taher OK, so what would you like to do?

Basel I think it would be nice to watch a computer game. There's a new one which lets you practise⁽⁵⁾ your English.

Taher That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house?

Basel I'd love to! Thanks, Taher. See you tomorrow!



(1) يتقابل

(2) ربما

(3) بالداخل

(4) ربما

(5) يمارس

Post-listening question: - Why doesn't Basel want to go to the museum?

Hi Azza,

I'm looking forward to our trip to the **El-Orman Garden** ⁽¹⁾! The garden opens at 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get **there** by car. What time shall we come to get you?

The online **reviews** ⁽²⁾ are fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to see. Make sure that you wear **comfortable** ⁽³⁾ shoes!

I'm sending you a **map** ⁽⁴⁾ of the garden. You can see **wild** ⁽⁵⁾ flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. What would you like to see first?

We could bring some food with us or we could go to a nearby café for lunch. What would you prefer? There is also a lovely shop near the garden that sells **pottery** ⁽⁶⁾ and **jewellery** ⁽⁷⁾!

See you Saturday,

Reem

(1) حديقة الأورمان

(2) مقالات نقدية

(3) مريح

(4) خريطة

(5) برى

(6) فخار

(7) مجوهرات

Post-reading questions:

- How long does it take to get to the El-Orman Garden?
- Do you like visiting the El-Orman Garden? Why/ Why not?

Comprehension Skills

"Understanding reference"

"مهاره فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير فى النص"

من المهارات التى تختبرها أسئلة قطعة الفهم، مهاره تخمين/فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير أو كلمه معينه وللإجابة على هذا النوع من الأسئلة لا بد من قراءة الفقرة جيداً وفهم الكلمه التى يشير إليها الضمير المحدد ومعرفه دلالات الضمائر وهل هو ضمير مفرد أو جمع أو عاقل أو غير عاقل:

"I'm looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Garden. The garden opens at 9 a.m., and it takes about an hour to get **there** by car."

- What does the underlined pronoun "**there**" refer to?

 **Read the email reply to an invitation. Write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.**

WB page 77

From: Munir

To: Hazem

Dear Hazem,

Thank you for asking me to visit the lake. I would love to go there! I will be ready at 7 am, so you can come to get me any time after that. Yes, I have some **comfortable shoes**⁽¹⁾. I don't mind walking round the lake. **I like walking in the country**⁽²⁾. To answer your question, perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot.

(1) حذاء مريح

(2) الريف

(3) يشارك

My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. **I'm sure there will be enough for us to share**⁽³⁾! See you on Saturday.

Yours, Munir

Post-reading question: - Why do you think he should have comfortable shoes?

 **Complete the sentences with at, in or on and the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

WB page 78

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. **On** weekdays, there **are** two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus **is at** 7 am and the second one **leaves** late **in** the afternoon. My father **doesn't take** the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. **At** the weekend, there is only one bus, which **goes** at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it **arrives** in the city **at** 8:30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

Post-reading questions:

1 Why doesn't Tarek's father take the early bus?

.....

2 Where does Tarek live?

.....



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

lovely – will leave – leaves – ugly – arranged – reviews

I can't wait for our adventure at the El-Orman Garden! We are leaving at 9 a.m. to get there. We (1) everything. I knew amazing things about the garden from people who wrote online (2) They say it's huge and there are so many (3) things to see. So, don't forget to wear comfortable shoes. Our bus (4) at eight o'clock.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Adel was born in 1981, which was in the last
a) year b) month c) week d) century
- A is a person who enjoys growing flowers or vegetables.
a) khedive b) gardener c) seller d) maker
- My secretary will phone you to for a meeting.
a) practise b) share c) discuss d) arrange
- We add the prefix "....." to the adjective "polite" to get its opposite.
a) un- b) in- c) im- d) dis-
- We had a fantastic picnic at the beach. The antonym of "fantastic" is ".....".
a) famous b) unknown c) horrible d) awesome
- is the pretty things that people wear, such as rings, necklaces, etc.
a) A poster b) A mask c) Jewellery d) Pottery
- The children played today, because it was very hot outside.
a) outdoors b) indoors c) outdoor d) indoor
- We form the noun of the verb "invite" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ous b) -able c) -ive d) -ation
- is the pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay.
a) Pottery b) Jewellery c) Wood d) Iron
- The forest is full of animals like lions.
a) weak b) wild c) missing d) lovely
- They don't agree a date for their wedding party.
a) on b) by c) to d) for



Making and responding to suggestions

تقديم الاقتراحات والرد عليها

Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

- Would you like to + inf.?
- Shall we + inf.?
- How about + noun/v + ing?
- Why don't you/we + inf.?
- I'd prefer to + inf.
- I think it would be nice to + inf.

Examples

- Would you like to **meet** up today?
- Shall we **go** to the sports centre?
- How about (**going** to) the museum?
- Why don't you **come** to my house?
- I'd prefer to **go** swimming.
- I think it would be nice to **watch** TV.

Responding to suggestions الرد على الاقتراحات

Accepting القبول

- I'd love to.
- That would be great.
- That sounds like a great idea.

Refusing الرفض

- I'm not sure.
- Maybe, but I'm really busy.
- Perhaps, but I have a lot of homework.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

SB

► **Basel suggests meeting up and playing a computer game.**

Basel : Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

Taher : Hi, Basel. That would be great. (1).....?

Basel : (2)..... I hurt my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.

Taher : Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?

Basel : (3).....

Taher : (4).....?

Basel : Perhaps ... but the museum is always busy on Saturdays.

Taher : OK, so what would you like to do?

Basel : (5).....

Taher : That sounds like a great idea.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer and Magdy are discussing how to spend their time together.

Tamer : Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

Magdy : (1).....!

Tamer : Shall we play video games?

Magdy : (2)..... I'd prefer to go out.

Tamer : OK. (3).....?

Magdy : Maybe, but the museum is busy these days. I'd prefer to see nature.

Tamer : (4).....?

Magdy : That would be great! I like going to the park.

Tamer : Why don't we meet at 9:30?

Magdy : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

pottery – missing – comfortable – opens – open – fantastic

We had a (1)..... trip last Friday. We enjoyed our time there. We went to the Family Park in New Cairo. It (2)..... at nine. The park is very big, so we walked a lot. We had (3)..... shoes. After that, we went to a nearby café for lunch. Finally, we bought some (4)..... from a lovely shop near the garden.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is one hundred years.

- a) decade b) century c) country d) age

2. "....." means inside a building.

- a) Outdoors b) Flour c) Indoors d) Inline

3. He didn't talk to the teacher politely yesterday. This means he talked

- a) horribly b) rudely c) badly d) nicely

4. They didn't agree with my idea. The word "agree" means ".....".

- a) protect b) accept c) arrange d) save

5. To get a noun from the verb "suggest", we add the suffix ".....".

a) -ation

b) -ion

c) -sion

d) -tion

6. They are building a over the lake to help people cross the lake.

a) street

b) road

c) ferry

d) bridge

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Let's hurry! The train (leave) at 8:00.

Longman

2. The train usually (take) six hours to reach Aswan.

3. She looks forward to (visit) her grandparents.

4. To go to the bank, (walking) past the railway station and turn left.

5. I was born (in) 2nd April, 2009.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of a place you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you mind (to lend) me your camera?

Longman

2. I will take a ten-..... (minutes) break to refresh my energy.

Longman

3. I'm very good (in) playing chess; I usually win!

Longman

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

► **Hazem decided to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum with Tarek.**

Tarek : I'm going to the Grand Egyptian Museum with my father. Would you like to come with me?

Hazem : Yes, of course. It is nice to go there. (1).....?

Tarek : It's in Giza.

Hazem : How will we go there?

Tarek : (2).....

Hazem : Oh, that's the new car your father bought last month.

Tarek : (3).....

Hazem : (4).....?

Tarek : At 8 a.m., nearly an hour before the museum opens.

Hazem : I hope we'll have a nice time there.

Tarek : (5)..... I know it's an amazing place to visit.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A: **watching – aquarium – go – home – are going – catching**

I like to spend a nice time with my family at the weekend. We usually (1)..... to the park, but sometimes we go to the (2)..... I love (3)..... the fish there. We usually return (4)..... in the evening.

B: **reserve – busy – lives – live – shopping – the shopping**

I have a nice friend called Judy. She (1)..... in Aswan. Aswan is a (2)..... city, with about one and a half million people. At the weekend, Judy usually does different activities. She goes (3)..... Also, she likes going to the nature (4).....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. To find the nearest bank, go on. It's next to the park.

a) street b) opposite c) straight d) long

2. Some of the trams in Alexandria have two

a) flowers b) flours c) flies d) floors

3. When did your uncle reach Cairo Airport? In this question, "reach" means ".....".
 a) arrive b) arrive in c) arrive at d) leave
4. We all like Rami; he's very polite. We add the prefix "....." to get the antonym for "polite".
 a) im- b) un- c) dis- d) non-
5. Oh! It's a very expensive mobile phone. The opposite of "expensive" is ".....".
 a) far b) simple c) cheap d) costly
6. A is a building where historical objects are kept and shown.
 a) museum b) bank c) sports centre d) library
7. We usually play football; we play it in the open air.
 a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
8. He informed us about the new project in our village. To change "inform" into a noun, add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ity b) -ness c) -tion d) -ation
9. Cairo has a lot of ancient monuments. 'Ancient' is opposite in meaning to ".....".
 a) very old b) unimportant c) friendly d) modern
10. cars are environmentally friendly means of transport.
 a) Electrician b) Electricity c) Electrical d) Electric

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What time (is) the first lesson start?
2. Which platform does the train to Alexandria (leaves) from?
3. She went to work (by) her car.
4. Tamer is active. He (doesn't) comes late.
5. The train (don't) stop at Al Minya today because there are engineering works.
6. Every day, lunch (prepares) by my mother.
7. Would you like (have) a cup of tea?
8. To reach the new supermarket, (will go) straight on for about 50 metres.
9. Salma and Adel usually (goes) to school on foot.
10. Hatim never (go) to the club on Sundays.



Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hassan and Karim are planning to meet up tomorrow.

الأفقر ٢٠٢٤

Karim : Hi, Hassan. Would you like to visit El-Orman Garden with me?

Hassan : (1)....., I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.

Karim : (2).....?

Hassan : Great, I wanted to visit the library.

Karim : (3).....?

Hassan : I like reading exciting stories.

Karim : How can we go there?

Hassan : (4).....

Karim : OK, we can meet tomorrow at the bus station.

Hassan : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

good – floors – ferries – streets – better – expensive

Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram to travel around the city. It is easy to use and it isn't (1)..... . Trams are electric, so they are (2)..... for the environment than any other types of transport. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual. They have two (3)..... . I like sitting at the top and watching the (4)..... below.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الافقر ٢٠٢٣

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through the city and there are lots of things to see and do. Many people visit the Botanical Garden when they are in the city. There are many trees and plants from all around the world there.

Another place to visit in Aswan is Nubia. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places to see like the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island and the Nubian Museum. After visiting the museum, some people take a boat to

visit a real Nubian village near Aswan. People come here to learn all about the culture and history of people in Nubia. They also buy some souvenirs and take photos. They have a wonderful time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
a) the weather in Egypt
b) people enjoy visiting Aswan
c) the problem of the environment
d) travelling abroad
2. The underlined word "Botanical" means
a) plants
b) camp
c) resort
d) zoo
3. The Great Temple of Ramses II is in
a) Cairo
b) Giza
c) Aswan
d) Qena

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What can people visit in Nubia?

5. Summarise the second paragraph of the passage in one sentence.

6. Why do you think people like to visit Nubia?



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a place where people can go to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc.
a) playground b) cinema c) theatre d) exhibition
2. A/An is a place where you can catch a train.
a) bridge b) platform c) airport d) corner
3. Be careful when you cross the street. The antonym of "careful" is ".....".
a) famous b) cautious c) careless d) useless
4. His father is a great engineer. He did great works.
a) engineer b) engineering c) engineered d) engineers

5. A is a structure that helps people, vehicles, or things cross over rivers, valleys, or roads.

a) street

b) road

c) ferry

d) bridge

6. My friend send me an invite for his birthday party. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".

a) -ive

b) -ment

c) -ion

d) -ation

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The train to Port Said (leave) this station at 3:15.

2. I usually eat my sandwiches (in) break.

3. (Going) straight on then take the second road.

4. Mariam's birthday is (at) the first of April.

أسبوع ٢٠٢٤

5. What time (is) the show start?



Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of a beautiful place in your home city"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2 & 3	4	5	6
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Youssef asks Hassan about how he catches the bus to the zoo.

Youssef : Where can I catch the bus to the zoo?

Hassan : (1).....

a) You can go to the train station.

b) You can take a taxi.

c) You can go to the bus station.

d) You can't go to the bus station.

Youssef : The bus station! (2).....

a) Where's it?

b) How long is it?

c) When is it?

d) How is it?

Hassan : Go past the museum and then turn left then take the second road on the right.

Youssef : Is it far away?

Hassan : (3)..... It's just a 10-minute walk.

a) Yes, it is.

b) No, it isn't.

c) Yes, it does.

d) No, it doesn't.

Youssef : (4).....

a) Do you visit it before?

b) Are you visiting it before?

c) Would you visit it before?

d) Did you visit it before?

Hassan : Yes, I visited it before.

Youssef : Did you enjoy your time there?

Hassan : (5).....

a) Yes, I do.

b) Yes, I have.

c) Yes, I did.

d) Yes, I am.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. The school bus always (arrive) on time on all days.

a) arrived

b) arriving

c) is arriving

d) arrives

2. In Egypt, school (start) in September and ends in May.

a) starts

b) is started

c) to start

d) started

3. My office is in the building (next) the station.

a) from

b) past

c) next to

d) between

4. What do you usually do (in) Mother's Day?

a) on

b) at

c) of

d) into

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 a b c d 2 a b c d 3 a b c d 4 a b c d 5 a b c d

Q 2 1 a b c d 2 a b c d 3 a b c d 4 a b c d

Unit 2

LET'S GO SHOPPING



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** An online support message; an advert for handicrafts; online reviews
- Writing** Emails asking for and giving information about handicrafts; an online review
- Listening** A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint
- Speaking** Talking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint
- Language** both/and, either/or, neither/nor, none
- Life Skills** Self-management: keeping calm
- Critical thinking:** evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

customer (n)	زبون	sale (n)	أوكازيون
deal (n/v)	صفقة/يتعامل	shop (ped) (v/n)	يتسوق/محل
discount (n)	تخفيض/خصم	smart (adj)	ذكي
industry (n)	صناعة	special offer	عرض خاص
leather (n)	جلد (مصنع)	store (n)	متجر
quality (n)	جودة	survey (n)	دراسة/استبيان

Home equipment معدات منزلية

cassette player (n)	مشغل كاسيت	kettle (n)	غلاية
coffee machine (n)	آلة صنع القهوة	microwave (n)	الميكروويف
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	oven (n)	فرن
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	speakers (n)	مكبرات الصوت

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

fashion (n)	موضة	necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
item (n)	عنصر/سلعة	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض/يقدم
leisure (n)	ترفيه/وقت الفراغ	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
column (n)	عمود	fresh (adj)	طازج/منعش

Check Point

Choose and complete:

fridge – kettle – store – offered

- I'll turn the on and make us some tea.
- A keeps our food cold and fresh.
- Mum to read me a bedtime story tonight.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
free (adj)	مجانى	unpaid	غير مدفوع	paid	مدفوع
loudly (adv)	بصوت عالٍ	noisily	ضوضائى	quietly	بهدوء
lucky (adj)	م حظوظ	fortunate	م حظوظ	unlucky	غير م حظوظ
popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبى	common	شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب
sell (v)	يبيع	trade	يتاجر	buy	يشترى
smart (adj)	ذكى	intelligent/clever	ذكى	stupid	غبى
warm (adj)	دافئ	hot	حار	cool/cold	بارد

Prepositions

حروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	on special offer	فى عرض خاص
start with	يبدأ بـ	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
look for	يبحث عن	wait for	ينتظر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
cost يكلف	cost	cost
choose يختار	chose	chosen
spend ينفق/يقضى	spent	spent

Check Point

Choose and complete:

at – for – lucky – spend

- 1 We waited his friend inside the library.
- 2 The class decided to the afternoon planting flowers in the school garden.
- 3 I won a prize in the race, I feel

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للكلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها وحروف
الجر وتصريفات
الأفعال.

التعريفات

Definitions

coffee machine آلة صنع القهوة	a machine we use to make hot drinks
deal صفقة	a good or cheap price
discount تخفيض/خصم	a price that is less than usual
fridge ثلاجة	a machine we use to keep food cold and help food stay fresh longer
kettle غلاية	something that you use in the kitchen to boil water
microwave الميكروويف	a machine that cooks food very quickly using special waves
oven فرن	a machine we use to cook and heat food
sale تخفيض/أوكازيون	a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual
speaker مكبر الصوت	equipment that you connect to or is part of a phone, radio, computer, etc. so that you can listen to it
special offer عرض خاص	something that is a good price or free to encourage people to buy it

اللاحقة Suffix

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
advert (n) إعلان	-ise	تحويل الاسم لفعل	advertise (v) يعلن
assist (v) يساعد	-ant	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	assistant (n) مساعد
deliver (v) يوصل	-y	تحويل الفعل لاسم	delivery (n) توصيل طلبات
differ (v) يختلف	-ence	تحويل الفعل لاسم	difference (n) اختلاف
normal (adj) طبيعي/عادي	-ly	تحويل الصفة لظرف	normally (adv) بشكل طبيعي
speak (v) يتحدث	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم	speaker (n) مكبر الصوت

1 **make + مفعول + adj./inf.**

يجعل

- The clown **made** us **happy/laugh**.

2 **use + الشيء + to + inf.**

يستخدم لكي

use + الشيء + for + v-ing/noun

يستخدم من أجل

- We **use** headphones (**to listen/for listening**) to music.

3 **discount/ offer/ sale/ deal****A. discount**

تخفيض/خصم

(يكون مرتبطاً بنسبة خصم أو تخفيض من المبلغ الأصلي)

- This microwave has a 25% **discount**. It usually costs L.E. 1,000 but now it is L.E. 750.

B. offer

عرض

(يكون مرتبطاً بشيء آخر هدية أو بتخفيض مع المنتج الأصلي)

- The special **offer** for the smart TV is free speakers.

C. sale

أوكازيون

(يكون مرتبطاً بوقت معين)

- The clothes shop has a **sale**. All the clothes are cheaper than usual this week.

D. deal

صفقة

(شراء شيء بسعر منخفض عن سعره الأصلي)

- I bought this mobile for only 1,500 pounds. It was a great **deal**.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We have a good today. You get either a speaker or headphones when you buy this laptop!

a) deal b) sale c) discount d) offer

- 2 You can use a pencil drawing.

a) on b) to c) at d) for

- 3 My friend made me so hard.

a) laugh b) to laugh c) laughing d) laughed

- 4 Grandma bought me a new dress with a 25%

a) offer b) deal c) discount d) sale

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - Do you like shopping?

Listening Text



Lesson 1

SB page 13

Listen to the radio advert. Tick (✓) what it is advertising.

Voice Do you love music? Do you want the latest **technology**⁽¹⁾?

We have the best **headphones**⁽²⁾ now at Audioworld. We are selling them in red, which is our most popular colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the special **price**⁽³⁾ of only 1,500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today!



- (1) تكنولوجيا (2) سماعات الرأس
(3) سعر

Lesson 2

SB page 14

Listen to the conversation in a shop. What type of TV does the man want?

Shop assistant Hello sir, can I help you?

Customer Yes, please. I'm looking for a new TV for my living room.

Shop assistant OK, no problem. You're **lucky**⁽¹⁾ we have lots of **deals**⁽²⁾ at the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big **discount**⁽³⁾.

Customer Great. Are they **smart TVs**⁽⁴⁾?

Shop assistant No, sorry. Neither of these is a smart TV, but this one over here is and that is also on special **offer**⁽⁵⁾.

Customer Hmm, that one is a bit smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How much is this bigger one?

Shop assistant Oh yes, that's a great TV. That's new in the shop this week so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

Customer That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price?

Shop assistant Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either a free **speaker**⁽⁶⁾ or get a **free**⁽⁷⁾ films deal with that one.

Customer Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think this one will look great in my living room. I'll take it!



- (1) محظوظ (2) صفقات
(3) خصم (4) تلفازات ذكية
(5) عرض (6) مكبر الصوت
(7) مجاني

Post-listening questions:

1 How much is the bigger TV?

2 Did the customer like the deal? Why?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This microwave has a 25% Usually, it costs L.E. 1,000, but now it is 750 L.E. WB
 a) advert b) offer c) seal d) discount
2. A is a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual.
 a) trade b) sale c) deal d) party
3. When I'm excited, I sometimes speak loudly. The antonym of "loudly" is ".....".
 a) stupidly b) luckily c) quietly d) noisily
4. The most useful thing in the kitchen is the
 a) speakers b) smart TV c) fridge d) magazine
5. The assist helped me choose my skirt. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ant b) -y c) -ence d) -ise
6. A is equipment that you connect to a phone or a computer to listen to it.
 a) kettle b) store c) fridge d) speaker
7. Osama's family have a TV. They can now watch films from the internet. WB
 a) smart b) dark c) stupid d) small
8. There's a sale this week, so the shop is full of from all over the city.
 a) fridges b) kettles c) offers d) customers
9. Koshari is a popular food in Egypt. The synonym of "popular" is ".....".
 a) lucky b) common c) free d) fortunate
10. A is a machine that cooks food very quickly using special waves.
 a) fridge b) microwave c) kettle d) coffee machine
11. The cotton T-shirt is currently a special offer at L.E. 150.
 a) by b) at c) for d) on
12. When I wear, I can hear the music really well.
 a) headphones b) speakers c) fridges d) microwaves
13. The showed that 32% of people prefer online shopping.
 a) blog b) advert c) poster d) survey
14. A/An is a machine we use to cook and heat food.
 a) oven b) kettle c) fridge d) offer
15. I want to sell my old car. "Sell" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
 a) trade b) buy c) wait d) deal

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

أسبوع ٢٠٢٣

deal – pay – assistant – loss – machines – paid

Last week, I wanted to buy a kettle, so I went to a shop which sells electric (1) I asked the shop (2) to help me choose a good one. He advised me to take an Egyptian kettle. I agreed and (3) him three hundred pounds. It was a good (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is something that you use in the kitchen to boil water. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
 a) fridge b) TV c) kettle d) radio
- They have a/an TV at home to watch films from the internet. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
 a) intelligent b) ancient c) smart d) old
- A is something that is a good price to encourage people to buy it. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
 a) poster b) special offer c) website d) customer
- The antonym of "smart" is ".....". الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
 a) stupid b) clever c) happy d) rich
- My bag is the best The leather is very soft. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣
 a) quantity b) quality c) height d) colour
- A means a good or cheap price. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a) discount b) canoe c) deal d) handicraft
- The price of the watch is wonderful, with free Longman
 a) industry b) discovery c) delivery d) recovery
- Everyone likes Mohamed Salah, the footballer. He is a person. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
 a) horrible b) popular c) dangerous d) boring
- I didn't order a microwave! I ordered an oven. They sent me a wrong Longman
 a) charge b) change c) term d) item
- March is the month when there's a on the winter clothes.
 a) sell b) cell c) sail d) sale

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

1. Comparison of adjectives

مقارنة الصفات

A) The comparative of adjectives

المقارنه بين شيئين

e.g. • Adel is **taller than** Ramy.

• Reading is **more useful than** computer games.

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

- نستخدم مقارنة الصفات للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

وتنقسم الصفات حسب النطق إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (**Short adjectives**) وهى صفات تتكون من مقطع واحد (One syllable).

مثل: (high - big - tall - old - wide - nice - hot)

- صفات طويلة (**Long adjectives**) وهى صفات تتكون من أكثر من مقطع (Two or more syllables).

مثل: (modern - crowded - amazing - wonderful - interesting)

1 Short adjectives:

... adj. + er + than ...

e.g. • Mount Everest is **higher than** Mount Kilimanjaro.

• The Nile River is **longer than** the Amazon.

2 Long adjectives:

... more / less + adj. + than ...

e.g. • The second lesson was **more interesting than** the first one.

• The dog is **less dangerous than** the lion.

- عند السؤال نستخدم (Which) بمعنى أى / أيهما للتخير كالتالى:

Which is (adj. + er) / (more/less + adj.) ...?

e.g. • Which is longer, the River Nile or the River Thames?

• Which is more useful, the mobile or the computer?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 His car is certainly better because it's (modern) than mine.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more modern) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة طويلة.

2 Turtles are (slow) than rabbits.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (slower) لأنها مقارنة بين اثنين والصفة قصيرة.

3 (Where) are faster, trains or planes?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Which) لأنها سؤال مقارنة بين شيئين.

B) The superlative of adjectives

صيغة التفضيل العليا

e.g. The Nile is **the longest** river in the world.

English is **the least difficult** subject.

We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.

- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا للمقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين.

1 Short adjectives:

... the + adj. + est ...

e.g. Ali is **the tallest** boy in our class.

The cheetah runs **the fastest** among all animals.

2 Long adjectives:

... the most / the least + adj. ...

e.g. Salah is **the most popular** Arab footballer.

Of all the girls, your sister sang **the most sweetly**.

لاحظ

استثناءات شائعة

Common Exceptions

Adj./Adv.	الصفة/الظرف	Comparative	المقارنة بين اثنين	Superlative	المقارنة بين مجموعة
good/well	جيد/بشكل جيد	better (than)	أفضل/أحسن (من)	the best	الأفضل/الأحسن
bad/badly	سيئ/بشكل سيئ	worse (than)	أسوأ (من)	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther (than)	أبعد (من)	the farthest	الأبعد
little	قليل (للكمية)	less (than)	أقل (من)	the least	الأقل
much/many	كثير	more (than)	أكثر (من)	the most	الأكثر

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 (busy) shop in my town is the supermarket.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (The busiest) لأنها صيغة تفضيل عليا والصفة busy قصيرة.

2 The fridge is the (more expensive) thing in the kitchen.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (most expensive) لوجود (the) الدالة على أنها صيغة تفضيل عليا والصفة expensive طويلة.

3 Sami is (good) student in the class at maths.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (the best) لأنها مقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين والصفة good غير منتظمة.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The red apples are (sweet) than the green ones.
2. This book is (interesting) than that one. I like it most.
3. This is (heavy) box I have ever lifted.
4. It is (good) to buy clothes in shops than online. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
5. The red dress looks more beautiful on her (then) the blue one.
6. Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
7. The concert was (most) crowded than I expected.
8. The Pacific Ocean is (large) ocean on our planet.
9. (Whose) is more useful, the mobile or the computer?
10. This is the (cheaper) hotel I could find.
11. Spring is (pleasant) season of the year.
12. The film was terrible, I think it was the (bad) film I've ever seen. الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤
13. Your voice is (loud) than mine.
14. He thinks Chinese is (difficult) language in the world.
15. This house is (high) than the Television Tower.
16. That was (exciting) movie I've ever seen! أبناؤنا في الخارج ٢٠٢٣
17. Bicycles are (safe) than motorbikes.
18. Kettles are (expensive) than laptops. سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
19. This cake tastes (delicious) than the one we had yesterday. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
20. Smartphones are much (easy) to use than the old ones. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

(A) both ... and .../both of كل من

Use **both ... and ...** to mean this thing and another thing.

نستخدم (كل من ... و ...) لتعني (هذا الشيء و شيء آخر).

both + 1 فاعل + **and** + 2 فاعل + فعل جمع دائماً

e.g. Both Nessma and Nada like shopping at the market.

Both the tablet and the mobile have a 20% discount.

both of + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + فعل جمع دائماً

e.g. Both of them are good at maths.

Both of my friends like football.

فعل جمع دائماً + **both** + اسم جمع

e.g. My parents both work in the same building. Both of them work hard.

Both + اسم جمع + فعل جمع دائماً

e.g. Both students prefer reading adventure stories.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Both Habiba and Sara (was) invited to the party last week.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لأن both يأتي معها فعل جمع والجملة في زمن الماضي.

2 Both (and) the boys love tennis.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (of) لأن both يأتي بعدها حرف الجر of إذا تبعها اسم جمع.

(B) either ... or ... أما ... أو ...

We use **either ... (or) ...** to mean this thing or another thing.

استخدم إما ... (أو) ... لتعني (هذا الشيء أو شيء آخر) أي واحد فقط من الاثنين.

either + 1 فاعل + **or** + 2 فاعل + فعل مفرد فقط

e.g. Either Ali or Rami is ready now.

Either Mona or you have to finish the report before 5 p.m.

either + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد

e.g. A: Do you want the new jacket ready on Thursday or Friday?

B: Either day is fine for me.

either of + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + فعل مفرد

e.g. Either of these shirts is good.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You can buy either a speaker (and) a tablet.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (or) لأن either يأتي معها or عند الاختيار بين شيئين.

2 Either of these games (are) suitable.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن Either of يأتي معها فعل مفرد دائماً.

(C) neither ... nor ... لا ... ولا ...

We use **neither ... (nor) ...** to mean not this thing or another thing.

تستخدم لا ... (ولا) ... لتعني (ليس هذا الشيء ولا شيء آخر): أي لا أحد من الاثنين، فهي تنفي الاثنين معاً ولا يأتي معها نفى.

فعل يتبع فاعل 2 فقط + فاعل 2 + nor + فاعل 1 + neither

e.g. • **Neither** Nawal **nor** Nader **likes** washing the dishes.

• **Neither** Ali **nor** his parents **are** tall.

فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + neither

e.g. • **Neither** parent **knows** about the accident.

فعل مفرد + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + neither of

e.g. • **Neither of** those necklaces **is** cheap.

لاحظ

neither = نفى + **either**

e.g. • I have **neither** time **nor** money. = I don't have **either** time **or** money.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The match was really boring. (Either) team played well.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Neither) لأنها تدل على النفي.

2 Neither of my two sisters (are) married.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن (Neither of) يأتي معها فعل مفرد دائماً.

(D) all of كل من ...

We use **all (of)** to mean everyone or everything of a particular kind.

- تستخدم (كل من) لتعني كل واحد أو كل شيء.

فعل جمع + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + **all (of)**

e.g. • **All (of)** the plants in the garden **are** dry. **All of** them **need** water.

فعل مفرد + كمية/اسم لا يعد + **all (of)**

e.g. • **All of** the food **is** fresh.

• **All of** the money in the bank **was** stolen in the robbery.

(E) none of لا أحد من

e.g. • We use **none of** to mean no one or no item.

- استخدام **none of** (لتعني لا أحد من).

فعل مفرد + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + كمية لا تعد + **none (of)**

e.g. • **None of** my friends **likes** basketball.

• **None of** us **wants** to buy these phones.

• **None of** this information **is** important.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 None of my girls (want) to play handball.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wants) لأن **None of** يأتي معها فعل مفرد دائماً.

2 All of these stories (is) interesting.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are) لأن **All of** يأتي معها فعل جمع إذا تبعها اسم جمع.

3 All of the juice (are) cold.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن **All of** تبعها اسم لا يعد فنضع الفعل مفرداً.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Both my parents (was) born in the same city.
2. All the dishes (needs) washing.
3. (Either) the options is fine with me.
4. Neither of them (want) to go to the party.
5. Both of the (film) were great, but I preferred the second one.
6. None of the chairs (were) comfortable, so I decided to stand.
7. Both Sara (or) Basma are excellent tennis players.
8. Either of the dresses (look) good on you.
9. Both of my two children (wants) to go to bed late.
10. Can (both) you or Lisa take me to the station?
11. (None) of the flowers in the garden are beautiful. I like them.
12. Both (team) played well, but only one could win.
13. Either of the dishes on the menu (are) delicious.
14. (Either) of the questions are difficult, so I didn't answer them easily.
15. Neither Ali nor I (be) present last night.
16. Both Nabil and Ali (be) at school yesterday.
17. Tarek usually has (both) an egg or some fruit for breakfast.
18. Either Sama (nor) Mariam has a new mobile.
19. Neither the laptop nor the microwave (are) in the sale.
20. The two T-shirts are too short, I won't buy (neither) of them.

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٤

السويس ٢٠٢٣

دمياط ٢٠٢٢



► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He showed us two houses, but we didn't like (neither) of them.
2. Smartphones are (popular) than the old ones. الحيزة ٢٠٢٤
3. (None) the kids were excited on the trip.
4. (Both) you leave, or I will phone the police. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
5. I invited Said and Waleed, but (either) of them could come.
6. She is (clever) student in the class.
7. The elephant is (large) land animal in the world.
8. Neither Adel nor Amr (be) in the club yesterday. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
9. Both Wael and Taher (be) in yesterday's wedding.
10. I like neither the red shirt (or) the blue one. الحيزة ٢٠٢٤
11. The computer is (expensive) than the phone. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
12. The blue dress is less (expensive) the red dress.
13. Neither Ali (or) his parents are tall.
14. This coffee is (delicious) than the one I had yesterday.
15. Laptops are (expensive) than kettles. الأقصر ٢٠٢٤
16. She is singing (beautifully) than the other girls.
17. (Both) Ahmed nor Samy came early. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
18. None of (they) can solve this problem.
19. I didn't buy the jacket or the coat. (Either) of them were too small. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
20. (None) students passed the exam. It was very easy.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Speaking

Buying something in a shop

شراء شيء من محل

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



- Can I help you?
- How can I help you?

هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟
كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟

- I'm looking for a new TV.

أنا أبحث عن تلفاز جديد.



OK, no problem. Both of these TVs have a big discount.

حسنًا، لا توجد مشكلة. كل من هذين التلفزيونين عليهما خصم كبير.

Are they smart TVs?

هل هني تلفازات ذكية؟



No, sorry. Neither of these is a smart TV.

لا للأسف، لا تلفاز منها ذكي.

That one is a bit small. How much is the bigger one?

هذا التلفاز صغير قليلًا، كم ثمن التلفاز الأكبر؟



It's 8,000 pounds.

إنه بثمانية آلاف جنيه.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Omar wants to buy a T-shirt.

Salesman : Hello, can I help you?

Omar : (1).....

Salesman : (2).....?

Omar : I'd like to buy a blue one.

Salesman : What about this one?

Omar : (3)..... Where can I try it on?

Salesman : You can try it on in this dressing room.

Omar : (4).....?

Salesman : It's 150 pounds. Anything else?

Omar : (5).....

الحيزة ٢٠٢٣



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write about shopping

كيفية الكتابة عن التسوق

- Shopping is very important because
- I like buying and
- I often buy things on special offer because
- I like shopping at the market and
- I spend a lot of money on online shopping.

Writing tips

After you finish writing, reread and revise your writing.

بعد الانتهاء من كتابة الفقرة، أعد قراءة فقرتك لمراجعتها.

Example

"Shopping"

Shops are the places where people go to buy their necessary things. It is said that many people find shopping relaxing. I believe that shopping is a relaxing thing, as whenever I get too stressed, I like to go to big stores where there are special offers. The most difficult part about shopping for me is choosing things. These days, there is a new concept of shopping called online shopping.

I love to shop online because it has many advantages. First, some online stores have amazing collections for every age group. Secondly, we can buy anything online without going to crowded marketplaces. Thirdly, shopping online always offers discounts. It is very interesting to me.

2. How to write a review of something you bought online

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن شيء قممت بشرائه عبر الإنترنت

Example

"A review of an item I bought online"

First, I like shopping online because it has many advantages. It saves time and money. We can buy what you want without moving. However, my point of view changed when I decided to buy a present online. I ordered a toaster as a present for my mother on her birthday. The website said the delivery would be in two days, but the delivery arrived in two weeks. I opened the box and put it in the kitchen. It looked great and good, but when I plugged it in, it made smoke, then a fire. That was terrible. At once, I called them and asked them if I wanted to send it back. They were kind, and they were sorry. After two days, a new toaster arrived. It was really great in the kitchen. My mum was very happy with it.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Fareeda and Huda are talking about shopping.

Fareeda : Yesterday, I went to the market.

Huda : (1).....?

Fareeda : I went with my mother.

Huda : What did you buy?

Fareeda : (2).....

Huda : What colour is that carpet?

Fareeda : (3).....

Huda : Oh, red is a wonderful colour. (4).....?

Fareeda : It's 200 pounds. Do you want to see it?

Huda : (5)..... because I want to buy a carpet, too.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

traditional – greener – green – customer – store – tradition

Online shopping is (1)..... than in-store shopping. An online (2)..... does not use the electricity that a (3)..... store might use and it doesn't require the (4)..... to drive anywhere. Items are often delivered to several homes at once, so it causes less pollution.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "....." means using computers or the internet to make something work better.
a) Special b) Smart c) Paid d) Free
- Omnia bought a kettle on a special offer. This means she got a
a) present b) discount c) prize d) gift
- When we go to a, we should ask for help from the assistant.
a) shopping b) discount c) survey d) store
- Osama's family have a TV. They can now watch films from the internet. **WB**
a) smart b) dark c) stupid d) small

5. The customers in the shop ask for a discount. "Customer" means الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

- a) cleaner b) buyer c) seller d) traveller

6. It's **normal** to be happy when you succeed. To get the adverb of "normal", add the suffix ".....".

- a) -y b) -ly c) -er d) -or

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Neither of those necklaces (be) cheap. السويس ٢٠٢٤

2. We have the (good) headphones in the area.

3. The Taj Mahal is (famous) than many other monuments in India.

4. Neither Ali nor his friends (is) at school now.

5. This is the (easy) exam I have ever done. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

5 Write **ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:** دمياط ٢٠٢٤

"A review of online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are selling headphones in red, which is our (more popular) colour in the shop.

2. Cairo is Egypt's (the most) crowded city.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

battery (n)	بطارية	password (n)	كلمة السر/المرور
charge (d) (v)	يشحن	plug (ged) in (v)	يوصل جهاز
decorate (d) (v)	يزين/يزخرف	shell (n)	صدفة/قوقعة
fill in (ed) (v)	يملاً (استمارة)	style (n)	أسلوب
form (n)	استمارة	turn (ed) off (v)	يغلق جهازاً
handicraft (n)	حرفة يدوية	turn (ed) on (v)	يفتح جهازاً
log (ged) in (v)	يسجل الدخول	wooden (adj)	خشبي

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

artist (n)	فنان	instructions (n)	أوامر/تعليمات
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم	leaf/leaves (n)	ورقة/أوراق شجر
email (ed) (v)	يرسل بريداً إلكترونياً	soft (adj)	ناعم
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	suddenly (adv)	فجأة

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete:

instructions – in – statues – off

- 1 Please, fill your name and address on the form.
- 2 You should turn the computer when you finish.
- 3 We have to follow inside the museum.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
amazing (adj)	مذهل	surprising	مدهش	ordinary	عادي
fill in	يملاً	complete	يكمل	ignore	يتجاهل
log in (v)	يسجل الدخول	sign in	يسجل الدخول	log out	يسجل الخروج
modern (adj)	حديث	new/recent	جديد/حديث	old/traditional	قديم/تقليدي
plug in (v)	يوصل جهازاً	connect	يوصل	plug out	ينزع القابس الكهربائي
turn on (v)	يفتح جهازاً	switch on	يفتح جهازاً	turn off/switch off	يغلق جهازاً

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

earn > money	يكسب مالاً	follow > rules	يتبع القواعد
look > amazing	يبدو مذهلاً	get > information	يحصل على معلومات
write > a reply	يكتب ردّاً	charge > a battery	يشحن بطارية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

congratulations on	تهانينا على	find out about	يكشف عن
popular with	محبوب لدى	a problem with	مشكلة في

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
break يكسر	broke	broken
lose يفقد/يضيع/يخسر	lost	lost
sell يبيع	sold	sold

Check Point

Choose and complete:

ordinary – look – on – with

- 1 Mo Salah is popular many people.
- 2 You really pretty in this dress.
- 3 It was an amazing trip. It wasn't

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions

التعريفات

charge	يشحن	to put electricity ⁽¹⁾ into something such as a phone
fill in	يملأ (استمارة)	to complete information on a piece of paper or online
handicraft	حرفة يدوية	an object ⁽²⁾ made by a person in a traditional way, such as a basket, bowl, etc.
log in	يسجل الدخول	to put in information so that you can use a computer
password	كلمة السر/المرور	a special, secret ⁽³⁾ word that you must write or say before you can use a computer or go into a place
plug in	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز	to connect equipment ⁽⁴⁾ to electricity

(1) الكهرباء

(2) شيء

(3) سر

(4) معدات

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
amaze (v) يذهل	-ing	تحويل الفعل لصفة	amazing (adj) مذهل
excite (v) يثير			exciting (adj) مثير/مبهج
colour (v) يلون	-ful	تحويل الفعل لاسم	colourful (adj) زاهى الألوان
congratulate (v) يهنئ	-ion		congratulation (n) تهنيتنا
instruct (v) يأمر	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	instruction (n) أمر
tradition (n) تقليد			traditional (adj) تقليدي
wood (n) خشب	-en	تحويل الاسم لاسم فاعل	wooden (adj) خشبي
art (n) فن/رسم	-ist		artist (n) فنان
sudden (adj) مفاجئ	-ly	تحويل الصفة لظرف	suddenly (adv) فجأة

Materials

glass زجاج	plastic بلاستيك	wool صوف
leather جلد (مصنوع)	metal معدن	wood خشب

مواد خام

Language Notes

1 one of + اسم مفرد + اسم جمع / صيغة تفضيل عليا + one of

واحد من

- The leather industry is **one of the oldest** in Egypt.
- One of my friends lives** in Tanta.

2 - win - won - won

يفوز (جائزة - مباراة - مسابقة)

- Amir **won** the first **prize** in the competition.

- gain - gained - gained

يكتسب (معلومات - وزن - خبرة)

- Nader is very good. He **gained** much **experience** in his life.

- earn - earned - earned

يكسب مالاً

- Maged **earned** a lot of **money** in his new company.

3 (be) used to + inf. / (be) used for + (v + ing)

يستخدم فى


- A kettle **is used to boil** water.
- A kettle **is used for boiling** water.

B Reading & Listening Skills


Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What's the difference between a computer and a laptop?


 Read the conversation below. Who is Aya talking to? What are they talking about?

SB page 16

 Hello. How can I help you, Aya?

Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly **turned off**⁽¹⁾. Now I can't **log in**⁽²⁾ and I think I lost my work!



 Was the computer **plugged in**⁽³⁾?


Yes, it was plugged in. I was **charging**⁽⁴⁾ the **battery**⁽⁵⁾.



 Did you **turn on**⁽⁶⁾ the computer again?

Yes, but then it said my **password**⁽⁷⁾ to log in was wrong.



 One moment please ... I just emailed you a form to **fill in**⁽⁸⁾ to get a new password. Log in again with that information. I hope that works!

OK, thank you.



- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| (1) ينفق | (2) يسجل الدخول | (3) متصل بالكهرباء | (4) يشحن |
| (5) البطارية | (6) يشغل | (7) كلمة المرور | (8) يكمل بيانات |

Post-reading questions:

1 What's Aya's problem?

2 Have you faced Aya's problem before? If yes, what did you do?

3 Do you think the solution mentioned in the conversation will work? Why?

Pre-reading question: - Is it easy to use a laptop?

Lesson 3

Complete the instructions with these words.

WB page 81

Congratulations on buying a new computer! Here are the instructions for how to use it:

- 1** First, **plug in** the computer. To **charge** the battery, leave it for three or four hours.
- 2** Now **turn on** the computer.
- 3** When the computer is ready, it will ask you to **fill in** some information.
- 4** Write your name and choose a **password** that nobody can guess.
- 5** Now you can **log in** to your computer and start using it.
- 6** Don't forget to **turn off** your computer when you are not using it.



Note:

guess /ges/

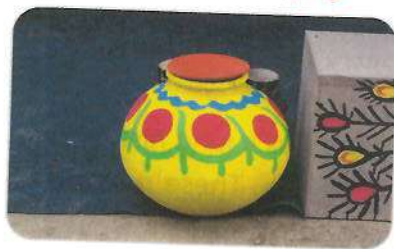
تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Read about handicrafts in Egypt. Are the sentences below true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

Lesson 4

WB page 82

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts. People who live here sell carpets, baskets and colourful pots. Some women in a village near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood and leather. These handicrafts are very popular with tourists and help the Egyptians to earn money.




Post-reading questions:

- 1** What is the south of Egypt famous for?
.....
- 2** Why do you think tourists like these Egyptian handicrafts?
.....
- 3** What should we do when we aren't using the computer?
.....

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think of Egyptian handicrafts?

 Read the advert for some traditional Egyptian handicrafts. Which one do you like the best?

SB page 18

Egyptian Handicrafts⁽¹⁾

The best quality and prices!

These beautiful **wooden**⁽²⁾ boxes can be used for **jewellery**⁽³⁾. They are **decorated**⁽⁴⁾ with **shells**⁽⁵⁾ in **traditional designs**⁽⁶⁾. They are made by artists near the coast.



(1) حرف يدوية

(2) خشبي

(3) مجوهرات

(4) مزينة/مزخرفة

(5) صدف

(6) تصميمات تقليدية

The **leather industry**⁽⁷⁾ is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best **quality**⁽⁸⁾. The leather is very **soft**⁽⁹⁾.



(7) صناعة الجلود

(8) جودة

(9) طري/ناعم

We sell many different types of **pots**⁽¹⁰⁾ in different colours for your home. The artists paint the pots with traditional Arabic designs.



(10) أوانر

(11) سجاد

Egypt has a long history of making beautiful **carpets**⁽¹¹⁾. These modern carpets will look amazing in any home.



Comprehension Skills

Critical thinking skills

ما هي مهارات التفكير النقدي؟

هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي وردت في النص من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص ودائماً ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

In the first paragraph,

Do you think beautiful wooden boxes are valuable? Why?

- Yes, I think they are valuable because they are decorated and used for jewellery.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you the form, please give it to the secretary.
a) turn off b) log in c) fill in d) fill with
2. I like your clothing You look really smart.
a) frame b) farm c) quantity d) style
3. There's an old desk in front of the window.
a) wooden b) woollen c) golden d) woven
4. Could you in the electric kettle, please? I want to boil some water.
a) turn b) plug c) log d) charge
5. Today is an exciting day because we are going to the park. The antonym of "exciting" is ".....".
a) interesting b) boring c) surprising d) amazing
6. Let's colour this picture. To get the adjective of "colour", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -en c) -ing d) -ful
7. It's getting dark, let's switch on the lights. The synonym of "switch on" is ".....".
a) turn on b) turn off c) fill in d) log in
8. The laptop doesn't start. Then, it needs three hours to the battery.
a) charge b) sell c) log d) plug
9. such as woven baskets and other items were on display.
a) Instructions b) Handicrafts c) Batteries d) Styles
10. The skin of babies is really
a) soft b) hard c) ugly d) rough
11. You are an amazing art-.....! Keep drawing beautiful pictures.
a) -ist b) -ant c) -al d) -ing
12. Do you know how to log in the computer? "Log in" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) log out b) sign out c) sign in d) turn off
13. It's important to update your every 3 months at least.
a) leaf b) password c) shell d) battery
14. To get the noun of "congratulate", add the suffix ".....".
a) -less b) -ion c) -ful d) -ist
15. We need to our house for the birthday party.
a) decorate b) charge c) imagine d) complete

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

bags – shells – better – artists – carpets – best

Egyptian handicrafts are very famous around the world. Egyptian (1) make different beautiful things. They make jewellery boxes decorated with (2) They also make high quality leather (3) These products are the (4) quality all over the world. A lot of people everywhere are interested in buying them.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To turn off means to working. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
 a) play b) have c) start d) stop
- We add the suffix "....." to turn the word "wood" into an adjective. الفيوم ٢٠٢٤
 a) -en b) -ly c) -ian d) -ful
- They put colourful paper and balloons on the walls. They the walls. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤
 a) decorated b) painted c) charged d) imagined
- He switched on the mobile. This means he on the mobile. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
 a) turned b) lost c) broke d) bought
- are objects made by a person in a traditional way, such as baskets, bowls, etc. أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
 a) Shells b) Passwords c) Handicrafts d) Changes
- My class did research about our community needs. The results were really amaze. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....". المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ing b) -ant c) -ed d) -ness
- The computer is not working. Is it in? قنا ٢٠٢٢
 a) plugged b) passed c) logged d) planted
- The word "exciting" has the same meaning as ".....". أسوط ٢٠٢٣
 a) boring b) worrying c) terrible d) interesting
- The suffix "....." forms an adjective of the word "tradition". القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
 a) -le b) -al c) -ly d) -able
- You must fill in this form. This means that you must it. Longman
 a) compare b) compete c) repeat d) complete
- The coach instructed the players to follow his tactics seriously. We can change the verb "instruct" into a noun by adding the suffix ".....". Longman
 a) -ation b) -ion c) -ment d) -ity
- Sending letters is a/an means of communication. Longman
 a) up to date b) online c) modern d) traditional

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



e.g. I **visited** my grandma yesterday.

My parents **were** at the cinema last Friday.

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

1 Verb "to be":

I		frightened.
He	was	> hungry.
She	wasn't	> a nurse.
It		> big.

اسم مفرد

You		early.
We	were	> at school.
They	weren't	> quiet.

اسم جمع

Yes/No questions السؤال بمعنى هل

Affirmative: They **were** excited.

He **was** busy.

Question: **Were** they excited?

Was he busy?

تذكر أنه يتم تحويل **I was** إلى **Were you** في حالة السؤال.

e.g. Were you happy at the party? - Yes, I was.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He (be) at the library yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط والفاعل He.

2 They (didn't) happy last Friday because they lost race.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't) لوجود صفة والجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط والفاعل جمع.

2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

Form

التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject

Affirmative

الإثبات

e.g. Nayra **watched** an exciting match **yesterday**.

(فعل منتظم)

My friends and I **went** to the exhibition **last Friday**.

(فعل غير منتظم)

لاحظ الفرق في التصريف الثاني للفعل بين الأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال غير المنتظمة. راجع جداول تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة داخل الدروس.

مصدر الفعل + didn't + الفاعل Subject

Negative النفى

e.g. • Dalia **didn't listen** to music **last** night.

• My friends **didn't take** a bus **yesterday**.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Last year, I (spend) my holiday in Alex.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (spent) لوجود **Last** الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط.

2 We (not/use) the computer last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use) لوجود **last** الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط وهى هنا فى صيغة النفي.

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بفعل مساعد

...? **inf.** + subject الفاعل + **Did**

e.g. • A: Did you **clean** your room **last** night?

B: Yes, I did. / B: No, I didn't.

Question السؤال

B) Wh- question: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

...? **inf.** + subject الفاعل + **did** + (أداة استفهام) Q. Word

e.g. • A: What time **did** you **go** to bed?

B: I **went** to bed at 10 o'clock.

منذ ago ... - الماضى ... last - أمس (yesterday)

(in 2010) سنة فى الماضى + in - فى الماضى in the past -

Key words

e.g. • My grandfather **was born** **in** 1950.

• Nada **drew** a nice picture **last** week.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 When did you (bought) the laptop?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (buy) لوجود **did** التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2 (Next) year, I visited Paris and Rome.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Last) لوجود الفعل **visited** الذى يدل على زمن الماضى البسيط.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last year, I (spend) my holiday in Hurghada.
2. He (painting) a beautiful picture last week.
3. Who did you (met) at the park yesterday?
4. Adel (not/win) the tennis competition last week.
5. They (be) late for school yesterday. أسبوت ٢٠٢٤
6. They built a sandcastle at the beach and (play) in the waves.
7. They didn't (enjoying) their time at the cinema yesterday.
8. Last year, I (be/not) a good swimmer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
9. What did you (decided) four years ago?
10. Did he (stopped) in front of the sports centre?
11. My parents (be) at the hospital yesterday because my mum didn't feel well.
12. We (have) ice cream last dinner.
13. My cousins and I went to the mall and (buy) a lot of things.
14. Kamal (not/invited) his cousin to his wedding last month. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
15. (Was) your brother study all his lessons last weekend?
16. My father (want) to be a champion when he was young. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
17. Last year, I (not/visit) Alexandria. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
18. I got a visa and (fly) to London last Friday.
19. We (finish) our science project last week. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
20. Columbus (arrive) in America in 1492. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

- e.g. • Anas **was doing** his homework at 5 a.m. yesterday.
 • Children **were eating** ice cream yesterday afternoon.

١- شيء حدث في وقت محدد تمامًا في الماضي.

1. We **were playing** football yesterday evening.

٢- حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي. (وهنا نستخدم الماضي البسيط معه).

2. While I **was sleeping**, my uncle visited us.

٣- شيئين حدثا في نفس الوقت في الماضي.

3. While she **was cooking** dinner, her kids **were watching** TV.

Usage

الاستخدام

Form

التكوين

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **was + inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**

e.g. • Kareem **was playing** football **all day** yesterday.

Affirmative

الإثبات

We, You, They, اسم جمع + **were + inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**

e.g. • Dina and Hossam **were playing** tennis at **10:30** yesterday.

Subject + **was/were(n't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل + **ing**

Negative

النفي

e.g. • I **wasn't sleeping** last Friday evening.

• My parents **weren't watching** the film.

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بفعل مساعد

Was + (I, he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + inf. مصدر الفعل + **ing?**

Question

السؤال

e.g. • **A: Was Aya sleeping** yesterday afternoon?

B: Yes, she was.

B: No, she wasn't.

Were + (we, you, they, اسم جمع) + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

e.g. A: Were you watching TV?

B: Yes, I was.

B: No, I wasn't.

B) Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + was/were + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

e.g. A: What were you doing at 5:00 yesterday?

B: I was playing football.

While/As بينما / أثناء - When عندما

1. While/As + past continuous , past simple

e.g. While I was reading a book, the phone rang.

2. Past simple + while/as + past continuous

e.g. Grandfather arrived while Mum was cooking.

3. When + past simple , past continuous

e.g. When it rained, I was cycling to school.

4. Past continuous + when + past simple

e.g. My father was watching TV when the light turned off.

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

لاحظ



إذا لم يتبع While فاعل فيأتي الفعل بعدها inf. + ing بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحدًا في الجملتين.

1. While + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing , past simple

e.g. While returning home, I met my old friend, Rami.

للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر.

2. While/As + ماضٍ مستمر , ماضٍ مستمر

e.g. While/As my mum was cooking, I was cleaning the house.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 While John was playing the guitar, Linda (come) in.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (came) لأن الجملة التي تتبع While تأتي في زمن الماضي المستمر، أما الجملة الأخرى فتأتي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

2 We (not/cycle) all day yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't cycling) لوجود all day yesterday ويأتي معها ماضٍ مستمر.

3 Was Laila (played) computer games all day yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (playing) لوجود Was التي يتبعها فعل مضارع إليه ing.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The baby (sleep) peacefully yesterday evening.
2. We (eating) ice cream at seven yesterday.
3. (Be) your mum and dad cooking dinner yesterday evening?
4. My sister (listen) to music while I was playing video games.
5. We (work) hard all day yesterday.
6. They weren't watching TV when I (enter) the room.
7. What (you/were) doing at the park yesterday?
8. Samy was driving home (as) he saw a terrible accident.
9. While I was studying, my mum (makes) lunch.
10. I was riding my bike (while) I saw a big dog.
11. What were you doing when I (phone) you?
12. While I (took) a bath, the telephone rang.
13. As I (study), my cat went into my room.
14. While (play) football, I hurt my leg.
15. While we (sleep), the doorbell rang.
16. While Amal (read), Asmaa called her.
17. While my mum was cooking, I (clean) the house.
18. They (playing) tennis when we got there.
19. While Ahmed (do) his homework, the telephone rang.
20. As I (watch) TV, the light went out.

الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤

أسوان ٢٠٢٣

الأقصر ٢٠٢٢

السويس ٢٠٢٢

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢



اليوم ٢٠٢٤

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister (go) to the mall yesterday.
2. My friends didn't (swam) in the swimming pool.
3. I saw my friend in the park while he (read) a book.
4. She (study) for her exam when her dad came home.
5. While we were playing, our mother (do) the shopping.
6. She (play) the piano when she was younger.
7. While Maha (watch) TV, she slept.
8. While I was reading a book, I (hear) a loud noise.
9. He used to read a book in bed before he (go) to sleep.
10. While I was sleeping, my sister (play) the piano loudly.
11. She (study) for the test last night.
12. What (you/do) yesterday?
13. It (rain) all day yesterday.
14. She (cooked) dinner when I arrived.
15. While my father (walk) to work, it got dark.
16. She was singing in the shower when the phone (ring).
17. While we (play) football, it got dark.
18. I (study) my lessons when my father returned home.
19. While (sleep), I had a terrible dream.
20. We (see) a beautiful sunset at the beach last weekend.

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Write it right

How to write a review of Egyptian handicrafts

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن شراء بعض الأصناف من الأشغال اليدوية المصرية لبيعها

- What are the handicrafts you want to buy?
- What do they look like?
- What are they made of?
- How much are they?
- How long does delivery usually take?
- Do you have any special offers?
- What colours/sizes do they have?
- Why do people want to buy them?

Writing tips

Make use of strong verbs:

It will make your sentence
sound more appropriate.

الاستفادة من الأفعال القوية: سيجعل
جملة أكثر ملائمة

Example

"A review of Egyptian handicrafts"

Egypt has a long history of making beautiful handicrafts. They can be carpets, baskets and colourful pots. They can be made from wood, leather or wool. They can be decorated with colourful things. Some people like them to be traditional and others like them to be modern. I need to buy some handicrafts from the shops and markets in my area. The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts. People who live here sell carpets, baskets and colourful pots. Some women in a village near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood and leather. These handicrafts are very popular with tourists and help the Egyptians to earn money.

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of an item in your house you bought"



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

best – earn – products – quality – beat – better

The handicraft business is famous all over Egypt. This helps a lot of people to
(1) money. Tourists like to buy Egyptian (2) when they
visit Egypt. They admire the (3) of such things. They think they are
(4) than any souvenirs in other countries.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(٢٠٢٣) بلادي

Egyptian handicrafts are beautiful things that people make with their hands. They have been making handicrafts in Egypt for thousands of years.

One famous handicraft is called pottery. It is made by shaping clay into different shapes like cups, plates and bowls. The Egyptians paint these pieces with bright colours. They use them for eating and drinking or as decorations in their homes. Another special one is making beautiful carpets. They have many designs. These carpets are soft to walk on. The Egyptians also make pretty jewellery. They use different materials like gold and stones. They make necklaces and earrings.

These Egyptian handicrafts are loved all over the world. They tell us about the ancient Egyptians and their amazing culture. So next time you see a beautiful piece of pottery, a colourful carpet, or a piece of jewellery, remember that it is a special object made by clever hands in Egypt!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
a) industry b) technology c) handicrafts d) jewellery
- The underlined word "pretty" means
a) costly b) expensive c) ordinary d) beautiful
- Jewellery can be made by using
a) gold b) clay c) stones d) a and c

B) Answer the following questions:

- Infer how many handicrafts are in the text.
.....
- Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.
.....
- Do you think Egyptian handicrafts will end over the years? Why?/ Why not?
.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- While I was doing my homework, the computer sudden turned off. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -ing c) -er d) -ed

2. To is to put electricity into something such as a phone. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a) fill b) decorate c) change d) charge
3. I bought new for the flashlights.
 a) batteries b) changes c) passwords d) styles المنيا ٢٠٢٤
4. A is a word that you type to log into a computer.
 a) password b) keyboard c) letter d) mouse
5. Hatim has a strange way to study. I don't like his
 a) style b) steel c) form d) password
6. The film was amazing. I liked it. The antonym of "amazing" is ".....".
 a) colourless b) bright c) surprising d) ordinary

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- When I opened the door, it (raining).
- He (hear) a loud noise while he was talking to his friend.
- While Rana was riding her bike, she (fall) off.
- She (reads) the newspaper last night.
- What were you doing when I (phone) you?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of a problem with your laptop"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- When I opened my eyes, I (see) a wonderful view.
- He broke his leg while (ride) his bike at the weekend.
- While he was taking a shower, his sons (eat) lunch.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

call back (v)	يعاود الاتصال	email (v)	يرسل رسالة بريد إلكتروني
company (n)	شركة	negative (adj)	سلبي
complain (ed) (v)	يشكو/يشتكى	order (ed) (v/n)	يطلب/طلب
complaint (n)	شكوى	positive (adj)	إيجابي

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

mixed (adj)	مختلط	seller (n)	بائع
points (n)	نقاط	source (n)	مصدر
preparatory (adj)	إعدادي	title (n)	عنوان (موضوع)
primary (adj)	ابتدائي	toaster (n)	آلة تحميص الخبز
product (n)	منتج	trusted (adj)	موثوق به

المفردات الإضافية

Choose and complete: complain – company – toaster – on

- I heard you that your laptop isn't working properly.
- We can use the to make warm sandwiches.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
broken (adj)	مكسور	damaged	محطم	unbroken	غير مكسور
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ	nasty	كريه/مقرف
happy (adj)	سعيد	glad	سعيد	unhappy/sad	غير سعيد/حزين
horrible (adj)	فظيع	terrible	فظيع	attractive	جذاب
main (adj)	أساسي/هام	essential/important	أساسي/هام	unimportant	غير هام
worried (adj)	قلق	anxious	قلق	unworried/relaxed	غير قلق

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

answer > a complaint	يجيب/يرد على شكوى	make > a complaint	يقدم شكوى
keep > calm	يحافظ على الهدوء	order > pots	يطلب أواني

Prepositions

حروف الجر

as a present for	كهدية لـ	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن
happy with	سعيد بـ	worried about	قلق على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
mean	meant	meant
send	sent	sent

Check Point

Choose and complete:

broken – sent – with – on

- I'm happy my new colouring book.
- The cup is, so we need a new one.
- I an email to my friend yesterday.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها وحروف
الجر وتصريفات
الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Definitions

التعريفات

call back	يعاود الاتصال	to return ⁽¹⁾ a phone call
complaint	شكوى	something that you say or write when you are unhappy about something because you think it is wrong or not very good
email	يرسل رسالة بريد إلكتروني	to send a message ⁽²⁾ electronically ⁽³⁾
order (ed)	يطلب/طلب	when a customer asks someone to send, bring ⁽⁴⁾ or make something for them

(1) يرجع

(2) رسالة

(3) إلكترونياً

(4) يُحضر

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
express (v)	يعبر	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		expression (n)	تعبير
toast (v/n)	يحمص/خبز محمص	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		toaster (n)	آلة تحميص الخبز
noise (n)	ضوضاء	-y		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		noisy (adj)	صاخب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Why might a customer call a company after he/she has ordered some items from them?

Listen to Ali calling Egyptian Handicrafts about some items he ordered.

How is Ali feeling? Why?

SB page 19

Hisham Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts⁽¹⁾.

How can I help you?

Ali Hello, I want to make a complaint⁽²⁾.

Hisham Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Ali I ordered some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

Hisham I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number, please?

Ali Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8. I emailed you last week.

Hisham Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery⁽³⁾ to Kenya, is that right?

Ali That's correct.

Hisham Hmm, yes, the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number, please?

Ali Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please?

Hisham Of course.

Ali Thank you. Goodbye.



(1) حرف يدوية

(2) شكوى

(3) توصيل

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What's Ali's complaint?
- 2 When was Ali's order?
- 3 What do you think of shopping online?



Pre-listening question:

- Do you prefer online shopping? Why/ Why not?

Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

WB page 83

Mrs Nahla Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.

(1) ميكروويف

Assistant Oh, dear. What's the problem?

(2) عنصر

Mrs Nahla I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a **microwave** ⁽¹⁾!

Assistant I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name, please?

Mrs Nahla Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

Assistant Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery company and ask them to send you the correct **item** ⁽²⁾.

Mrs Nahla Can they take the microwave when they come?

Assistant Yes, of course.

Post- listening question:

- What would you do if you were Mrs Nahla?

Lesson 6

Work in pairs. Look quickly at the texts and answer the questions.

SB page 20

Great Machine!



I bought this as a **present** ⁽¹⁾ for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use. It also makes a really **delicious** ⁽²⁾ cup of coffee. The **delivery** ⁽³⁾ was quick, too!

Don't buy this machine!



First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the **machine** ⁽⁴⁾ arrived, it was **broken** ⁽⁵⁾! It looked good but it was very noisy and the coffee was cold and **horrible** ⁽⁶⁾. I sent it back and I will buy a different one.



(1) هدية

(2) لذيذ

(3) التوصيل

(4) آلة

(5) معطل (مكسور)

(6) فظيم / سيئ جداً

Pre-reading question: - What do you think of online shopping?

Read the reviews of two items. The two reviews are mixed up.

Can you write them in the correct order?

WB page 84

Review 1 I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However, when they used it, the food didn't cook very well. It was **horrible**⁽¹⁾. I sent it back and will buy a different one.



(1) مكيبر الصوت (2) فظيع (سيئ جداً)
(3) صاخب/مزعج

Review 2 I bought this **speaker**⁽²⁾ as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one problem with it: her parents think it is too **loud**⁽³⁾!



Post-reading question: - What title could you give to Review 2?

Lesson 7

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

SB page 21

Yesterday I **went** to the market and I **bought** some new things for my bedroom. While I **was shopping**, I **saw** my friend Lara. She **helped** me to choose a new carpet. Today, my dad **painted** my bedroom. Now it **is** blue. It **looks** really good!

Guessing a meaning of a vocabulary:

مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة في النص:

تعتبر مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة في النص من المهارات التي قد تختبرها قطعة الفهم، وتعتمد على فهم معنى الكلمة من خلال السياق.

"It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick."

The underlined word "quick" means

a) happy

b) fast

c) slow

d) strong

Pre-reading question: - Do you have a smartphone? Who bought it for you?

 **Complete the sentences with these words.**

WB page 85

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to **charge** the battery. To do this, he **plugged in** the phone and **turned** it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to **fill in** some information about himself. The phone asked for a **password**. Now he can **log in** and use his phone. It's very nice!



 **Choose the correct words.**

WB page 85

Huda Look at these two **wooden boxes**⁽¹⁾. Do you like **either** of them, Lama?

Lama Yes, I like **both** of them, but they are **expensive**⁽²⁾.

Huda What about these **pots**⁽³⁾? I like the red one and the blue one.

Lama Sorry, I like **neither** the red one **nor** the blue one, but the yellow one is nice.

Huda We should choose something that we **both** like. I think we should **either** buy the **leather bag**⁽⁴⁾ **or** the carpet.

Lama OK, let's buy the leather bag. The **carpet**⁽⁵⁾ is a bit big!

(1) صناديق خشبية

(2) غالي الثمن

(3) أوان

(4) حقيبة جلد

(5) سجادة

Post-reading questions:

1 Why is Karim excited?

2 What was the problem with the wooden boxes?

3 Why do you think they should buy something they both like?



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list: أينأؤنا فى الخارج ٢٠٢٣

delivery – online – can – able – discount – account

I read a nice advertisement yesterday. It was about (1) shopping. We (2) buy what we want and the (3) is free. Besides, we can replace or return the item if we don't like it. At the same time, we can benefit from the available (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's great to see you always have ideas.
a) negative b) positive c) noisy d) horrible
2. I can't wait to try your delicious cakes. The antonym of "delicious" is ".....".
a) horrible b) tasty c) glad d) attractive
3. To get the noun of "express", add the suffix ".....".
a) -y b) -er c) -ist d) -ion
4. Mazin isn't here at the moment. Could you later?
a) call back b) chat c) order d) send back
5. The drums made a loud noise. To form the adjective of "noise", we add ".....".
a) -ion b) -y c) -ful d) -ing
6. The laptop I ordered online was broken, so I made a الحيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) complaint b) deal c) letter d) shop
7. Let's give Grandma a special for her birthday.
a) order b) complaint c) apology d) present
8. To find out more, visit our We have many goods online.
a) sight b) office c) company d) website
9. The table is broken, so we should repair it. To get the opposite of "broken", add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) dis- c) en- d) im-
10. The main colour of the painting is blue. "Main" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) essential b) damaged c) noisy d) glad



Speaking

Making and answering a complaint

تقديم شكوى والرد عليها

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Hello, how can I help you?

مرحبًا، هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟

Hello, I want to make a complaint.

مرحبًا، أريد أن أقدم شكوى.



Oh, dear. What's the problem?

يا إلهي! ما المشكلة؟

Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

يفيد موقعكم الإلكتروني أن التوصيل يستغرق ٥ أيام، ولكني ما زلت أنتظر.



I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number, please?

آسف جدًا بشأن هذا. هل يمكنني أن أحصل على اسمك ورقم الطلب من فضلك؟

Yes, it's Sara Ali, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.

نعم، أنا سارة علي. رقم الطلب هو ٣٤٤٥٣٨.



I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number, please?

سأعود للاتصال بك. هل يمكنني الحصول على رقمك؟

Yes, it's 254 667578.

نعم، إنه ٢٥٤٦٦٧٥٧٨.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Mazen is making a complaint.

Assistant: Hello. How can I help you?

Mazen : (1).....

Assistant: A complaint, (2).....?

Mazen : I want to change the new television.

Assistant: Why do you want to change it?

Mazen : (3).....

Assistant: (4).....?

Mazen : I bought it last week.

Assistant: Do you have the receipt to change it?

Mazen : (5).....

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mariam is making a complaint about a kettle that she has bought.

Mariam : Hello, can I speak to the manager, please?

Assistant : Yes, of course (1).....?

Mariam : I have bought a kettle and I want to make a complaint.

Assistant : (2).....?

Mariam : It doesn't work well.

Assistant : Did you read the instructions leaflet well?

Mariam : (3).....

Assistant : Why?

Mariam : (4).....

Assistant : Sorry, give me your email and I will send you the instructions leaflet.

Mariam : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

with – for – present – wasn't – didn't – horrible

I surprised my parents with a special (1)..... - a microwave! I thought they would love it, but they weren't very happy (2)..... it. It looked so nice in the kitchen and it came really fast. But when they tried to use it, the food (3)..... cooked well at all! It turned out to be (4)..... ! So, I decided to return it for a better one.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An is a message that you send electronically.
a) website b) order c) email d) blog
- When a customer asks someone to send something for them. They something.
a) answer b) plug c) fill d) order
- The tea tasted horrible. "Horrible" is a synonym for ".....".
a) terrible b) terrific c) pleasant d) delicious
- My mother is a good cook. She cooks food.
a) delicious b) nasty c) bad d) ugly
- We usually use the toast to heat our bread. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -ed b) -ing c) -or d) -er
- "Worried" is to "relaxed" as "....." is to "attractive".
a) anxious b) horrible c) glad d) tasty

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Both of my friends (advises) me to read this book.
- Elephants are (biggest) than lions.
- None of the books on the shelf (isn't) mine.
- How did the boy (finished) his homework on time?
- Who were you (play) with in your room?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The best and worst items of technology in your house"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

- My father bought me this watch a present on my birthday.
a) like b) such c) as d) such as
- You have sent me the wrong; I ordered an oven and not a kettle.
a) charge b) change c) term d) item

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The teacher was angry with me because the composition
(no/write) carefully.
- Don't make noise while your father (was) sleeping.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Aya is telling Taher about a problem with her laptop.

Taher : Hi. How can I help you?

Aya : (1).....

Taher : Your laptop? It's very new! (2).....?

Aya : It turned off suddenly. Now I can't log in and I think I lost my stored files.

Taher : Was the laptop plugged in?

Aya : (3).....; I was charging the battery.

Taher : (4).....?

Aya : Yes, I turned it on again, but then it said my password was wrong.

Taher : Wrong password! Don't worry, I'll show (5).....

Aya : Thanks a lot. I will follow your instructions to restore my password.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A:

deals – cheapest – smart – cheaper – dolls – price

Last week, we went to a big shopping centre. We wanted to buy a (1)..... TV. We were lucky because we had lots of (2)..... . We were pleased to get a nice TV at a good (3)..... . It is the (4)..... smart TV we have ever bought.

B:

technology – none – all – assistant – prize – price

Yesterday, I went to a nearby mall to buy a digital camera. The shop (1)..... showed me three models, but (2)..... of them was smart. I walked around and found one that seemed appropriate. I was pleased because it was at a reasonable (3)..... and up to the latest (4)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a container or device in which water is boiled.

- a) kettle b) fan c) oven d) fridge

2. She usually assists us in times of need. To get the noun of "assist", add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ness b) -ant c) -ment d) -or

3. I will turn on the computer to do the research. "Turn on" here means ".....".

- a) stop b) start c) disconnect d) contact

4. My mobile is empty. I need to recharge it.

- a) screen b) charger c) battery d) software

5. I'm proud that the Egyptian cotton clothes are the best

- a) amount b) number c) quality d) quantity

6. Both TVs have a big; I am going to buy one of them.

- a) sail b) amount c) discount d) deal

7. There is a grand at the shopping centre; let's go there.

- a) sell b) cell c) sail d) sale

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Neither) my parents encourage me to depend on myself.

2. He doesn't have any leg injuries. (Either) are physically fit.

3. No question was difficult. I answered (none) of them.

4. Neither of these TVs (are) smart.

5. A: Why (do) you go to school yesterday? B: Because I was ill.

6. She was waiting impatiently (while) the plane landed safely.

7. You gave two quick answers. Don't worry, (each) are correct.

8. I don't know where Rami is; he is (both) in the office or at home.

9. I'm sure you're (lucky) than me!

10. What is the (bad) situation you've ever faced?

11. Neither the smart TV nor the large TV (suit) the customer.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Usama is calling an electronics shop to make a complaint.

Assistant: Can I help you?

Usama: (1).....

Assistant: Oh dear! (2).....?

Usama: I ordered a microwave from your website, but it hasn't arrived yet.

Assistant: (3).....?

Usama: I made the order three weeks ago.

Assistant: (4).....?

Usama: OK. I'm Usama and the order number is 18976.

Assistant: I'll call the delivery company to know the problem. Then I'll call you back.

Usama: (5).....

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

website – was – delivery – had – good – discount

أزهر أسبوط ٢٠٢٤

Last month, I bought a kettle from an online (1)..... . I waited for three weeks for (2)..... . When the kettle arrived, it (3)..... broken. I made a complaint to send it back and get another one. They sent me a (4)..... kettle and took the broken one.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الأقصر ٢٠٢٤

Buying and selling are part of everyday activities. People used to do this a long time ago. But shopping habits have changed a lot. In the past, you could deal directly with a person. These days, there is a new concept of shopping called "online shopping". Many people love to shop online which has many advantages. It saves time and effort. You can buy what you want anytime without moving. So, I decided to buy online. I ordered a microwave as a present for my mother on her birthday.

After two days, the delivery arrived at my house and I opened the box to put a new microwave in the kitchen. My mother was very happy with it because it was great and looked good in her kitchen and it was easy to use. It also made really delicious meals. The delivery was quick, too!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
a) shopping in the mall b) shopping online
c) birthday party d) buying a microwave
2. The writer bought for his mother a
a) toaster b) kettle
c) microwave d) coffee machine
3. Online shopping is useful because it
a) is expensive b) takes a long time
c) costs much money d) saves time and effort

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to?
.....
5. Do you think the writer's mother was happy? Why?
.....
6. Summarise the second paragraph of the text in one sentence.
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is used for keeping food fresh.
a) kettle b) fan c) oven d) fridge
2. Ahmed is a smart boy. "Smart" means
a) bad b) terrible c) sad d) intelligent
3. I my laptop battery a short time ago.
a) guessed b) dropped c) imagined d) charged
4. Students should their school rules. They should behave according to them.
a) ignore b) draw c) follow d) guess
5. The opposite of "anxious" is " "
a) aware b) careful c) relaxed d) worried
6. Eman was-happy when she lost the final tennis match.
a) un- b) im- c) dis- d) -in

1. While (was watching) watching TV, I felt a severe headache.

2. My father is five years (older) my mother.

3. The shop assistant showed Hala two skirts, but she didn't like
(neither) of them.

4. (All) of us can buy tickets for the party. We don't have enough money.

5. I was reading a detective story (while) I heard a noise.

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

المقيوم ٢٠٢٤

"Some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like"

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, typical of primary school handwriting practice paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Let's go shopping 109

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hazem wants to buy a smart TV.

Assistant : How can I help you, sir?

Hazem : (1).....

a) I don't know.

b) No, thanks.

c) I want to buy a smart TV.

d) Yes, please.

Assistant : Look at these TVs, they are all new.

Hazem : Are they smart?

Assistant : (2).....

a) No, they weren't.

b) Yes, they are.

c) Yes, they have.

d) Thank you.

Hazem : (3).....

a) How often is the bigger one?

b) How much is the bigger one?

c) How far is the bigger one?

d) How long is the bigger one?

Assistant : The bigger one is 8,000 pounds.

Hazem : (4).....

a) Does it have a discount?

b) Has it a discount?

c) Is it a discount?

d) Was it a discount?

Assistant : Yes, it has a discount of 20%.

Hazem : Great! (5).....

a) No, thanks.

b) Goodbye.

c) I'll take it.

d) Yes, please.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. They (playing) tennis when we got there.

a) play

b) are playing

c) were playing

d) played

2. It is (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.

a) better

b) best

c) well

d) the best

3. This is the (easy) exam I have ever done.

a) easier

b) easiest

c) easily

d) more easy

4. They (visit) us at home last week.

a) visits

b) visited

c) visiting

d) was visiting

5. Neither Ali nor I (be) at the cinema last night.

a) are

b) is

c) was

d) am

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Unit 3

MY COMMUNITY



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading An article about a plan to help people; a community social network page; *David Copperfield*; an online message about a community project

Writing An article about how to help people; a social network message about a community problem; a survey about your community

Listening A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other

Speaking Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings

Language Adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*

Life Skills Participation: responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity



- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسجيل الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	initiative (n)	مبادرة
architect (n)	مهندس معماري	leisure (n)	وقت فراغ/ترفيه
community (n)	مجتمع	make a difference	يحدث اختلافًا
disappointing (adj)	محبط	neighbourhood (n)	حي/جيرة
deliver (ed) (v)	يسلم/يوصل	pavement (n)	رصيف (شارع)
disabled (adj)	معاق	provide (d) (v)	يوفر/يقدم
elderly (adj)	كبير السن	public services (n)	خدمات عامة
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	rural (adj)	ريفى
equal opportunity (n)	تكافؤ الفرص	surprise (d) (v/n)	يدهش/ مفاجأة
facilities (n)	تسهيلات/مرافق	survey (n)	دراسة استقصائية/استبيان
health care (n)	الرعاية الصحية	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع

المفردات الإضافية

Additional Vocabulary

accessible (adj)	يمكن الوصول إليه	festival (n)	مهرجان
achievement (n)	إنجاز	interest (ed) (v/n)	يهتم/اهتمام
quality (n)	جودة	heading (n)	عنوان رئيسي
community centre (n)	مركز اجتماعي	in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
education (n)	التعليم	match (ed) (v)	يطابق/يتماشى
electricity (n)	كهرباء	project (n)	مشروع

Choose and complete:

quality - project - community - leisure

- 1 In my time, I prefer going to the club and play with my friends.
- 2 We began work on our own in May.
- 3 In a, people help each other.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
continue (v)	يستمر	go on	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
decent (adj)	لائق/كريم	kind	طيب	indecent	غير لائق/غير كريم
elderly (adj)	كبير السن	aged/old	عجوز/بالغ	young	شاب/صغير السن
encourage (v)	يشجع	support	يدعم	discourage	يحبط/يثبط العزيمة
improve (v)	يحسن	develop	يطور/ينمي	damage	يدمر
ill (adj)	مريض	sick/unwell	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة
local (adj)	محلي	national	قومي	international	عالمي
poor (adj)	فقير	needy	محتاج	rich/wealthy	غني/ثري
public (adj)	عام	national	قومي	private	خاص
repair (v)	يصلح	mend/fix	يصلح	damage/break	يدمر/يكسر
safe (adj)	آمن	secure	آمن	unsafe/dangerous	خطير
wide (adj)	واسع	large	ضخم	narrow	ضيق

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do > a survey	يقوم باستبيان/استطلاع	have > an effect on	لديه تأثير على
provide > health care	يوفر الرعاية الصحية	put up > streetlights	يركب أضواء للشوارع

Prepositions

حروف الجر

aim to + inf.	يهدف إلى	of all ages	من كل الأعمار
facilities for	تسهيلات/خدمات لـ	works of art	أعمال فنية

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
hear يسمع	heard	heard
teach يُدرّس/يُعلم	taught	taught

Choose and complete:

to - of - have - teach

- Eating healthy food can a positive effect on your body.
- Reading is a fun activity that students all ages can enjoy.
- Basmala aims finish reading her book before bedtime.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.



التعريفات

Definitions

deliver	يسلم/يوصل	take a letter or object to a place or building
elderly	كبير السن	old or becoming old
encourage	يشجع	try to make people do something
equal opportunity	تكافؤ الفرص	having the same chances ⁽¹⁾ in life as other people
facilities	تسهيلات/مرافق	equipment, rooms, etc. that people can use to do something
health care	الرعاية الصحية	looking after people's health ⁽²⁾
leisure	وقت فراغ/ترفيه	time when you are not working
make a difference	يحدث اختلافًا	having a good effect on a person, place or situation ⁽³⁾
neighbourhood	حي/جيرة	a small area of a town, or village and the people who live in it
pavement	رصيف (شارع)	the part that you walk on in a city that is next to a road
public services	خدمات عامة	services ⁽⁴⁾ , such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community
survey	دراسة استقصائية/استبيان	a group of questions that you ask people to find out information about something

(1) فرص

(2) صحة

(3) موقف

(4) خدمات

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
access (n)	وصول	-ible	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	accessible (adj) يمكن الوصول إليه
achieve (v)	ينجز/يحقق	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	achievement (n) إنجاز
educate (v)	يعلم	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	education (n) التعليم
electric (adj)	كهربائي	-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	electricity (n) كهرباء
neighbour (n)	جار	-hood	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم آخر	neighbourhood (n) حي/جيرة
pave (v)	يرصف/يمهد	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pavement (n) رصيف (شارع)

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	abled (adj) قادر	تعطى عكس المعنى	disabled (adj) معاق
en-	courage (n) شجاعة	تحول الاسم لفعل	encourage (v) يشجع
dis-			discourage (v) يحبط

Language Notes

1 own

خاص بـ (وهي تستخدم بعد صفات الملكية لتأكيد الملكية الخاصة بالشخص)

my/our/your/his/her/their/its + own + الاسم

- What do you think are the best things about your **own** community?

2 the + adj. الصفة

تعنى الاسم الجمع من الصفة أى الفئة كلها

the rich الأغنياء = rich people الناس الأغنياء

the disabled المعاقون = disabled people الناس المعاقون

- The **poor** are the people who don't have enough money.

3 might + inf.

ربما/قد (تستخدم للتعبير عن الاحتمال فى المضارع أو المستقبل)

- He **might return** from London tomorrow. No one knows!

4 the police + فعل جمع

الشرطة (اسم جمع)

- The **police have** the right to catch bad people.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My little sister might a new phone next month.
a) bought b) buying c) buys d) buy
- The police chasing a thief. I'm sure they will arrest him.
a) has b) was c) is d) are
- We should help poor.
a) the b) a c) an d) -

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 1

Pre-listening question: - What is special about your community?

Listen to Fareed and Salah talking about the community survey.

What facilities do they talk about?

SB page 23

Fareed I think the best thing about our **community**⁽¹⁾ is the **facilities**⁽²⁾. We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

Salah Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community **projects**⁽³⁾ where we can **volunteer**⁽⁴⁾ to help people, especially the **elderly**⁽⁵⁾.

Fareed Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology.

Salah We have really good **leisure activities**⁽⁶⁾ here too – sports facilities and the children's playground, for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

Fareed That's right, but I think we could **improve**⁽⁷⁾ our **equal opportunities**⁽⁸⁾. Our **pavements**⁽⁹⁾, for example, are not **accessible**⁽¹⁰⁾ for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

Salah You're right. They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting, actually.

Fareed We should go.

Salah Good idea!



- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| (1) مجتمع | (2) تسهيلات |
| (3) مشروعات | (4) يتطوع |
| (5) كبار السن | (6) أنشطة ترفيهية |
| (7) يحسن/يطور | (8) فرص متساوية |
| (9) أرصفة | (10) يمكن الوصول إليه |

Post-listening question: - Do you think community meetings are useful? Why/Why not?

Critical thinking skills

مهارات التفكير النقدي

Tips to help you answer a critical thinking question:

خطوات لمساعدتك في حل سؤال التفكير النقدي:

1) Read the passage well.

اقرأ القطعة جيداً.

2) Think carefully without allowing feelings or opinions to affect you.

فكر جيداً دون السماح لأي مشاعر أو أفكار خارجية أن تؤثر عليك.

3) Analyse the information and express your opinion.

حلل المعلومات التي جمعتها وأبد رأيك.

Pre-reading question:

- From your point of view, what are the best things about your own community?

 **Complete the text with these words and phrases.**

I live in a great **community**⁽¹⁾. There are lots of **sports activities** for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many **local community facilities**⁽²⁾ for people of all ages, including a great theatre and a **history museum**⁽³⁾. Our roads have wide **pavements**, so it is not a problem for **disabled people**⁽⁴⁾ to travel around. I help at one of the **community projects**⁽⁵⁾, too. We help the **elderly**⁽⁶⁾ to learn about the latest technology. My grandmother sends lots of text messages now!

Post-reading question:

- What's the main idea of the text?

Lesson 1

WB page 86

- (1) مجتمع
- (2) تسهيلات محلية
- (3) متحف التاريخ
- (4) غير القادرين
- (5) مشروعات مجتمعية
- (6) كبار السن

Pre-reading question:

- What problems do you think some of the people who live in villages have?

 **Read about the Decent Life Initiative**⁽¹⁾. What is it doing about the problems that you discussed in Exercise 1?

The Decent Life Initiative

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in **rural areas**⁽²⁾ in Egypt. The initiative **aims to**⁽³⁾ improve the quality of **public services**⁽⁴⁾. It **provides**⁽⁵⁾ more **health care**⁽⁶⁾, better **education**⁽⁷⁾ and better **job opportunities**⁽⁸⁾.



SB page 24

- (1) مبادرة حياة كريمة
- (2) المناطق الريفية
- (3) تهدف إلى
- (4) خدمات عامة
- (5) توفر
- (6) رعاية صحية
- (7) تعليم
- (8) فرص عمل
- (9) يصلح
- (10) يوصل
- (11) يشجع
- (12) أعمال تجارية

Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to **repair**⁽⁹⁾ their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to **deliver**⁽¹⁰⁾ medicine and help people who are ill.

The initiative also is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition, young people will also be **encouraged**⁽¹¹⁾ to find out about the interesting new **businesses**⁽¹²⁾ the Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work.

The Decent Life Initiative will continue to help people in different places around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people.

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think "The Decent Life Initiative" is an exciting plan?

Lesson 2



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Try to find an attractive to your article.
a) result b) interview c) heading d) community
- are the equipment, rooms, etc. that people can use to do something.
a) Pavements b) Facilities c) Surveys d) Festivals
- Reading books every day can improve your reading skills. The antonym of "improve" is ".....".
a) encourage b) repair c) damage d) develop
- I always my little brothers to help mum at home.
a) deliver b) volunteer c) interview d) encourage
- We went to the funfair as it is easily access- for everyone by public transport.
a) -ity b) -ion c) -ment d) -ible
- Parents food for you every day so you can grow strong and healthy. SB
a) provide b) affect c) deliver d) encourage
- This boy has much courage to climb the tree. To get the verb of "courage", add the prefix ".....".
a) dis- b) en- c) un- d) re-
- Sarah spoke to her friend in a decent way. The synonym of "decent" is ".....".
a) impolite b) cruel c) indecent d) kind
- "....." means many people who live together in the same area.
a) Education b) Community c) Electricity d) Interest
- To get the opposite of "healthy", add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) en- c) in- d) im-
- The country tries to improve public services, especially
a) education b) graduation c) presentation d) pollution
- We went to the public park and we enjoyed it there. The antonym of "public" is ".....".
a) private b) local c) national d) needy
- care means looking after people's health.
a) Neighbourhood b) Health c) Leisure d) Project
- We add the suffix "....." to the verb "educate" to get the noun.
a) -ment b) -ion c) -ity d) -ation
- A/An woman is climbing up the stairs with difficulty because she has weak knees.
a) adult b) oldest c) strong d) elderly

Time to Practise

الهادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣

include – strange – disabled – facilities – pavements – including

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. The antonym of "international" is "_____".

2. The antonym of "international" is " "
 a) global b) universal c) rich d) poor

3. That man works with a charity to help old people. That means he is a

4. The suffix “-er” gives a noun from the verb “to _____.”
- a) gymnast b) customer c) volunteer d) bully

5. The antonym of the word "dangerous":
- a) -est b) -tion c) -ship d) -ment

6. A/An is a group of questions about the safety of the word "dangerous" is ".....".
- a) serious b) difficult c) safe d) unsafe

- a) survey

7. We add the prefix "....." to the word "courage" to get the verb.

3. A is a small area of a town and the people who live there.
a) neighbourhood b) square c) im- d) dis-

- mean services, such as electricity, natural gas or water to help the members of the community.

- a) Difficulties
b) Healthy services
c) Individual differences
d) Public health

- To get the adjective from the noun "health", we add the suffix ".....".
- a) -y b) -ing c) -ly d) Public services
- الدخيلية ٢٠٢٢

- ٢٠٢٢ الفهم

- A mechanic repaired our car last week. The synonym of "repair" is "_____".

- e.g. • I **am reading** a story **now**.
 e.g. • She **is writing** a letter **at the moment**.
 e.g. • They **are writing** a letter **at present**.

Usage

الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to describe actions that are happening now.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

- e.g. • My grandfather **is using** his laptop **now**.

2. We use the present continuous to talk about finished future plans (at a specific time or place) and arrangements.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية النهائية (مستقبل مرتب له مسبقاً).

- e.g. • I'm **visiting** my parents this weekend.
 e.g. • He's **starting** his new job on Monday.
 e.g. • They're **moving** to their new flat next Friday.

- كيف تعرف أن الحدث مرتب له مسبقاً؟

- e.g. • Omar and I **are travelling** next week. (We have got the tickets.)

- يذكر الترتيب الذي تم.

- e.g. • Judy and Hadeer **are having** a party next Friday. (It's arranged.)

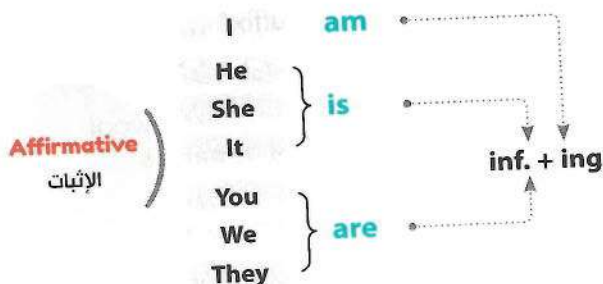
- يذكر كلمة دالة على الترتيب.

- e.g. • I **am meeting** my cousin at seven at the new restaurant.

- يحدد موعد أو مكان الحدث.

Form

التكوين



e.g. • I **am playing** football.

e.g. • He **is reading** a book.

e.g. • They **are swimming**.

Negative
النفي

I am not

He

She

It

is not (isn't)

You

We

They

are not (aren't)

inf. + ing

e.g. • I am not playing chess.

e.g. • He is not (isn't) watching TV.

e.g. • They are not (aren't) diving.

لاحظ



- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing) : (take - taking) - (come - coming)

- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالباً ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing) : (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ونضيف (y) قبل إضافة الـ (ing) : (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Question

السؤال

① Yes/ No questions:

السؤال بفعل مساعد

Am

Is

Are

subj.

الفاعل

inf. + ing ...?

e.g. • A: Are you studying French?

B: Yes, I am/we are.

B: No, I am not/we aren't.

② Wh- questions:

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q- Word

كلمة الاستفهام

+

am

is

are

subj.

الفاعل

inf. + ing ...?

e.g. • A: What are you doing? B: I'm helping my father.

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

احتسب! Watch out! - ما زال still - أنصت Listen! - انظر Look! - الآن now
- في الوقت الحاضر at present - في هذه اللحظة at the moment



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

① Gamal (arrive) at noon tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is arriving) لأنه مستقبل مرتب له (تم ذكر الوقت)، وهنا نستخدم المضارع المستمر.

② They (go) to Alexandria next holiday. They've arranged everything.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going) لوجود arranged التي تعني أن كل شيء مرتب له مسبقاً.

③ I can't go out. I (do) my homework now.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أي زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.



► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They are (travel) to Europe next week for their holiday.
2. The students (is) taking a quiz in the classroom tomorrow.
3. We (not/ work) next week. We're travelling to Paris.
4. What (you/doing) tonight?
5. I (go) to the park tomorrow. I've booked the tickets.
6. We can't visit you. We (have) a picnic next week.
7. She (visit) her grandma next Saturday. She phoned her.
8. Where are they (go) this weekend?
9. My dad (fly) to New York tomorrow. He has booked the ticket.
10. I (clean) my room after lunch. I have arranged.
11. My brother (not/ stay) home tonight. He is meeting his friends in the afternoon.
12. My mum is (help) me make a cake tomorrow.
13. I (leave) tomorrow. I've bought my train ticket.
14. We (get) married next July. We have invited our friends.
15. Noha (meet) her old friends next week. It's arranged.
16. Look! My new friend (coming) over there.
17. We (build) a new house next month. We have arranged everything.
18. We are (start) a new project next Sunday. It's arranged.
19. Where (you/go) at the present?
20. Anas (not/ play) tennis now; he is doing his homework.

القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

بنات سويف ٢٠٢٣

We use adjectives ending in **(-ing)** to describe a noun (thing/person) that **causes a feeling**.

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(-ing)** لوصف الاسم (الشيء/الشخص) الذي تسبب في الشعور. (مؤثر).

- e.g. • The scene of rubbish was **disappointing**.
• The results of the survey were **interesting**.

We use adjectives ending in **(-ed)** to describe **a feeling**.

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(-ed)** لوصف الشعور. (متأثر).

- e.g. • Khaled was **disappointed** to see the rubbish.
• I was **interested** to see the results of the survey.

لاحظ



أسماء الجماد تأخذ فقط الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(-ing)** أما الكائن الحي (إنسان/حيوان/طائر) فإنه يأخذ الاثنين **(-ing)** أو **(-ed)**.

- e.g. • The book is **interesting**. I am **interested** in reading it.
• The handball match was **exciting**. I was **excited** to watch the match.
• My cousin is **boring**. He doesn't like doing any activities.
• Wael is **interesting**. He lives on a boat! I like spending time with him.
• The goats were **frightened** of the lion. It's very **frightening**.

ادرس هذه الصفات جيدًا:

Adjective ending in -ing	Adjective ending in -ed	Adjective ending in -ing	Adjective ending in -ed
amazing مذهل	amazed مذهول	boring ممل	bored شاعر بالملل
disappointing محبط	disappointed محبط	exciting مثير	excited متشوق
surprising مدهش	surprised مندهش	interesting شيق	interested مهتم
tiring مُرهق	tired مُتعب	annoying مزعج	annoyed مزعج



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 I was really (bore) in that presentation.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bored) لأنها هنا تعبر عن الشعور بالصفقة.

- 2 Have you seen that film? It's really (frighten).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (frightening) لأنها هنا تصف (الفيلم).



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last week, Aya played the guitar in two concerts. She was (amaze). السويح ٢٠٢٤
2. The customers were (please) with the quality of service at the restaurant.
3. Hassan is (interest) in watching football matches. أسوان ٢٠٢٣
4. I woke up unhappy yesterday because I had a (terrify) dream.
5. Taking deep breaths helps me feel more (relax).
6. She was (annoy) by her little sister who was crying.
7. I started to get (worry) when they didn't arrive home.
8. My little sister was (scare) to walk alone in the street.
9. Eating ice cream on a hot day is (satisfy).
10. He is a (bore) person. I don't like to listen to him. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
11. I was (surprise) to see my cousin this morning because I thought he was in Cairo. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
12. He was (tiring) after playing all day in the hot sun.
13. I was very (frighten) when I saw the big dog.
14. I was (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤
15. The instructions for my new coffee machine are really (confused).
16. Villagers are (exciting) to hear about the plan. الأقصر ٢٠٢٤
17. She was (shock) by the news.
18. Mohamed Salah is an (amazed) footballer. فينا ٢٠٢٤
19. The cat was (frighten) when it saw the dog. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
20. The football match was very (excite). الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣

Time to Practise



تدريب تراكمي
على دروس
القواعد السابقة



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (meet) Mesbah at the airport at five.
2. Don't be (frighten). The dog won't bite you.
3. The match was (bored), so I stopped watching it.
4. I (play) tennis with my friends next Friday. Everything is OK.
5. Hend likes reading (excite) stories.
6. Our class (visiting) a museum next week. Our teacher has booked a bus!
7. Why are you looking so (worry)?
8. We (get) married in June. It's arranged.
9. The journey was really (tire).
10. The government (build) our new school next summer. Everything has been arranged.
11. I was (interesting) in knowing the truth.
12. Basmala (come) back next Tuesday. I can't wait to see her.
13. The museum is (amaze)! There are so many old things here.
14. The goats were very (frighten) when they saw the lion.
15. We can't visit you. We (meet) some friends after work.
16. The result of the exam was (disappointed).
17. She (go) to the dentist on Thursday.
18. I was (excite) to watch the new film last night.
19. I (fly) to Paris for a holiday soon. I've got the plane tickets!
20. Today's English lesson was very (interested). I learnt a lot.

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

سوهاج ٢٠٢٤

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

دمياط ٢٠٢٤

المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

مطروح ٢٠٢٤

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Write it right

How to write a review of the Decent Life Initiative.

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن مبادرة حياة كريمة.

- How many people live in villages around Egypt?
- Why did the government make the plan "The Decent Life Initiative" for these villages?
- How has the Decent Life Initiative helped the poor?
- What do you think of the initiative?

Writing tips

Think about the topic you are writing about and consider what the most relevant ideas or issues related to that topic are.

- فكر في الموضوع المطلوب منك الكتابة عنه وخذ في الاعتبار أكثر الأفكار ملائمة وارتباطاً بالموضوع.

Example

A review of the Decent Life Initiative

There are about 32 million people who live in rural areas in Egypt. The government has made a plan to make a difference to the lives of those people. The plan called "The Decent Life Initiative" aims to improve the quality of public services. It provides more health care, better education and good opportunities. Since 2019, it has helped many people to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses. It has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved facilities for disabled people and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools.

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of the role of the government in improving Egyptian villages"



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Jana and Noha are talking about the Decent Life Initiative.

Noha : Hi, Jana. What are you doing?

Jana : Hi, Noha. (1).....

Noha : (2).....?

Jana : It is about the Decent Life Initiative.

Noha : (3).....?

Jana : It is a plan to improve the quality of public services in rural areas.

Noha : Do you mean it'll help people in the villages to have better health care, education and other services?

Jana : (4).....

Noha : Can I read it when you finish it?

Jana : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

plane - community - and - rural - plan - nor

اسم ٢٠٢٤

The Decent Life Initiative is a great (1)..... that helps people who live in (2)..... areas. It has made a difference to our (3)..... . It aims to improve both public services (4)..... health care. We should support it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to try to make people do something.

- a) improve b) deliver c) continue d) encourage

2. To is to take a letter or object to a place or building.

- a) provide b) deliver c) volunteer d) improve

3. Our community has many We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

- a) problems b) surveys c) facilities d) differences

4. The students here have done something important. They have made a good

- a) achievement b) mistake c) electricity d) friend

اسم ٢٠٢٤

5. We add the prefix "....." at the beginning of the word "abled" to get its antonym.
 a) in- b) im- c) ir- d) dis-
6. Waleed can repair his bike. The antonym of the word "repair" is ".....". المصير ٢٠٢٤
 a) drive b) damage c) mend d) fix

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Five million new jobs is an (amazed) achievement.
- Mahy was (surprise) to see the Pyramids for the first time.
- I can't see you tomorrow. I (play) football with my friends. We have arranged to do so.
- He (meet) his uncle at the airport at 5 o'clock tomorrow.
- The kids were (boring) during the long car ride with nothing to do.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of the Decent Life Initiative"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Ramy feels (frighten) sometimes.
- I can't go out with you tomorrow. I (visit) my grandparents.
- You (have) a party next week. I'd like to come.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bench (n)	مقعد	lodger (n)	نزيل/مستأجر غرفة
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	meeting (n)	اجتماع
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	noticeboard (n)	لوحة إعلانات
experience (n)	خبرة	pay (paid) (v) (for)	يدفع
graffiti (n)	الرسم على الجدران	social network service (n)	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية
greet (ed) (v)	يحيي/يرحب بـ	tenant (n)	مستأجر منزل
kindness (n)	العطف	town hall (n)	مبنى البلدية
leaflets (n)	منشورات		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	pleasant (adj)	سار/جذاب/ممتع
communication (n)	تواصل	repairs (n)	إصلاحات
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
factory (n)	مصنع	rest (n)	راحة
forest (n)	غابة	salty (adj)	مالح
furniture (n)	أثاث	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
general (adj)	عام	stranger (n)	غريب (شخص)
historic (adj)	تاريخي	topic (n)	موضوع
lost and found	المفقودات	visitor (n)	زائر
manager (n)	مدير	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء

Check Point

Choose and complete:

experience - gave - kindness - donated

- The rich man showed great towards the poor.
- My brother got a new job because he has much
- Sarah her old toys to the children's hospital.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
fail (v)	يرسب/يفشل	go wrong	يفشل	succeed/pass	ينجح
kind (adj)	عطوف	friendly	ودود	unkind	غير عطوف
sunny (adj)	مشمس	bright/clear	ساطع	dark/cloudy	مظلم/غائم

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

feel	> unwell	يشعر بمرض (بوعكة)	help	> to a bench	يساعد لإيجاد مقعد
give	> a call	يتصل	share	> ideas	يشارك الأفكار

Prepositions

حروف الجر

clean up	ينظف	for sale	للبيع
communicate with	يتواصل مع	pleased/surprised by	مسرور/متدهش بـ
cover in	يُغطى بـ	a project on	مشروع في
donate for	يتبرع من أجل	thanks to	بفضل

Check Point

Choose and complete:

for – friendly – at – felt

- I stayed home from school today because I unwell.
- Our neighbour put his car up sale because he wanted to buy a bigger one.
- My new neighbour is very He is so kind.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions

التعريفات

bench	مقعد	a long ⁽¹⁾ seat for two people or more
graffiti	الرسم على الجدران	writing or pictures that people paint or draw on walls or buildings, although they should not do this
greet	يحيي	say hello to or welcome someone
kindness	العطف	the ⁽²⁾ quality of being kind, helpful and caring towards other people
lodger	نزيل/مستأجر غرفة	someone who ⁽³⁾ pays to live in another person's house/someone who pays for a room in a house
noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	a board that people put on a wall to put messages on

(1) مقعد

(2) جودة

(3) يدفع

pay	يدفع	to give money for work someone has done
social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية	a website that allows you to communicate and share information ⁽⁴⁾ with people in your area
surprised	مدهش	If you are surprised ⁽⁵⁾ , you do not expect ⁽⁶⁾ something and it seems strange or unusual.
tenant	مستأجر منزل	someone ⁽⁷⁾ who pays to live in a house

(4) معلومات

(5) مدهش

(6) تتوقع

(7) شخص ما

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
please (v)	يسعد	-ant		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		pleas ant (adj)	سار/جذاب/ممتع
lodge (v)	يؤجر غرفة	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		lodg er (n)	مستأجر غرفة
manage (v)	يدير					manag er (n)	مدير
strange (adj)	غريب	-ic		تحويل الصفة لاسم فاعل		strang er (n)	غريب (شخص)
history (n)	تاريخ			تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		histor ic (adj)	تاريخي
communicate (v)	يتواصل	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		communicat ion (n)	تواصل
compete (v)	يتنافس	-ition				competit ion (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
salt (n)	ملح	-y		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		salt y (adj)	مالح
kind (adj)	عطوف	-ness		تحويل الصفة لاسم		kind ness (n)	العطف
ill (adj)	مريض					ill ness (n)	المرض
dark (adj)	مظلم					dark ness (n)	الظلام
quiet (adj)	هادئ					quiet ness (n)	الهدوء
sad (adj)	حزين					sad ness (n)	الحزن
sweet (adj)	حلو					sweet ness (n)	حلاوة المذاق
weak (adj)	ضعيف					weak ness (n)	الضعف

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever heard about neighbourhood meetings?

Listen to people at a community meeting. Which of the forms of communication in Exercise 1 do they talk about? Why?

SB page 26



Man

Thank you all for coming along to the **meeting**⁽¹⁾. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it clearly?

Teen girl

What is the page from – is it a website?

Man

Yes, it's a website for the local community to share ideas, called a **social network service**⁽²⁾ page. We're going to start one too. Is anyone interested in helping?

Woman

It's a very good way to communicate with everyone – after all, not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering **leaflets**⁽³⁾.

Teen boy

How do we start?

(1) اجتماع

(2) خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية

(3) منشورات

Post-listening questions:

- 1 From your point of view, how can a social network service help the local community?
.....
- 2 Would you like to attend a community meeting? Why/Why not?
.....

Pre-reading question:

- Why do you think communicating with other people is important?

 Read the **social** ⁽¹⁾ **network service** ⁽²⁾ page. Which of the messages are asking for help?

SB page 26

Community Matters

The kindness of strangers

Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly **neighbour** ⁽³⁾ last week. He felt unwell, and someone kindly helped him to a **bench** ⁽⁴⁾ to sit on for a rest.



We need more trees!

A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with **pollution** ⁽⁵⁾ and also encourage more visitors to our town. Who is **interested in** ⁽⁶⁾ joining our project?



Computer repairs

Hi, neighbours – I have **experience** ⁽⁷⁾ in repairing computers and mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help!



(1) اجتماعي

(2) خدمة

(3) جار

(4) مقعد

(5) تلوث

(6) مهتم بـ

(7) خبرة

(8) متطوعون

(9) محيط

(10) رسومات على الجدران

(11) مبنى تاريخي

Let's help those in need!

Please donate food to people who don't have enough. **Volunteers** ⁽⁸⁾ are also wanted to help deliver boxes.



Art class

The community centre is going to be closed on Saturday next week, from 4 pm – 7 pm, for an art class.



Graffiti

I was **disappointed** ⁽⁹⁾ to see the **graffiti** ⁽¹⁰⁾ on the walls of the town hall. This is a **historic building** ⁽¹¹⁾! What are we going to do about it?



Post-reading question:

- Mention other examples of how the young can help in their communities.

Pre-reading question:

- How can we help poor children?

SB page 28

 Read and check your answers to Exercise 1.

David Copperfield

by Charles Dickens

I was working in the factory⁽¹⁾ when one day, my manager⁽²⁾ greeted⁽³⁾ me. 'You have a visitor⁽⁴⁾', he said, 'This is Mr Micawber.' 'Pleased to meet you, David,' said the man. 'I'd like you to be my lodger⁽⁵⁾'.

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife, their baby and two small children.

'I never thought that we'd need a lodger,' said Mrs Micawber. 'But we don't have enough money, you see.'

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid⁽⁶⁾ for my food and room.

The Micawbers were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, 'We have nothing to eat in the house!' I tried to give her some money.

'I can't take this,' she said. 'But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?'

So I sold some of their old books and furniture⁽⁷⁾. I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal.



- (1) مصنع (2) مدير
(3) يرحب بـ (4) زائر
(5) مستأجر/نزير (6) يدفع
(7) أثاث

Post-reading question:

- In what ways did people in David's community help each other?

What is a "summary"?

- A summary is a shortened version of a text that highlights its key points.
- الموجز هو صيغة مختصرة لنص يبرز نقاطه الرئيسية.

Question : Read the story carefully and summarise it in 2 sentences.

Answer : The story is about David Copperfield who was very poor, so he worked in a factory. He lived with a family and paid for his food and room.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to others by being kind and listening carefully when they talk.
a) respect b) donate c) listen d) ignore
2. It's very sunny today. The synonym of "sunny" is ".....".
a) cloudy b) bright c) cold d) foggy
3. We add the suffix "....." to the adjective "strange" to get the noun.
a) -ion b) -er c) -y d) -ness
4. A is someone who pays for a room in a house.
a) seller b) lodger c) buyer d) stranger
5. An is something that happens to you in your life.
a) experiment b) expert c) experience d) exercise
6. Teachers explained all the problems to their
a) tourist b) nurse c) manager d) cleaner
7. A is a board that people put on a wall to put messages on.
a) forest b) lodger c) noticeboard d) meeting
8. My uncle is a businessman and always has to discuss important topics.
a) services b) meetings c) competitions d) repairs
9. I sat on a wooden at the park and watched the birds fly by.
a) bench b) noticeboard c) forest d) factory
10. We form the noun of "communicate" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -er c) -ion d) -ation
11. My mother asked me to her a call if I'm going to be late.
a) give b) have c) do d) spend
12. To get the noun from the adjective "sick", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ment b) -ness c) -ition d) -ion
13. Tarek doesn't have any money, so I will for his metro ticket.
a) buy b) sell c) pay d) bay
14. Mr Kamal is a kind man. The opposite of "kind" is ".....".
a) friendly b) useful c) unhappy d) unkind
15. After a long day of working, it's time for you to take a and relax.
a) rest b) whiteboard c) forest d) service

Time to Practise



شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٣

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

rest - tiring - pavement - tired - asked - bench

Adel is an old man. He is seventy-five years old. While he was walking along the (1), he fell down and felt very (2), A young boy saw him and ran towards him. He (3) him to sit down and have a (4) Adel thanked the young boy for his wonderful treatment and kindness.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

1. To means saying hello to welcome someone.

- a) greet b) visit c) work d) fly

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

2. There are many monuments and ruins in Luxor. The word "monuments" here refers to buildings.

- a) new b) modern c) historic d) fashionable

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

3. is writing or pictures that people draw on walls.

- a) Graffiti b) Traffic c) Leaflet d) Headphone

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

4. A/An is someone who pays to live in a house.

- a) player b) tenant c) worker d) officer

بنها ٢٠٢٤

5. The suffix "....." turns the adjective "dark" into a noun.

- a) -ness b) -ous c) -ed d) -ing

الأقصر ٢٠٢٤

6. To succeed in your exams means to them.

- a) fail b) taste c) test d) pass

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣

7. If you are, you don't expect something and it seems strange or unusual.

- a) dead b) pleased c) surprised d) anxious

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

8. To get the noun from the verb "compete", add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ion b) -ment c) -ness d) -ition

أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

9. Aya is always pleased by the of her friends.

- a) kind b) kindness c) ill d) illness

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

10. Our teacher is kind and helpful. The synonym of "kind" is ".....".

- a) cool b) unkind c) friendly d) hard

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

11. People can communicate with each other all over the world. This means they use

- a) darkness b) maps c) books d) social network services

Quiz الخ من التدرجات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C

Language

Future with "(be) going to"

المستقبل باستخدام "(be) going to"

- e.g. • I'm **going to buy** a new car.
 e.g. • Omar **is going to join** a boarding school.
 e.g. • My parents **are going to fly** to London.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "(be) going to" when we already know our plans for the future.

- نستخدم (be + going to) عندما نعرف بالفعل خططنا للمستقبل.
 - لاحظ استخدام (be + going to) في الحالات الآتية.
 الخطط المستقبلية

1. Future plans:

- e.g. • We're **going to start** our own social network service. This is our **plan**.

النوايا

2. Intentions:

- e.g. • Rania **is going to help** her mother next Friday. It's her **intention**.

القرارات

3. Decisions:

- e.g. • Karim **is going to** visit Alexandria next summer; he decided to go there.

التنبؤات مع وجود دليل

4. Predictions with an evidence:

- e.g. • The sky is cloudy. It's **going to rain**.

الأحداث التي تكون على وشك الحدوث

5. Actions which are about to happen:

- e.g. • Be careful! You **are going to fall** in the water.

Form

التكوين

I	>	am (not)	going to + inf.
He			
She	>	is (not)	
It			
اسم مفرد			
You			
We	>	are (not)	
They			
اسم جمع			

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions: السؤال بفعل مساعد

Am >

I

Is >

he / she / it / اسم مفرد

going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

Are >

we / you / they / اسم جمع

e.g. A: Are your brothers going to try diving?

B: Yes, they are. / B: No, they aren't.

2 Wh-questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

am >

I

Q. word >

is >

he / she / it / اسم مفرد

going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

are >

we / you / they / اسم جمع

e.g. A: What are you going to do tomorrow afternoon?

B: I'm going to watch a football match on TV.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We (visit) the museum. We intended to do that.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going to visit) لوجود intended الدالة على النية.

2 How are they going (solve) this problem?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to solve) لوجود going التي يتبعها to + inf.

3 Where (you / going) to spend your weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are you going) لأنها صيغة سؤال.

4 Sarah made her decision, she (going/come) to the party.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is going to come) لأن الجملة تعبر عن قرار وفاعل الجملة مفرد.

5 I (not/going) watch the match next week. I have a meeting.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (am not going to) لأن الجملة تعطى معنى النفي.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Ziad (buy) a car. He planned that.
- Next summer, I (not /going) travel to England. I decided to spend it in the countryside.
- The teacher is going to (showing) us a page on the whiteboard.
- (You are) going to ride a horse?
- Give me the remote. I'm (go) to watch the film.
- Volunteers (is) going to plant some trees along the streets.
- Look at that man on the bridge! He is going (jump)!
- I've decided that I (speak) to my parents about the problem.
- (going/you) watch the new play tonight?
- We're going (start) a social network service page. Is anyone interested in helping?
- Next Monday, we (try) a new kind of medicine. This is our plan for the next week.
- We (going to) clean up the rubbish in our street.
- Salah (go) to visit Egypt next week, it's his plan.
- Omar and I (going) to spend the evening outdoors.
- I (going) read *David Copperfield* story in summer.
- What are you going (do) during the weekend?
- They (not/going) play tennis in the afternoon. They are going to study for their exams.
- Ayman (be/visit) Luxor; he has decided that.
- The volunteers are going to (cleaning) up the park.

المجموعة ٢٠٢٣

سواء ٢٠٢٣

أسبوع ٢٠٢٢



Write it right

1. How to write a short story

- I like reading stories.
- The last story I read is (اسم القصة). - It was
- (اسم القصة) is written by (اسم الكاتب). - It's about
- (الشخصية الرئيسية) was born in (السنة).
- ذكر الأشخاص الأخرى ثم سرد الأحداث met/ did (الشخصية الرئيسية).
- In the end,

كيفية كتابة قصة قصيرة

Writing tips

Think about how you want to structure your paragraph. This will make your paragraph more coherent and easier to read.

فكر كيف ستقوم باستخدام القواعد اللغوية في الفقرة. هذا سيجعل فقرتك أكثر ترابطاً وأسهل عند القراءة.

Example

A short story about David Copperfield

David Copperfield is a story by Charles Dickens. Dickens used many events from his early life to write this story. David Copperfield is the hero of the story. David was born after his father died. His mother loved him. His nurse looked after him like her son. David's mother married a man, but he was cruel to David. After his mother died, he left school and worked in a factory. One day, the manager told him that another man wanted a lodger because they were very poor, so he lived with them for a long time. After that, he lived with his aunt. He completed his school and became a reporter. In the end, he married.

2. How to write about a community problem كيفية الكتابة عن مشكلة مجتمعية

- Describe your neighbourhood. - Say why you love/don't love your neighbourhood.
- Talk about its problems. - Suggest solutions for its problems.
- Think how you want to improve it.

Example

A community problem

Firstly, let me say how much we all love our neighbourhood. The houses are all of great importance. Some of the houses are old and built in great style. However, they became dirty and full of graffiti. Now, they need painting. In our community meeting, we decided to improve these buildings and plant trees in front of each house. Furthermore, we need to put rubbish bins to keep the area clean. I encouraged all young people to help with our community project which takes a few months to finish. As soon as we complete our task, our neighbourhood becomes very attractive and it may be a tourist attraction. To conclude, we are still cleaning the area. So, we are looking for more and more volunteers to help us complete the project.



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

time – community – on – work – elderly – to

My friend and I are looking for some voluntary (1)..... We should all care about our (2)..... We want to help (3)..... people and young children (4)..... read. We can do that in our spare time, if you are interested please contact us using our email address or call us.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Peter,

Hi, I hope you are well. I'm sorry that I haven't sent you e-mails recently because we were busy moving back to our village after "The Decent Life Initiative" had improved it.

Let me first tell you what "Decent Life Initiative" means. It means a project to develop all the villages in Egypt.

In my new village now, we have a primary, a preparatory and a secondary school. I do not have to walk kilometres to go to my school every day. The facilities are the best thing in our community, we have great shops and many job chances. The new health care centre has modern equipment. We have playgrounds where we can play volleyball, basketball and football. There is a place where families can enjoy being outside together. Now, we really live a happy, decent life.

Yours, Emad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is ".....".
 a) Our village schools b) Our village improvement
 c) Our village bad facilities d) Our village bad playgrounds
- The best thing in Emad's community is
 a) the facilities b) the roads c) the teachers d) the students
- Emad is a/an
 a) doctor b) student c) engineer d) player

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why couldn't Emad write e-mails to Peter recently?
- Summarise the improvements of Emad's village.
- After 5 years, what do you think the villages in Egypt will be?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Karim pays for a room to live in a house with its owner. He is a/an القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a) lodger b) owner c) seller d) tenant

2. Please food to people who don't have enough.
a) plant b) repair c) donate d) make
3. The weather is bright today. It's very
a) sunny b) cloudy c) stormy d) dark
4. My grandmother is very kind. We all like her. She is
a) bad b) cruel c) unkind d) friendly
5. Sadly, the boy failed his test. "Fail" is the opposite of ".....".
a) pollute b) enter c) succeed d) respect
6. To get the noun from the verb "manage", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ly c) -less d) -er

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm (go) to wear my black dress tonight.
2. He (join) a sports club. This is his plan.
3. What (you/going) to do when you finish university?
4. When my parents get enough money, they're (going/get) a bigger flat.
5. We (going) travel by air. We've decided to take the train.

الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A short story you read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (going) go to Rome this year, are you?
2. Look at that man on the bridge! Do you think (he/going) to jump?
3. She was (upsets) because the news was upsetting.

Longman

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

contact (ed) (v)	يتصل بـ	informal (adj)	غير رسمي
Firstly (adv)	أولاً	result (n)	نتيجة
formal (adj)	رسمي	summary (n)	ملخص
Furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك	To conclude	في الختام
However (adv/conj)	ومع ذلك	To start with	لنبدأ بـ
In addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	To summarise	وخلاصة القول

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

as soon as	بمجرد أن	greeting (n)	تحية
builder (n)	عامل بناء	proud (adj)	فخور
castle (n)	قلعة	sound (ed) (v)	يبدو
complete (d) (v)	يكمل	tourist attraction (n)	مكان جذب سياحي
display (ed) (v)	يعرض	warmly (adv)	بحفاوة
exchange (d) (v)	يتبادل	introduction (n)	مقدمة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
adult (n/adj)	بالغ	grown-up	بالغ	young	صغير
pleasure (n)	سرور	happiness	السعادة	sadness	حزن
suitable (adj)	مناسب	proper/ appropriate	مناسب/ ملائم	unsuitable	غير مناسب
wonderful (adj)	رائع	awesome	رائع	ordinary/usual	عادي/ معتاد
formal (adj)	رسمي	official	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

give > reasons for	يعطى مبررات لـ	have > a rest	يأخذ راحة
go > windsurfing	يذهب لركوب الأمواج	work on > a project	يعمل في مشروع

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at a meeting	في الاجتماع	on top of	في قمة
by the front door	بجوار الباب الأمامي	walk along	يمشي بامتداد
in fact	في الحقيقة	introduce to	يقدم لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
beat	beat	beaten
يهزم		

Check Point

Choose and complete:

wonderful - to - go - on

- They usually windsurfing at weekends.
- The view from the top of Cairo Tower is awesome. It's
- The bird is top of the tree.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

Firstly, To start with,	أولاً لنبدأ بـ	to introduce the reasons for the project
formal	رسمي	correct or polite for important situations
Furthermore, In addition,	علاوة على ذلك بالإضافة إلى ذلك	to add extra information
However, but,	ومع ذلك ولكن	to give contrasting information
informal	غير رسمي	correct for unimportant or everyday situations
To conclude, To summarise,	في الختام وختصار القول	to write a conclusion

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
attract (v)	يجذب	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		attraction (n)	جذب
introduce (v)	يقدم					introduction (n)	مقدمة

build (v)	يبنى	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	builder (n)	عامل البناء
greet (v)	يحيى	-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	greeting (n)	تحية
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	happiness (n)	السعادة
please (v)	يُسعد/يفرح	-ure	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pleasure (n)	سعادة/بهجة
suit (v)	يناسب	-able	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	suitable (adj)	مناسب

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	play (v) يلعب/يشغل فيديو	تغيير معنى الفعل	display (v) يعرض
ex-	change (v) يغير		exchange (v) يتبادل
in-	formal (adj) رسمي	تعطى عكس الصفة	informal (adj) غير رسمي

Language Notes

1 need(s) + v-ing

- The library **needs painting**.
- الشيء/المفعول + **need(s) + to + inf.** + الفعل
- We **need to paint the library**.

يحتاج إلى أن

يحتاج إلى أن

2 In addition/ In addition to/ Furthermore/ However

- In addition + subject** فعل + **verb** فعل بالإضافة لذلك
 - He works as a doctor. **In addition**, he is a great writer.
- (In addition to + (inf.+ing))** بالإضافة إلى
 - In addition to** being a great writer. He works as a doctor.
- Furthermore + subject** فعل + **verb** فعل علاوة على ذلك
 - It will make our library look exciting. **Furthermore**, the library will become a tourist attraction.
- However + subject** فعل + **verb** فعل ومع ذلك
 - He is tall. **However**, he can't play basketball.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My father is an accountant. doing karate.
a) However b) In addition c) In addition to d) Furthermore
- Karim is so fat., he runs very fast.
a) However b) In addition c) In addition to d) So
- My car needs soon.
a) wash b) to wash c) washing d) to washing

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What do you say when you introduce someone to another?

Listen and match the conversations 1–3 with the pictures a–c. SB page 29

Narrator One

Fares Hi, there, Omar!

Omar Hello, Fares!

Fares Do you know my cousin, Adam?

Omar No, I don't.

Fares Adam, meet Omar. Omar, meet Adam.

Omar Nice to meet you, Adam!

Adam Nice to meet you, too.



Narrator Two

Samira Hi, there Ola!

Ola Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa?
She's just started working at our office.

Samira No, we haven't met. It's a **pleasure** ⁽¹⁾
to meet you.

Randa Pleased to meet you, too, Samira!



Narrator Three

Sara Good morning. I'd like to **introduce** ⁽²⁾
myself. I'm Sara. I'm your new
neighbour.

Lamar Pleased to meet you, Sara!
I'm Lamar, and this my mother, Mrs Mansour.

Sara Pleased to meet you both.

Mrs Mansour It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara. Welcome to
our **neighbourhood** ⁽³⁾!



(1) سعادة/بهجة

(2) يقدم

(3) حي/جيرة



Note:

conversation /kɒnˈvɜːseɪʃən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:
pleasure /pleɪʒər/

Post-listening question: - What's the relationship between Fares and Adam?

Pre-listening question:

- How do you talk to the people you meet for the first time?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

Lesson 5

WB page 90

A F

Mrs Laila : Good morning, class. I'd like to **introduce**⁽¹⁾ myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.

Class : **Good morning**, Mrs Laila.

B F

Father : Heba, I'd like you to meet our new **neighbour**⁽²⁾, Mr Baher.

Heba : **Pleased**⁽³⁾ to meet you, Mr Baher.

Father : **This is my daughter**⁽⁴⁾, Heba.

Mr Baher : Pleased to meet you too, Heba.

C I

Hamdi : **Hi**, Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad?

Basel : No, I don't.

Hamdi : Basel, **meet** Imad. We're in the same football team.

Basel : Nice to meet you, Imad.

Imad : Nice to meet you, **too**.

(1) يقدم

(2) جار

(3) مسرور / سعيد

(4) ابنة

Post-listening question: - Mention two different ways to greet people.

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question: - Why do you think people like to visit historic places?

Read the message in the social network service page, and answer the questions.

SB page 30

Firstly⁽¹⁾, let me say how much we all love our Children's Library. **However**⁽²⁾, it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting.

We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada community project. You can see a photo of their work above. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in 'colours of happiness'. We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. **Furthermore**⁽³⁾, the library will become a tourist attraction.

To conclude⁽⁴⁾, we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project. If you are interested, please contact me!



(1) أولاً

(2) ومع ذلك

(3) علاوة على ذلك

(4) لكي نختم

 **Complete the online message with these expressions.**

Firstly, let me say how **proud** ⁽¹⁾ we are of the **castle** ⁽²⁾ in our town. **However**, it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle **walls** ⁽³⁾, **but** some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.

At our community meeting, we decided to **improve** ⁽⁴⁾ the castle. We are going to get some **builders** ⁽⁵⁾ to repair the walls. **Furthermore**, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish. **To conclude**, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a **tourist attraction** ⁽⁶⁾.



- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| (1) فخور | (2) قلعة |
| (3) حوائط | (4) يطور |
| (5) عمال بناء | (6) جذب سياحي |

 **Complete the text from the words in the box.**

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along the **pavement** ⁽¹⁾ when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm **elderly**, you see. A young woman saw me and **greeted** me warmly. She **encouraged** ⁽²⁾ me to sit down on a **bench** ⁽³⁾ and have a rest. It was so wonderful to be treated with such **kindness** ⁽⁴⁾. That's why I'm so happy to live in this **neighbourhood** ⁽⁵⁾. Our **community** ⁽⁶⁾ is so kind and helpful!

SB page 31

Lesson 7

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|-----------|
| (1) رصيف شارع | (2) شحم | (3) مقعد |
| (4) لطف | (5) الحى | (6) مجتمع |

 **Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.**

SB page 31

Adam: Are you enjoying that book, Amr?

Amr: No, not really. In fact, it's quite **boring**.

Adam: What kind of books are you **interested** in?

Amr: I like **exciting** stories. I thought this one looked good, but as soon as I started reading it, I was **disappointed**.

Adam: I read it last year, but I thought it was **amazing**! The ending is **surprising**.

Amr: Well, your review makes it sound very **interesting**. Perhaps I should finish it!

 **Complete the text.**

WB page 92

One day, I saw a message on the **noticeboard** by the front door to our flats. It said that Mr Maher, who is very **elderly**, needed a new **bench**. The one he sits on outside his flat is broken. So I **encouraged** all my neighbours to help to buy him a new one. Some men **delivered** it this morning. Mr Maher was very **surprised** when it arrived! Mr Maher was very pleased by our kindness. Our **neighbourhood** is very friendly and we like to help each other.



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

المصنفية ٢٠٢٣

tree – volunteers – painting – like – again – likes

There's a big public library in our town. The children don't (1) the library anymore. It looks old and needs (2) So, we want to start a project to improve our library. That's why we need some (3) to help us plan and complete the project. We need to encourage children to use the library (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He is a great engineer. In, he is a great writer.
a) conclude b) however c) addition d) furthermore
- We use language when we talk to people for the first time.
a) young b) adult c) formal d) informal
- We should always listen to because they have more experience than us.
a) babies b) the young c) kids d) adults
- It is important to wear suitable clothes for the weather. The synonym of "suitable" is ".....".
a) proper b) unsuitable c) adult d) awesome
- The prefix "....." is put to "formal" to give the opposite.
a) dis- b) un- c) in- d) ir- سواء ٢٠٢٤
- To get the noun for a person from the verb "build", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -ly c) -able d) -ness
- My mother greeted our cousins She loves them a lot. أسوان ٢٠٢٣
a) nervously b) warmly c) badly d) sadly
- They are living in happiness. The antonym of "happiness" is
a) pleasure b) joy c) sadness d) enjoyment
- Can you give us a for what you are doing now?
a) book b) result c) plane d) reason
- The store allows customers to clothes if they don't fit.
a) buy b) introduce c) contact d) exchange
- We can form the opposite of "suitable" by adding the prefix ".....".
a) dis- b) in- c) en- d) un-
- She herself as the new student in our class.
a) concluded b) introduced c) contacted d) produced



Speaking

Using formal and informal introductions and greetings

استخدام التقديم والتحية الرسمية وغير الرسمية

Formal	رسمي	Informal	غير رسمي
A) Greetings		التحية	
- Hello, Mr Reda.	مرحباً سيد رضا.	- Hi!	أهلاً.
B) Introductions		التقديم	
- I'd like to introduce myself.	أود أن أقدم نفسي.	- This is my friend, Basma.	هذه صديقتي بسمة.
- I'd like to introduce my friend, Nader.	أود أن أقدم صديقي نادر.	- Do you know my friend, Imad?	هل تعرف صديقي عماد؟
		- Have you met Mr Mostafa Morsy?	هل قابلت السيد مصطفى مرسى؟
C) Greetings for the first time		تحية لأول مرة	
- Nice to meet you.	من اللطف أن أقابلك.	- Nice to meet you, too.	والرد يكون بـ: من اللطف أن أقابلك أيضاً.
- Pleased to meet you.	سعدت بلقائك.	- Pleased to meet you, too.	سعدت بلقائك أيضاً.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

الأفصل ٢٣ - ٢٠

► Nader is introducing his brother to his friend Maher.

Nader : Hello, Maher. This is my brother, Omar.

Maher : (1)..... . How do you do?

Omar : (2)..... .

Nader : Where are you going?

Maher : (3)..... .

Nader : We are going to the supermarket, too.

Maher : (4)..... ?

Nader : To buy some groceries.

Maher : (5)..... ?

Nader : Of course, you can join us.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Omar and Karim are talking about working for charities.

Omar : Hello, Karim! Pleased to meet you.

Karim : (1).....

Omar : What do you think of working for charities?

Karim : (2).....

Omar : Do you work for a charity?

Karim : (3).....

Omar : (4).....?

Karim : I help the elderly people there.

Omar : (5).....?

Karim : I usually work there at the weekends.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

got – tourist – get – form – dangerous – rubbish

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the castle in our city. Some of the walls are (1)..... and some people leave rubbish in the castle, we are going to (2)..... some builders to repair the walls. Children at our school are going to clean up the (3)..... . We think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a (4)..... attraction.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We use "....." to give contrasting information.

- a) so b) but c) firstly d) in addition

2. We use "to with" to introduce the reasons for the project.

- a) end b) summarise c) start d) conclude

3. They welcomed us They liked our visit.

- a) warmly b) badly c) angrily d) nervously

4. It's right to wear this uniform here. It's very

- a) contrasting b) warm c) extra d) suitable

5. I felt great happiness when I succeeded. The synonym of "happiness" is

"....."

- a) useless b) kindness c) pleasure d) sadness
6. The suffix "....." changes the verb "attract" into a noun.
- a) -ing b) -ion c) -ive d) -ment

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I was (amazing) by the number of people who came to the festival.
2. The lesson was (bored). We didn't understand it.
3. I (going/borrow) some books from the library today.
4. In addition to (is) beautiful, she's rich.
5. We're going (have) a picnic tomorrow.

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

مطروح ٢٠٢٤

"A review on helping people in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Thanks scientists, we are leading a more comfortable life.
- a) to b) on c) by d) from
2. At the end of a paragraph, we can use ".....".
- a) First of all, b) Furthermore, c) To conclude, d) To start with,
3. I was walking the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired.
- a) long b) as long c) a long d) along

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Salma and Sahar are speaking about their hobbies.

Salma: Hi. I know you have a lot of hobbies to do, but which one do you like most?

Sahar: (1).....

Salma: That's why you went on a riding horses trip last week!

Sahar: You're right, but (2).....?

Salma: Our friend Rasha; she is fond of horses, too.

Sahar: What's your favourite hobby?

Salma: (3).....

Sahar: (4).....?

Salma: The last novel I read was '*Black Beauty*'.

Sahar: Is that the novel in which the main character is a beautiful black horse?

Salma: (5)..... I'm sure you read it before.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A. amazing – amazed – facilities – volunteer – young – elderly

We should all care about our community. I think the best thing about our community is the (1)..... We have some great shops and (2)..... places to go, like the nearby park. We have lots of community projects where we can (3)..... to help people, especially the (4).....

B. politely – pavement – tired – tiring – neighbour – neighbourhood

Yesterday, I decided to do some shopping. In the street, I saw an old woman who looked very (1)..... She was walking along the (2)..... I greeted her (3)..... and helped her to sit down on a bench. The woman thanked me and said she was happy to live in this (4).....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't continue working because I'm very tired. "Continue" here is opposite in meaning to ".....".

a) start

b) steer

c) stop

d) go on

2. A/An is a person who rents a room in another person's house.

a) seller

b) owner

c) lodger

d) landlord

3. Try not to pollute the environment. To change the verb "pollute" into a noun, delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
- a) -ity b) -ness c) -ion d) -ation
4. There should have a lot of for the elderly and disabled people.
- a) problems b) differences c) facilities d) difficulties
5. Fadel donated a lot of money to charities. This means he them lots of money.
- a) took b) gave c) owned d) owed
6. I have received a formal reply from the company. To get the opposite of "formal", we add the prefix ".....".
- a) dis- b) un- c) im- d) in-
7. Tourists like to visit that place. It's a/an site.
- a) awful b) historic c) unpopular d) history
8. I think men and women should have the same work chances; they should have opportunities.
- a) equal b) unequal c) different d) unfair
9. The Decent Life Initiative the houses of poor people in rural areas.
- a) pairs b) compares c) repairs d) destroys
10. I like reading very much. This means that I'm this hobby.
- a) interested in b) afraid of c) worried about d) bad at

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look, the manager's car (coming) over there.
2. You are (amazed), Rami; you have made a great success.
3. A: Where do you intend to spend the weekend? B: I (will) spend the weekend in my village.
4. Mr Rady (leave) for London tomorrow as arranged.
5. Amany (travel) tomorrow. She has got the tickets.
6. Rami (not/ play) football now; he is studying at home.
7. Yasser (will) visit us tomorrow. Who knows?
8. Why are the workers (dig) here?
9. The sky is clear; it (not/rain).
10. We (going) spend the evening outdoors.



Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

المحادثة ٢٠٢٤

Hala is talking to Abeer about an interesting book.

Abeer : Hello, Hala. What are you doing?

Hala : (1).....

Abeer : (2).....?

Hala : It's called *David Copperfield*.

Abeer : Is it interesting?

Hala : (3).....

Abeer : (4).....?

Hala : It was written by Charles Dickens.

Abeer : Can you lend me this book when you have finished reading it?

Hala : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

التمرين ٢٠٢٤

has – share – is – together – time – place

A community is like a big family. It is a (1)..... where people live, work and play. People in a community help each other and work (2)..... to solve problems. They (3)..... roads, parks and buildings. Everyone in the community (4)..... a special part to play.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

التمرين ٢٠٢٤

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in rural areas of Egypt. The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services. It provides more health care, better education and better job opportunities. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. It will continue to help poor people around the country.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Decent Life Initiative has helped people who live in areas.

a) urban	b) remote
c) modern	d) rural
- The opposite of the underlined word "deliver" is

a) give	b) receive
c) mention	d) send
- The Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean

a) air	b) water
c) clothes	d) hair

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

[illegible]

- ### 5. What does the Decent Life Initiative aim to?

[illegible]

6. Why do you think the Decent Life Initiative is important for children?

.....

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** To is to try to make people do something.
a) succeed b) provide
c) improve d) encourage
- 2.** A/An is a long seat for two people or more.
a) bench b) chair
c) armchair d) wheelchair
- 3.** The President started the Decent life for people who live in villages.
a) Effect b) Initiative
c) Festival d) Machine
- 4.** He entered a new course. This means he it.
a) joined b) failed
c) respected d) left

- 5.** The synonym of "elderly" is ".....".
- a) recent b) modern
c) young d) old
- 6.** To get the noun from the verb "introduce", we add the suffix ".....".
- a) -ition b) -ion
c) -tion d) -cion

1. Messi is an (amaze) football player.
2. I (meet) my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
3. They (not/going) play tennis this afternoon.
4. We were all very (worry) when he didn't return home on time.
5. What (you/go) to study next year?

- 6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:**

"The role you should play to help your community"

QUESTION SURVEY

Question	1	2 & 3	4	5	6
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Reem and Amal are talking about the mid-year holiday.

Reem: The mid-year holiday will start next week.

Amal: That's right. (1).....

a) How are you going?

b) Where are you going?

c) When are you going?

d) Why are you going?

Reem: I'm going to Sharm El-Sheikh.

Amal: (2).....

a) Why are you going there?

b) What are you going to do?

c) How long will you stay?

d) Who are you staying with?

Reem: Because it's a wonderful place for a holiday.

Amal: Who will you go with?

Reem: (3).....

a) My family won't stay.

b) My family won't come with me.

c) My family will stay.

d) My family will come with me.

Amal: What activities can you do there?

Reem: (4).....

a) We can read in the library.

b) We can go swimming and snorkelling.

c) We can see lions.

d) We can sleep a lot.

Amal: I wish you have a happy mid-year holiday.

Reem: (5).....

a) Not at all.

b) Never mind.

c) Sorry for that.

d) Thank you.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. She was (excite) about going on a trip.

a) exciting

b) excited

c) excitedly

d) excites

2. The loud noise was (annoy).

a) annoyingly

b) annoys

c) annoyed

d) annoying

3. Hany (play) with his friends at the club tomorrow afternoon. They have arranged.

a) is playing

b) playing

c) plays

d) played

4. Next summer, we're going (travel) to Paris.

a) to travelling

b) travelling

c) to travel

d) travel

5. I'm (go) to wear my black dress tonight.

a) going

b) go

c) goes

d) went

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Reading & Listening Skills

 **Listen to four directions. Where do they take you to?**

Listening Text



Lesson 1

SB page 32

Narrator 1: From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument. Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator 2: From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator 3: From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right. Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator 4: From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.



 **Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. SB page 32**

Museum of Natural Science

Last year, there **was** an amazing exhibition of sea animals at the Museum of Natural Science. While visitors **were walking** around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition **is going to tell** visitors about animal life in the desert.



Many people **think** that the desert **doesn't have** much life in it. This exhibition **is going to show** that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look. The exhibition **opens** on the 5th of March. Tickets **are** on sale now from the museum or online.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1

- What do you know about the Egyptian Railways Museum?

 Complete the text with these words.

WB page 93



Good morning, everyone. I'd like to **introduce** myself. I'm Judy and I work for *See the Best of Cairo*. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most **famous** ones, but we think they are the **best**! Why? Because they are **neither** full of **tourists**⁽¹⁾ nor expensive, but they have some very **interesting** things to see. Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the **Egyptian Railways Museum**⁽²⁾.

It **opens** at 9 am. Here you'll find trains but also some other **historical**⁽³⁾ forms of **transport**⁽⁴⁾, including planes. The museum is **next** to Cairo train station. Then, **at** about 2 pm, we're going to the House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi. This is one of the **oldest** houses in the city, built in the seventeenth **century**⁽⁵⁾. It has beautiful windows, doors and even a **fountain**⁽⁶⁾. We know you won't be **bored** in **either** of these places!

Post-reading question:

- What is special about the Egyptian Railways Museum?

(1) سياح

(2) متحف سكك حديد مصر

(3) تاريخي

(4) النقل

(5) قرن

(6) نافورة

- Have you ever done voluntary work?

 Read the texts about two teenagers. How do they want to help the community?

SB page33

Tarek : I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.



Judy : My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.



Post-reading question:

- How can Tarek and Judy help their community?

Pre-listening question:

- Do you prefer online shopping? Why/Why not?



Lesson 2

 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 5, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 94



Man Good afternoon, I'd like to make a complaint.

Assistant What's the problem?

Man I ordered something from your website but it hasn't arrived.

Assistant I'm very sorry about that. What did you order?

Man A black kettle.

Assistant A black kettle? Why don't you come to our shop? We have one here. You don't have to pay anything more.

Man Thank you. Where is your shop?

Assistant It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and walk past the clothes shop. We are on the left.

Man What time do you open?

Assistant We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day except Friday.

Post-listening question:

- What's the man's complaint?

Unit 4

HAVE YOU EVER TRAVELLED BY PLANE?



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*; a text about someone's life
- Writing** A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person
- Listening** An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone
- Speaking** Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story
- Language** The present perfect with ever, never, for and since
- Life Skills** Communication



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختيار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	headache (n)	صداع
chart (n)	جدول/رسم بياني	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	orphanage (n)	دار أيتام
tent (n)	خيمة	sensitive (adj)	حساس
experience (n/v)	تجربة حياتية/يمر بتجربة	snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس (مستخدماً أنبوب التنفس)
graph (n)	رسم بياني	wedding party (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

express (ed) (v)	يُعبّر	Chinese food	طعام صيني
married (adj)	متزوج	move (d) (v)	ينتقل/يتحرك
marriage (n)	زواج	report (n)	تقرير

Check Point

Choose and complete: **wedding – competition – married – orphanage**

- 1 She won first prize in the
- 2 When his parents died, he was taken to a/an
- 3 My uncle is and he has two children.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
forget (v)	ينسى	overlook/ignore	ينسى/يتغاضى	remember	يتذكر
opportunity (n)	فرصة	chance	فرصة	mischance	سوء حظ
wait (v)	ينتظر	stay/remain	يبقى	leave	يفادر
win (v)	يكسب/يفوز	achieve	ينجز	lose	يخسر

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

climb > a mountain	يتسلق جبلاً	ride > a horse	يركب حصاناً
get/be > married to	يتزوج من	sleep > in a tent	ينام فى خيمة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

give an opportunity to	يعطى فرصة لـ	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
good/bad at	جيد/سيئ فى	talk to	يتكلم إلى
on business	فى عمل	wait for	ينتظر (شخصاً/ شيئاً)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
know يعرف	knew	known
learn يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)
sleep ينام	slept	slept
win يفوز	won	won
meet يقابل	met	met
ride يركب	rode	ridden

Check Point

Choose and complete:

met - win - ride - on

- Hazem didn't the game, he lost it.
- My father taught me how to a horse.
- The school bus will be here at 8 am, so please be ready to go time.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للكلمات ومرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللغوية وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية



التعريفات

Definitions	
ever يوماً ما/مطلقاً	at any time
experience تجربة حياتية/خبرة عمل	something that happens to you
snorkel يغطس	swim using equipment that allows you to breathe while your face is under the water
orphanage دار أيتام	is a place for the care and education of children who have no parents

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
compete (v) ينافس	-ition	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	competition (n) منافسة
head (n) رأس	-ache	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم آخر	headache (n) صداع
music (n) موسيقى	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	musical (adj) موسيقى/موسيقية

Prefix البادئة

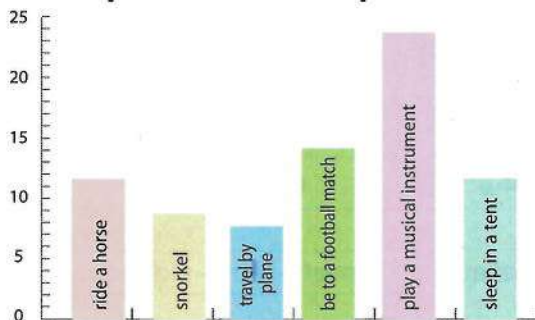
Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
in-	sensitive (adj) حساس	تعطى عكس الصفة	insensitive (adj) غير حساس

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What activities do you enjoy doing?

Lesson 1

Adam asked the people in his class about their experiences⁽¹⁾. Look at the graph⁽²⁾ and read his report. Answer the questions. **SB Page 35**



Experiences of people in the class

I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most people in the class have played a **musical instrument**⁽³⁾. Not many people have ridden a horse or slept in a tent. Even fewer people have **snorkelled**⁽⁴⁾. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane, but Hazem has travelled by plane three times! I also asked, 'Have you ever been to a football match?' About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class have.

(1) خبرات

(2) رسم توضيحي

(3) آلة موسيقية

(4) يفوص

Post-reading questions:

- Which activity have half the people in Adam's class done?
- How often has Hazem travelled by plane?
- What does the underlined pronoun "their" refer to?

Pre-listening question:

- How long have you known your best friend?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Listen to Talia talking to her grandmother and answer the questions.

SB page 36

Talia Grandma, how long have you lived in this house?

Grandmother Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.

Talia Really? How long have you been married to Grandad?

Grandmother We've been married for fifty years!

Talia That's a long time!

Grandmother Yes, it is! And we've known each other since we were ten years old.

Talia That's like Mum and Dad. They've known each other for a long time, too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia Did they? I didn't know that!

Grandmother You've never asked me about it before!



3. Circle the correct words.

WB Page 96

Lesson 2

Judy Dad, how long **have you worked** at the bank?

Dad I've worked there **since** we moved to Cairo.

Judy How long **have you** lived in Cairo?

Dad We've been in Cairo **since** you were born, but we lived in a different flat then.

Judy How long have you lived in this flat?

Dad Well, we've lived here **for** ten years.

Judy So my brother Imad **has always lived** here?

Dad Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here **for** all of his life.

Post-listening questions:

1 How old is Imad?

2 Where does Judy's father work?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Most people in the class have never by plane.
a) ridden b) travelled c) driven d) snorkelled
- I will wait for you in front of the library. The synonym of "wait" is ".....".
a) stay b) leave c) move d) forget
- Basmala and I are going to be in a poetry compete-..... at school.
a) -cion b) -ition c) -ion d) -tion
- is an exciting water sport.
a) Cycling b) Snorkelling c) Walking d) Jumping
- We will win the football match if we work together as a team. We hope to that.
a) achieve b) lose c) move d) wait
- My mum and dad married in 2009.
a) gave b) got c) rode d) slept
- "....." means at any time.
a) Sensitive b) Ever c) Chart d) Musical
- The shows how house prices have increased since 2011.
a) character b) graph c) calligraphy d) biography
- Music makes me feel happy and excited. To form the adjective of "music", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ous b) -al c) -ing d) -ion
- Young people usually look for work opportunities. "Opportunity" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) chance b) mischance c) report d) chart
- We had lots of on our trip.
a) experiments b) adventures c) minds d) matters
- The guitar is my favourite instrument.
a) sport b) machine c) music d) musical
- My sister wrote a about her favourite animal for her homework.
a) graph b) headache c) competition d) report
- Amy's eyes are to sunlight, so she wears sunglasses.
a) married b) sensitive c) musical d) difficult
- Have you ever been to London business?
a) at b) in c) on d) of

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

musical – travelled – ridden – ride – played – experiences

I have many friends. We meet together every Friday. We sometimes play in the club, but now my friends and I are talking about our (1)..... . Most of us have played (2)..... instruments. Only one has (3)..... a horse. No one has ever (4)..... by plane. I like my friends so much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We add "....." at the end of the word "head" to mean pain in the head. القنوية ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ful b) -ache c) -er d) -ness
- A/An is a place where children without parents live. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a) club b) orphanage c) garden d) museum
- I like reading stories.
 a) adventurer b) adventures c) adventure d) adventurous
- I've lived in this house since I married to your grandfather.
 a) took b) got c) gave d) left
- I think our team will win the match. "Win" is the antonym of ".....".
 a) score b) earn c) lose d) beat
- Don't forget to bring me your camera. "Forget" here is the opposite meaning of ".....".
 a) return b) remain c) remember d) ignore
- Tourists come to Egypt to the wonderful natural world. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
 a) express b) excite c) exist d) experience
- To get the opposite of "sensitive", we add the prefix ".....".
 a) dis- b) re- c) im- d) in-
- Mariam will her idea with a drawing.
 a) accept b) express c) exercise d) refuse
- means swimming with equipment that allows you to breathe while your face is under the water.
 a) Sinking b) Sailing c) Snorkelling d) Saving
- An is something that happens to you in your life. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
 a) experiment b) expert c) experience d) exercise

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

A) The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

- e.g. • I **have washed** the dishes.
• Salma **has tidied** her room.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتحدث عن:

- شيء حدث في الماضي وله أثر في الحاضر.

- e.g. • I **have watched** the scary film. I can't sleep well.

- شيء حدث ولم يحدد وقت حدوثه أو لم يحدد نقطة معينة من الوقت.

Usage

الاستخدام

- e.g. • My parents **have travelled** to many countries (this year).

- شيء بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرًا في الحاضر.

- e.g. • My grandfather **has lived** here for 50 years.

- شيء حدث في الماضي مع ذكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

- e.g. • My sister **has taken** the medicine three times.

A: Affirmative الإثبات

التصريف الثالث للفعل **have ('ve) + past participle** + اسم جمع / I/ We/ You/ They/

- e.g. • I **have cleaned** my bedroom.

- My friends and I **have done** our homework.

التصريف الثالث للفعل **has ('s) + past participle** + اسم مفرد / He/ She/ It/

- e.g. • Hana **has visited** her aunt.

- My dad **has won** the competition.

Form

التكوين

B: Negative النفي

التصريف الثالث للفعل **haven't + past participle** + اسم جمع / I/ We/ You/ They/

- e.g. • I **haven't played** tennis.

- My parents **haven't lived** in Cairo.

التصريف الثالث للفعل **hasn't + past participle** + اسم مفرد / He/ She/ It/

- e.g. • Adel **hasn't bought** a new bike.

- She **hasn't done** the shopping.

لاحظ الفرق في التصريف الثالث للفعل بين الأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال غير المنتظمة.
راجع جداول تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة داخل الدروس.

1 Yes/No questions:

السؤال بفعل مساعد

Have + I/ we/ you/ they/ اسم جمع + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: Have you cleaned your room?

B: Yes, I/ we have

B: No, I/ we haven't.

Has + he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: Has Sara done her homework yet?

B: Yes, she has.

B: No, she hasn't.

Question
السؤال

2 Wh- questions:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + have + I/ we/ you/ they/ اسم جمع + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: What have Habiba and Hala visited in Alexandria?

B: They have visited the Alexandria Library.

Q. Word + has + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: Where has he gone since yesterday?

B: He has gone to Port Said.

Key words
الكلمات الدالة

already بالفعل , ever من قبل , just حالاً/توّاً ,

never أبداً , yet بعد/حتى الآن , lately مؤخراً ,

recently حديثاً , for لمدة , since منذ



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My father (have) bought a new car.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has) لوجود bought التصريف الثالث للفعل، فيسبقه has لأن الفاعل مفرد.

2 We (not/travel) to Marsa Matrouh since we were very young.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't travelled) لأن الجملة منفية في زمن المضارع التام والفاعل We.

3 (Have) she finished her tasks on time?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Has) لأنه سؤال في زمن المضارع التام والفاعل she.

Have you ever travelled by plane? 171

B) The Present Perfect with (ever/never/since/for)

1 ever/never

ever

تُستخدم **ever** في وسط السؤال بمعنى هل مع المضارع التام؛ بعد الفاعل وقبل التصريف الثالث للفعل

Have/Has + subject + **ever** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. • Has your father **ever** visited Paris?

• Have Salma and Noha **ever** flown a kite?

never

تُستخدم **never** في وسط الجملة المثبتة لزمن المضارع التام؛ بعد (have/has) لنفي الجملة.

Subject + have/has + **never** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. • We **have never** lived in Giza.

• Doaa **has never** been to Rome.

2 since/for

- عند التعبير عن مدة وقوع حدث في زمن المضارع التام نستخدم **since/for** قبل مدة وقوع الحدث كالآتي:

since

بداية الحدث + **since** + التصريف الثالث للفعل + have/has + Subject

e.g. • I **have worked** here **since** 2007.

• My uncle **has lived** in Tokyo **since** 2015.

for

مدة وقوع الحدث كاملة + **for** + التصريف الثالث للفعل + have/has + Subject

e.g. • She **has studied** English **for** 14 years.

• My cousins **have lived** in Rome **for** 9 years.

for + a period of time

مدة وقوع الحدث كاملة

for two ... (hours/ days/ weeks/
months/ years/ centuries)

for the last ... (Sunday/ week/ month/
May/ year)

for a while للحظة / **for** ages لعدة طويلة /
for long لعدة أكثر من / **for** over لعدة طويلة /
for more than لعدة أكثر من / **for** a long time
طوال حياته / **for** all of his life لعدة طويلة

since + a point in time

بداية الحدث

since ... (two o'clock/ Sunday/
May/ 2010/ morning .../ winter ...)

since last ... (Sunday/ week/ month/
May/ year)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **since** + noun/ v+ing

- **since** yesterday منذ أمس / **since** the age
منذ ذلك الحين / **since** then منذ سن

3 How long كم طول المدة

- عند السؤال عن المدة في المضارع التام نستخدم (How long كم المدة)

How long + **have/has** + subject فاعل + **past participle** التصريف الثالث للفعل ؟

e.g. A: How long have they known each other?

B: They've known each other for a long time.

A: How long has it rained?

B: It has rained since 10 o'clock.

لاحظ

1. يمكن أن يأتي بعد **since** جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط

ماضٍ بسيط + فاعل + **have/has** + P.P. + **since** + subject فاعل

e.g. I've lived in the same house since I was born.

هناك فرق في المعنى بين:

2. **has/have been to** ذهب إلى/ زار مكانًا وعاد منه

e.g. My father has been to Paris. (He is in Cairo now.)

3. **has/have gone to** ذهب إلى/ زار مكانًا ولم يعد منه

e.g. My father has gone to France. (He is still there.)

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Has Samy (never) eaten Chinese food?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ever) لأنه سؤال بمعنى هل..

2 They have been married (for) 2005.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (since) لأنه ذكر مدة بداية الحدث.

3 My brother has (been) to the club. He hasn't returned yet.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (gone) لأن الجملة تعبر عن إنه ذهب ولم يعد بعد (أي إنه ما زال هناك).

4 How (many) have you worked in this company?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (long) لأنه سؤال عن طول المدة.

5 Judy hasn't visited Alexandria since she (be) 6 years.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود since التي يسبقها المضارع التام ويأتي بعدها ماضٍ بسيط.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How long has he (work) in this school?
2. I've lived in the same house (for) I was born.
3. Ahmed has never (sleep) in a tent.
4. Mohamed and Adel (not) seen the new film.
5. Has Aya ever (win) a competition?
6. I have (ever) ridden a horse before.
7. My sister has played the guitar since she (be) six.
8. Grandma has (make) me a jacket for my birthday.
9. (You have) ever eaten chocolate cake?
10. I (haven't) never seen a real elephant before.
11. How (much) have children slept?
12. My brother has been a football coach (for) last year.
13. Have you (never) climbed a tree?
14. My friends (didn't) visited me since last Monday.
15. We have had this pet dog (when) I was a baby.
16. Grandma (have) baked cookies for our picnic.
17. How (many) have you lived in this town?
18. I have (since) walked in the rain before.
19. I haven't met Ramy since we last (have met) in the club.
20. Nancy and Ahmed have studied French (since) a long time.

Time to Practise



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ever (be) to Aswan in winter? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. They've known each other (since) a long time. الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣
3. The class has (do) 5 tests this month.
4. My cousins have lived in Cairo (since) six months. السويس ٢٠٢٣
5. I have (ever) travelled by plane. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
6. He has been at this school (for) 2020. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
7. Dalia (be) to Cairo. She is in Aswan now. أسوان ٢٠٢٣
8. I've never (fly) in an aeroplane. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
9. Have you (never) tried this food? فيها ٢٠٢٤
10. Salim (know) his best friends since he was four. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
11. We haven't met (for) last September. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
12. Has he (finish) his tasks on time? السويس ٢٠٢٣
13. I have lived in this house since I was (bear). القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
14. Have you ever (be) to Alexandria? أزهر إكسكدرية ٢٠٢٤
15. I have (ever) played a musical instrument. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
16. I (not/meet) Adel since we were in Cairo. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
17. I haven't drunk anything (since) two hours. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
18. Jana (travel) abroad three times since she started her new job. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣
19. Have you (never) ridden a horse? الغربية ٢٠٢٣
20. Nada (be) friends with Maha since they were children. المنيا ٢٠٢٤

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

D Skills



1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about experiences

السؤال والإجابة عن الخبرات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Which people in your family have been to another country?

أي الأشخاص في عائلتك ذهب إلى دولة أخرى؟

My uncle has been to France.

ذهب عمي إلى فرنسا.



Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?

هل أي شخص من عائلتك تسلق جبلاً؟

Yes, my cousin has climbed a mountain.

قام ابن خالي بتسلق جبل.



How long has Talia's grandmother been married?

كم مدة زواج جدة تاليا؟

She has been married since 1980.

إنها متزوجة منذ عام ١٩٨٠.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Talia is asking her grandmother how long she has been married.

SB

Talia : Grandma, how long have you lived in this house?

Grandmother : (1).....

Talia : Since you got married! (2).....?

Grandmother : I've been married to your grandad for fifty years!

Talia : (3).....?

Grandmother : I've known him since 1962.

Talia : You were ten years old! Did my parents live with you in this house?

Grandmother : (4)..... They lived with me for five years.

Talia : When did they move to our house?

Grandmother : (5).....



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Write about your favourite hobby

اكتب عن هوايتك المفضلة

- My favourite hobby is
- I have done it for/since
- I learnt it from
- I usually do it when
- I usually do it with
- It teaches me to be

Writing tips

Always indent before starting a paragraph. 0.5 indentations are standard for English writing.

اترك دائماً مسافة بادئة قبل بداية فقرة. ٢/١ سم هو مقدار المسافات البادئة في كتابة الإنجليزية.

Example

My favourite hobby

Life will be boring if we only work, that's why we need to have a hobby. My favourite hobby is cooking. At first, I used to help my mum with cooking. But later, I found that I really enjoy cooking. I asked my mum to teach me cooking and she was really happy about this. Then she taught me and I learnt much about cooking. I have done this hobby for eight years.

Everyone says that my food is really delicious and I also think so. I wish to become a popular cooking teacher in the future. Once, I cooked for my cousin who came from America and he was amazed after eating that food. That day was really inspiring for me; everybody liked my dish.

Check Point

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The most useful hobbies"



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Malak and Hassan are talking about sports.

Malak : Hi, Hassan. What's your favourite sport?

Hassan : (1).....

Malak : (2).....?

Hassan : I have played it for ten years.

Malak : (3).....?

Hassan : I started it when I was eleven.

Malak : Have you ever entered a football competition?

Hassan : (4)..... I hope to enter one soon.

Malak : When do you usually play it?

Hassan : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

القنبوية ٢٠٢٤

football - sleep - musical - horse - slept - cow

Last week, I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most of them have played a (1)..... instrument. A few people have ridden a (2)..... . Not many people in my class have (3)..... in a tent. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane. Half of the students in the class haven't been to a (4)..... match.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a picture that shows information in a clear and organised way.

a) business

b) tent

c) chart

d) mountain

2. A is when your head hurts a lot.

a) backache

b) earache

c) stomachache

d) headache

3. My sister is getting married today. We are having a party in a hotel.

a) wedding

b) graduation

c) birthday

d) weeding

4. My dad taught me how to in the ocean and we saw colourful fish.
 a) snorkel b) express c) wait d) sleep
5. We add "....." at the end of the word "music" to form its adjective.
 a) -al b) -ful c) -er d) -ness
6. Sorry, I can't remember your name. I have it.
 a) lost b) left c) forgotten d) slept

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ever (cook) a meal for the family? المطلوبة ٢٠٢٤
2. I (haven't) never been to a science museum.
3. Hany (go) to Alexandria. He'll come back next week.
4. Rasha (not/see) her mum since she was 5 years old. المطلوبة ٢٠٢٤
5. They have worked together on many projects since they (join) the company.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of activities your family have and haven't done"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I haven't seen Ali (since) ages.
2. She (has) a headache since 3 hours ago.
3. Has the bus (catch) by Adel?

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

aquarium (n)	معروض الأحياء المائية	follow (ed) (v)	يتبع
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	grandparents (n)	الأجداد
canoe (n)	زورق	hearing (n)	السمع
care (d) about (v)	يهتم/يعتني بـ	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	raft (n)	طوافة (قارب مستقيم من الأعمدة الخشبية)
deaf (adj)	أصم	sequel (n)	تكملة/نتيجة/عاقبة
dream (n)	حلم	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

countryside (n)	الريف	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
environment (n)	البيئة	shark (n)	سمكة قرش
foggy (adj)	ضبابي	sports club (n)	نادي رياضي
forest (n)	غابة	teacher (n)	مدرس
fun novel	رواية ممتعة	teenage (adj)	في سن المراهقة
notebook (n)	كراسة	writer (n)	كاتب

Check Point

Choose and complete:

join – countryside – sequel – concert

- 1 When we visit the, we enjoy walking through the fields.
- 2 Tomorrow, I am going to a football team and start practising.
- 3 I had so much fun singing and dancing at the last night.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
amazing (adj)	مذهل	awesome	مذهل/رائع	boring	ممل
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	wakeful/sleepless	يقظ	asleep	نائم
dangerous (adj)	خطير	serious/unsafe	خطير	safe	آمن
difficult (adj)	صعب	hard	صعب	easy	سهل

lost (adj) مفقود/تائه	missing مفقود	found/existing وجد/موجود
noisy (adj) صاخب	loud صاخب/عالٍ	quiet/calm هادئ
scared (adj) خائف	frightened/afraid خائف	brave شجاع
strange (adj) غريب	unusual غير عادي	usual عادي
teach (v) يدرس/يعلم	explain/educate يشرح/يعلم	learn يتعلم

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

find > a place for يجد مكاناً لـ	look > angry يبدو غاضباً
have > a change لديه تغيير	stop > for the night يتوقف للراحة ليلاً

Prepositions

حروف الجر

along/down the river على طول النهر	get into a canoe يركب زورقاً
at the end فى نهاية	happy with سعيد مع/من
call out ينادى	in a canoe فى زورق
for a holiday من أجل الإجازة	interested in مهتم بـ
for the first time لأول مرة	worry about يقلق على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
fly يطير	flew	flown
take يأخذ	took	taken
teach يدرس/يعلم	taught	taught
understand يفهم	understood	understood
write يكتب	wrote	written

Check Point

Choose and complete:

at – had – missing – in – understood

- Yesterday, we a change of plans and went to the zoo instead of the beach.
- My friend Sally is interested painting because she loves colours.
- After explaining the game, the kids quickly how to play.
- We got lost in the desert. "Lost" is similar in meaning to

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات ومراكزها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.



Definitions

التعريفات

awake	مستيقظ	not sleeping	(1) ضيق
canoe	زورق	a long, narrow ⁽¹⁾ boat for one or two people	(2) اتجاه
care about	يهتم/يعتني بـ	feel strongly about someone or something	(3) جزء
dream	حلم	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping	(4) قطع
follow	يتبع	walk or drive behind someone in the same direction ⁽²⁾	(5) تطفو
grandparents	الأجداد	the parents of your parents	(6) سابق
join	ينضم إلى	become part ⁽³⁾ of a group or club	
raft	طوافة	pieces ⁽⁴⁾ of wood that are put together so they can float ⁽⁵⁾ on water	
sequel	تكملة/نتيجة/عاقبة	a book, film, play, etc. that continues the story of an earlier ⁽⁶⁾ one, usually made or written by the same person	

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
environ (v)	يحيط	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	environment (n) البيئة
hear (v)	يسمع	-ing		hearing (n) السمع
fog (n)	ضباب	-y		foggy (adj) ضبابي
interest (n)	اهتمام	-ed	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	interested (adj) مهتم
noise (n)	ضوضاء	-y		noisy (adj) صاخب
scare (v)	يخيف	-ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	scared (adj) خائف
teach (v)	يدرس	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	teacher (n) مدرس
write (v)	يكتب			writer (n) كاتب

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	الكلمة	البادئة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
a-	wake (v)	يستيقظ	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	awake (adj) مستيقظ

1 Subject + first/last + ماضٍ بسيط

- When I **first started** school, I went to a special school for deaf children.
- I **last met** Ali when we were at the club.

2 special

خاص/مميز (بفئة معينة ولا تعنى الملكية لفرد بعينه)

- He went to a **special** school for deaf children.

private

خاص (وهي تعنى الملكية الخاصة بفرد)

- He went to a **private** school. It cost his father so much money every year.

3 فاعل + used to + inf.

اعتاد أن (فعل شيئاً في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله في الحاضر)

- We **used to live** in the countryside.

4

هناك بعض الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد والجمع حسب ما تشير إليه مثل:

family/team + فعل مفرد

إذا كانت تشير إلى شيء واحد ككتلة واحدة

- My **family is** a happy one.

- Our **team has** a good coach.

family/team + فعل جمع

إذا كانت تشير إلى الأفراد

- Some of my **family** still **live** there.
- The **team are** playing well.

5 so + adj. + that + جملة

جداً لدرجة أن

- It was **so foggy that** I could not see the raft!

Check Point


Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We used a big garden where we grew our own vegetables.
a) to having b) having c) to have d) have
- Your password for your tablet is, so make sure you don't share it with anyone.
a) common b) public c) special d) private
- The film was funny that we laughed all the time.
a) so b) to c) too d) such
- Sarah last to Paris and admired the beauty of the Eiffel Tower.
a) travels b) travel c) travelled d) travelling
- The cleaning team the office tidy and organised. It's really a hard work.
a) to keep b) keeps c) keeping d) was kept

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

SB page 38

 Read the texts and answer the questions.

Maher

I have lived in a **village**⁽¹⁾ in the **south**⁽²⁾ of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another **country**⁽³⁾, but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of **museums**⁽⁴⁾ because I am very interested in history.

Azza


I have had **hearing problems**⁽⁵⁾ all my life and I learnt **sign language**⁽⁶⁾ since I was a baby. When I first started school, I went to a special school for **deaf**⁽⁷⁾ children. Now, I have been at a **local school**⁽⁸⁾ for three years. I am the only hard of hearing person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use sign language to help me. She explains things I can't understand in sign language. Some of my friends have learnt some sign language, so they can help me, too.

Wael

My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my **grandparents**⁽⁹⁾ since I was one. We used to live in **the countryside**⁽¹⁰⁾, but we moved to the city three years ago. I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined a handball club and I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun.



- (1) قرية
- (2) جنوب
- (3) دولة
- (4) متاحف
- (5) مشاكل في السمع
- (6) لغة الإشارة
- (7) أصم
- (8) مدرسة محلية
- (9) الأجداد
- (10) الريف

 Complete the text with the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

My name's Salma. I **was** born in Syria, but my family **came** to Egypt when I was five years old. We **haven't visited** Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there. When I was eight, I **started** playing the piano. I **have played** in many concerts. I love music. Two years ago, I **played** at a concert in the Cairo Opera House. It was amazing!

Lesson 3

SB page 39

Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever been to another country?



Lesson 3

Listen to three people talking about their experiences. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences. WB page 97

Teen boy I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it! It was very quiet!

Teen girl My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week, I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me some famous buildings there on their phone.

Woman I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years. I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn as quickly as the children!

Post-listening questions:

1 How long has Nawal been an English teacher?

2 What do you think of life in the countryside?

Pre-reading question: - Do you like sea animals? Why/ Why not?

Lesson 3

Circle the correct words.

WB page 97

Osama **has always loved** fish and other **sea animals** ⁽¹⁾. He **started** to like them when he visited an **aquarium** ⁽²⁾ for the first time in 2015. His family **have taken** him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium **asked** him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that! He **has helped** at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He **has given** food to most of the small fish, but he **hasn't helped** with the **sharks** ⁽³⁾. They are too **dangerous** ⁽⁴⁾!



(1) حيوانات بحرية

(2) معرض الأحياء المائية

(3) سمك القرش

(4) خطير

Post-reading questions:

1 When did Osama start to like sea animals?

2 Why hasn't Osama helped with the sharks?

Read the two stories. Who thought that somebody was lost⁽¹⁾? Who travelled in a canoe⁽²⁾? Why did they think or do these things? SB page 40

The Adventures⁽³⁾ of Tom Sawyer

They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest⁽⁴⁾, his Aunt Polly worried about him.

She thought he was lost or badly hurt. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine.

'It was just a game, Aunt Polly,' said Tom.

'I'm sure it was a fun game for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me?'

'I told you in a dream⁽⁵⁾,' said Tom. 'I just forgot to tell you when I was awake⁽⁶⁾.'

'He never thinks of other people,' said his cousin Mary.

'Yes, you should think about other people,' said Aunt Polly.

'You know I care about you, Tom. Try to remember how other people feel.'

'I'm sorry that I didn't tell you,' said Tom. 'It won't happen again.'

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

Jim and I were on a raft⁽⁷⁾ going down the river when it became foggy⁽⁸⁾. I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. I got into a small canoe and went along the river. Then I tried to return. However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out but I could not hear Jim.



My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following me. I travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim.

He was sleeping on the raft.

I climbed on the raft and said, 'Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping?'

'I was scared⁽⁹⁾!' he said. 'I couldn't see anything because it was foggy!'

He looked angry. 'I had a terrible night, Huck!' he said. 'It was like a bad dream.'

'I'm sorry,' I said. From that time, I decided I would never scare him again.

Post-reading question:

- What are the similarities and the differences between the two stories?

(1) مفقود/تائه

(2) زورق

(3) مغامرات

(4) غابة

(5) حلم

(6) مستيقظ

(7) طوافة (قارب)

(8) ضبابي

(9) خائف



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My father is from his business trip tomorrow. I'm happy to see him again.
a) caring b) hearing c) returning d) joining
- To is to feel strongly about someone or something.
a) follow b) join c) care about d) return
- In the morning, the fog covers the road. To get the adjective from "fog", add the suffix ".....".
a) -y b) -ing c) -er d) -ment
- Deaf people communicate in sign
a) language b) interest c) hobby d) subject
- He travelled along the Nile in a
a) plane b) canoe c) car d) taxi
- Your are the parents of your parents.
a) daughters b) cousins c) grandparents d) uncles
- My little cousin was lost yesterday. The antonym of "lost" is ".....".
a) missing b) found c) boring d) awesome
- My elder sister is a/an girl. She is 16 years old.
a) teenage b) awake c) foggy d) asleep
- The baby was scare of the loud noise. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -ing b) -ed c) -er d) -ly
- To is to walk or drive behind someone in the same direction.
a) follow b) leave c) hear d) learn
- The little boys have an amazing day at the park. "Amazing" is similar in meaning to
a) terrible b) wakeful c) awesome d) frightened
- In the, there are lots of open fields and farms.
a) aquarium b) desert c) canoe d) countryside
- We're going to read the to our favourite bedtime story tonight.
a) concert b) sequel c) dream d) hearing
- I wanted to the school football team, but my father didn't agree.
a) teach b) check c) keep d) join

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الأقصر ٢٠٢٣

sign – won – dumb – deaf – care – wins

Ali goes to a special school for (1)..... children who can't hear. It's in a village in the country. He went there for the first time. There, he learns (2)..... language from clever teachers. They (3)..... about all the children. Ali has just (4)..... a prize because he was the best student. He loved it!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is a long, narrow boat for one or two people. بنى سوفى ٢٠٢٤
 a) raft b) craft c) canoe d) ship
- I didn't hear the phone ringing, I wasn't سوهاج ٢٠٢٤
 a) asleep b) awake c) anxious d) kind
- A is pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
 a) racket b) raft c) canoe d) rock
- Marwa has hearing problems. She can't hear well. She is الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
 a) deaf b) lazy c) blind d) dyslexic
- The antonym of the word "dangerous" is ".....". الحيرة ٢٠٢٤
 a) serious b) unsafe c) difficult d) safe
- You can add "....." to the verb "teach" to have a noun. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ir b) -tion c) -er d) -le
- The suffix "....." turns the verb "hear" into a noun. بنى سوفى ٢٠٢٣
 a) -ed b) -ing c) -ment d) -tion
- My is to be a successful scientist in the future. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤
 a) concert b) competition c) volunteer d) dream
- Jim was for a long time in the desert.
 a) gained b) missed c) won d) lost
- Last night, I had a strange dream. I thought I was flying! "Strange" means بنى سوفى ٢٠٢٢
 a) regular b) unusual c) usual d) boring
- Miss Dina teaches us English this year. The antonym of "teaches" is كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
 a) educates b) learns c) helps d) creates

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Present Perfect Tense

It is used to express unfinished events that started in the past and continue to the present.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة في الحاضر.

e.g. • I **have lived** in Paris for five years.
(I still live in Paris).

It is used to express finished events in someone's life.
(if the person is still alive - life experience)

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث منتهية في حياة شخص ما إذا كان الشخص ما زال على قيد الحياة (خبرات حياتية).

e.g. • He **has** never **travelled** by plane.
(He is alive).

It is used to express finished events that happened in the past and their impact is now continuing.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث منتهية في الماضي مع استمرار تأثير الحدث (النتيجة) في الوقت الحالي.

e.g. • It **has rained** a lot. His clothes are wet.

It is used with unfinished time words
(this week, today, this year, etc.).

- يستخدم مع الكلمات التي تعبر عن عدم انتهاء الوقت.

e.g. • I **have eaten** lots of plums today.
(Today is not over yet).

Past Simple Tense

It is used to express finished events in the past.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث منتهية في الماضي.

e.g. • My son **was** sick on Monday.
(My son isn't sick now).

It is used to express finished events in someone's life.
(if the person is dead)

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث منتهية في حياة شخص ما إذا كان الشخص فارق الحياة.

e.g. • He **travelled** a lot by plane.
(He is dead).

It is used to express finished events. There is no result in the present.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث منتهية مع عدم وجود نتائج لها في الوقت الحالي.

e.g. • He **went** to the cinema five hours ago.
(Now he is at home).

It is used with finished time words
(yesterday, last week, in 2000, etc.).

- يستخدم مع كلمات الوقت المنتهى (الدالة على الماضي).

e.g. • We **didn't call** him yesterday.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 They (plant) beautiful flowers since they moved to this house.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (have planted) لوجود كلمة since الدالة على المضارع التام.
- 2 We (not/go) to school yesterday.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't go) لوجود كلمة yesterday الدالة على الماضي البسيط.



PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It (rain) every day this week.
2. I joined a handball club but I (not/win) lots of matches with my team. **SB**
3. He (cook) dinner for the family last night.
4. Last month, Ramy (has read) a comic book.
5. Marwan (work) hard, and now he has a successful career.
6. I (live) in Aswan when I was young.
7. My sister (walk) to the park yesterday.
8. Two years ago, I (play) at a concert in the Cairo Opera House. **SB**
9. I (read) six books this month.
10. My parents (visit) Brazil a few times.
11. We (wait) for the bus for two hours. **الأقصر ٢٠٢٢**
12. I (learn) to play the piano, and I can play my favourite songs. **الأقصر ٢٠٢٢**
13. My grandfather is an author. He (write) many books.
14. She (be) abroad since 2020. **المنيا ٢٠٢٢**
15. They (visit) us at home last week. **بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢**
16. He (have) a headache since last Monday. **بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢**
17. I (go) to the park last Sunday. **الفيوم ٢٠٢٢**
18. Last year, my brother Ahmed (has read) lots of books about space science. **الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢**
19. My father (want) to be a champion when he was young. **الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢**
20. I (play) tennis three times this week and it's still only Wednesday.



1. Speaking

Talking about experiences

التحدث عن الخبرات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Have you ever moved to a new house?

هل سبق لك أن انتقلت لمنزل جديد؟

Yes, I have.

نعم.



When did you move to a new house?

متى انتقلت لمنزل جديد؟

We moved 3 years ago.

انتقلنا منذ ثلاث سنوات.



Which club did you join?

إلى أي ناد انضمت؟

I joined Al Gazeera Sports Club.

انضمت لنادى الجزيرة.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

أسوان ٢٠٢٣

Hatem is telling Karim about his weekend.

Hatem : Hi, Karim.

Karim : Hi, Hatem. Where have you been?

Hatem : (1).....

Karim : To the countryside! (2).....?

Hatem : I went with my family.

Karim : (3).....?

Hatem : I went to the fields, met my friends and collected some fruit.

Karim : How fantastic! When did you return?

Hatem : (4)..... . Do you like the country?

Karim : (5)..... . It's wonderful.



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a short story and describe the character you liked most

كيفية كتابة قصة قصيرة ووصف للشخصية التي أحببتها

- What's the character's name?
- Mention some information about the character and what he/she did.
- Do you like the character? Why/ Why not?
- What did you learn from that character?

Writing tips

Read your paragraph out loud or ask someone else to read it and give you feedback.

قم بقراءة فقرتك بصوت عالٍ أو اطلب من شخص آخر قراءتها وإعطائك رأيه بها.

Example

"Alice's Adventures in Wonderland"

My favourite story is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's a children's story by Lewis Carroll. He wrote it in 1865. Alice is the main character of the story. She is a clever girl. She's also sensible. She goes to Wonderland and meets a lot of interesting characters there. She meets the White Rabbit who is always busy and in a hurry. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again. I learnt from this story that friendship is very important for us.

Check Point

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A short story you have read"



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

moved – for – together – gather – since – wedding

Jack has been my friend for over 20 years. We have known each other (1) we were children. Recently, he and his family have (2) to a new house on the same street as me, and now our children play (3) almost every day. During his son's (4) party he was ill, but the doctor doesn't know what is causing his pain.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have spent five months travelling around the world. In 2018, I visited Ethiopia, Kenya and Tanzania. I enjoyed meeting local people, learning about local traditions and visiting natural parks. I read and learned a lot about their culture.

I have also worked with children in a summer camp. I planned activities for children aged 9-12, including football, climbing and songs. During this time, I developed many useful skills. For example, I made sure the children were always **safe** and happy. I learned how to be helpful and positive, and I also learned ways to help people make friends when they are with strangers.

I worked as a volunteer for a charity. I helped at a social club for the elderly. The experience taught me to be patient and friendly. I also organised a four-day camping trip in the mountains with other students from my school. This experience taught me about camping equipment and problems.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This text is about experiences.
a) life b) school c) charity d) camping
- The writer's job can be a/an
a) officer b) guide c) doctor d) teacher
- The opposite of the word "**safe**" is ".....".
a) special b) free c) dangerous d) busy

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
- How long has the writer spent travelling?
- Summarise the useful things the writer got from the camping trip.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To form the adjective of "noise", add the suffix ".....".
a) -y b) -ness c) -er d) -ive
- The players must the instructions of the coach to win the match.
a) follow b) join c) hear d) learn

3. A is pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping.
 a) novel b) club c) dream d) dictionary
4. She goes to a special school for deaf children. Deaf children can't
 a) see b) hear c) smell d) taste
5. The small boy was afraid when he saw the dog. He was very
 a) noisy b) scared c) safe d) narrow
6. Don't make noise; your father is asleep. The antonym of "asleep" is ".....".
 a) fast b) awake c) dead d) wake

أسبوع ٢٠٢٤

ديسمبر ٢٠٢٤

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

سبتمبر ٢٠٢٤

1. Noha has (be) to Cairo for a week.
 2. Last night, we (celebrate) Lily's birthday with a surprise party.
 3. I (lose) my keys. Can you help me look for them?
 4. I (not/wear) this shirt since last week.
 5. I (visit) Paris three times.

يونيو ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on: "A short story you have read"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 The house (was painting) a month ago.
 2 He (live) in Marina for a year when he was a student.
 3 Mo Salah (play) in Italy for 2 years. He plays in England now.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق/ينجز	dyslexia (n)	صعوبة/عسر القراءة
brain (n)	مخ	result (n)	نتيجة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	theme park (n)	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
coach (n)	مدرب	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	windsurf (ed) (v)	يركب الموج

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

alone (adj)	بمفرده	cry (y.ied) (v)	يبكي/يصرخ
artist (n)	فنان	miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد/يفوت
biography (n)	سيرة شخصية	practise (d) (v)	يتدرب/يمارس

Check Point

Choose and complete:

miss - practise - brain - result

- 1 Reading books and telling stories help your
grow and become smarter.
- 2 I my friends when they are not around to play.
- 3 Soccer players kicking and scoring goals on the field.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
achieve (v)	يحقق/ينجز	succeed in	ينجح في	fail	يفشل
clever (adj)	ذكي/ماهر	intelligent/smart	ذكي	stupid/foolish	غبى/أحمق
disability (n)	صعوبة/عجز	inability	عدم القدرة	ability	قدرة
discover (v)	يكشف	find out	يكشف	hide	يخفي
huge (adj)	ضخم	large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير
organise (v)	ينظم	arrange	يرتب	disorganise	يفسد
normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي	ordinarily	بشكل عادي	abnormally	بشكل غير طبيعي
strong (adj)	قوي	powerful	قوي	weak	ضعيف
surprised (adj)	مندعش	amazed	مذهول	unsurprised	غير مندهش

Language Expressions

do	> an exam a job	يؤدي اختبار يؤدي وظيفة	do	> a sport gymnastics	يمارس رياضة يمارس الجمباز
give	> a talk	يلقي حديثاً/خطاباً	make	> notes	يدون ملاحظات

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

a prize for	جائزة في	far from	بعيد من
difficult for	صعب لـ	take back to	يُعيد إلى

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
draw يرسم	drew	drawn

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – from – drew – intelligent – give

- I was so nervous to a talk in front of my classmates.
- The park is far our house, so we have to take a taxi.
- The antonym of "foolish" is
- My little sister a nice picture yesterday.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات ومرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللفوية وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً
حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية



Definitions

التعريفات

achieve يحقق/ينجز	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do
discover يكتشف	find or find out something that people did not know before
dyslexia صعوبة/عسر القراءة	a learning difference that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read, write or spell
result نتيجة	the final number that people or teams get at the end of an exam or sports match
volunteer متطوع	someone who does his work for no money

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v) يحقق/ينجز	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	achievement (n) إنجاز
gymnast (n) لاعبة جمباز	-ics	تحويل الاسم إلى اسم آخر	gymnastics (n) الجمباز
surprise (v) يدهش	-ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	surprised (adj) مندهش

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	ability (n) قدرة	تعطي عكس المعنى	disability (n) صعوبة/عجز
	cover (v) يغطي	تغيير معنى الفعل	discover (v) يكتشف

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What sport do you like?

 **Listen to Nihal telling a story and answer the question.**

Listening Text



Lesson 5

SB Page 41

Nihal Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done **gymnastics** ⁽¹⁾ for about ten years. I **train** ⁽²⁾ on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my **coach** ⁽³⁾ asked if I wanted to enter my first competition. I was really excited and I practised every day for a month. On the Thursday before the **competition** ⁽⁴⁾, I was practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg! I was so sad and I cried and cried. I couldn't enter the competition. I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then, but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year, I will try to enter the competition again!



(1) الجيمناز

(2) يتدرب

(3) مدرب

(4) مسابقة

Post-listening question: - How long has Nihal done this sport?

Pre-reading question: - Do you have any study problems?

 **Read about Munir and answer the questions.**

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. **When** I was little, I always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They **discovered** ⁽¹⁾ that I had **dyslexia** ⁽²⁾. This means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell. **After that**, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good **results** ⁽³⁾! I was **surprised** ⁽⁴⁾ and happy. **Later**, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. **Now**, I **volunteer** ⁽⁵⁾ at a **charity** ⁽⁶⁾ for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

Lesson 6

SB page 42

(1) اكتشف

(2) عسر/صعوبة القراءة

(3) نتائج

(4) مندهش

(5) يتطوع

(6) جمعية خيرية

Pre-reading question: - How do you spend your free time?

Complete the story with these time expressions.

WB page 99

Karim has enjoyed **windsurfing** ⁽¹⁾ for about **two years**.

He usually goes with his older brother. A few **months ago**, he decided to windsurf **alone** ⁽²⁾.

He did not tell his brother this. It was windy, but that is good if you want to windsurf. In **the afternoon**, the wind **suddenly** ⁽³⁾ became very strong. The wind took Karim far from the beach. He was very **scared** ⁽⁴⁾. Some people in a boat came to help Karim. **After that**, they took him back to the beach. Karim has not windsurfed **alone** since **that time**. **Now**, he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learnt an important lesson!



(1) ركوب الأمواج

(2) وحيداً

(3) فجأة

(4) خائف

Post-reading question: - What have you learnt from the passage?

Complete the text with the past simple or present perfect.

Lesson 7

Choose the correct words, for or since.

SB Page 43

Different families **have lived** in our house **for** over 200 years. I **have lived** here with my family **since** 2016. Before that, we **lived** in Cairo. My avparents **changed** some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum **wanted** a new bathroom! My grandmother **has lived** with us **for** four years. It is a happy, family home.

"Guessing the meaning of a vocabulary"

مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة فى النص

تعتبر مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة فى النص من المهارات التى قد تختبرها قطعة الفهم وتعتمد على فهم معنى الكلمة من خلال السياق.

- Karim has not windsurfed **alone** since that time.

- The underlined word "**alone**" means to be with

a) many people


b) your friends

c) no people

d) your family

Pre-reading question:

- Have you visited any foreign countries?

 Put the events in Judy's life in the correct order.

WB page 100

1. I was born in Manchester⁽¹⁾ in England⁽²⁾.
2. When I was a baby, my parents moved to⁽³⁾ Egypt.
3. Before I started school, I learnt to speak Arabic.
4. When I started preparatory school⁽⁴⁾, nobody knew that I was English!
5. After my thirteenth⁽⁵⁾ birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there.
6. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!



(1) مدينة مانشستر

(2) إنجلترا

(3) انتقل إلى

(4) مدرسة إعدادي

(5) الثالث عشر

Lesson 6

WB Page 100

 Listen to Tarek. What did he do in 2020?

Tarek My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life? I've been to Jordan! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done?



Post-listening questions:

- 1 When did Tarek start playing handball?
.....
- 2 What does the underlined word "there" refer to?
.....
- 3 How old is Ali now?
.....



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

٢٠٢٣ دميأ

understand – neither – dyslexia – both – public – special

When Samy was young, he had (1)..... This means he was bad at (2)..... reading and writing. It wasn't easy for him to (3)..... his lessons. His parents asked a teacher to give him (4)..... lessons which helped him to be better and did well in the exams.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Let's go to the park and enjoy all the exciting rides and attractions!
a) coach b) biography c) theme d) charity
أسبوط ٢٠٢٤
- She is a volunteer at a charity. She works for
a) a lot of money b) much money c) some money d) no money
- Yesterday, I my best friend's birthday party because I was sick.
a) practised b) missed c) discovered d) trained
السويس ٢٠٢٤
- When I was little, my parents that I had dyslexia.
a) covered b) discovered c) uncovered d) recovered
السوان ٢٠٢٣
- She's a clever girl for solving that puzzle. The synonym of "clever" is ".....".
a) weak b) tiny c) stupid d) smart
- To is to succeed in doing something good or that you want to do.
a) achieve b) fail c) miss d) windsurf
الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣
- We add the prefix "....." to the verb "cover" to mean "find out".
a) im- b) dis- c) re- d) ex-
- is a learning disability which affects reading and writing.
a) Environment b) Dyslexia c) Volunteer d) Hyperloop
المنيا ٢٠٢٣
- Egypt has organised a big conference. The verb "organised" here means ".....".
a) built b) grown c) arranged d) painted
- To get the antonym of "normally", we add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) in- c) dis- d) ab-



1. Follow these steps when you tell a story:

اتبع هذه الخطوات عندما تلقى قصة:

١- ابدأ قصتك بهذه الجملة:

- Today, I'm going to tell you about a good/bad thing that happened to me.

سأتحدث اليوم عن شيء جيد/سيئ حدث لى.

٢- قم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة التالية:

- What happened? - When? - Where? - How did you feel?

2. Asking and answering questions about achievements:

السؤال والإجابة عن الإنجازات:

1. What important things have you achieved in your life?

ما الأشياء المهمة التي حققتها فى حياتك؟

- I have learnt to swim.

لقد تعلمت السباحة.

2. When did you learn that?

متى تعلمت ذلك؟

- It was last year.

كان ذلك السنة الماضية.

3. Who helped you to achieve them?

من ساعدك على تحقيق ذلك؟

- My father.

والدى.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

► Waleed is sad as he's lost his smartwatch at school.

Said : You are sad, aren't you?

Waleed : (1).....

Said : What happened?

Waleed : (2).....

Said : (3).....?

Waleed : I lost it an hour ago.

Said : (4).....?

Waleed : I lost it at school.

Said : I think this is your watch. I've found it in the library.

Waleed : Oh, yes. (5).....



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Ali about things he has achieved. Ali has learned to drive a car.

Samy : What important things have you achieved in life?

Ali : (1).....

Samy : When did you learn that?

Ali : (2).....

Samy : (3).....?

Ali : My father taught me that.

Samy : Wow, that's great. Would you please teach me?

Ali : (4).....

Samy : (5).....?

Ali : We can start tomorrow.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

أسبوع ٢٠٢٢

achieve – ever – prize – never – invite – an artist

I live in a village in the south of Egypt all my life. I have (1)..... been to another country. I love to draw and paint. I want to be (2)..... . I want to (3)..... something important. My parents always encourage me to get a (4)..... for my art. I don't want to disappoint them.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can achieve this task. The antonym of "achieve" is ".....".

- a) reach b) succeed in c) fail d) fall

2. A/An is a person who does work without getting money.

المسألة ٢٠٢٤

- a) engineer b) pioneer c) volunteer d) mountaineer

3. The superhero has strong muscles عضلات that help him lift heavy objects. He is

- a) weak b) intelligent c) smart d) powerful

4. His job is to support the players and train them. He is a

- a) volunteer b) coach c) brain d) result

5. To is to find or find out something that people didn't know before. كسر الشبح ٢٠٢٤

- a) receive b) intend c) discover d) pass

6. To get the adjective from "surprise", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ed b) -ist c) -ics d) -ment

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A: Have you been to Cairo? B: Yes, I (be) there last year. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

2. Has Hany (complete) all the levels in the video game?

3. My sisters (tidy) their rooms yesterday.

4. She (not/receive) any emails from her friend since last month.

5. (Have) he ever forgotten your birthday party? الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The achievements you have made this year"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. To get the opposite of "ability", add the prefix ".....".

- a) in- b) dis- c) ab- d) a and b

2. I have a broken leg. I really gymnastics now.

- a) do b) miss c) practise d) play

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A few months ago, I (practise) every day for a month.

2. How long do you think (she/done) this sport?

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hana and her grandmother are talking about places of residence إقامة.

Hana : I know you like your life in the country; how long have you lived there?

Grandmother : (1)

Hana : Really? (2)

Grandmother : I've been married to your grandfather for 40 years.

Hana : (3)

Grandmother : Yes, I do; villages are quieter than cities.

Hana : I agree with you that cities are noisier than villages.

Grandmother : What about you, Hana?

Hana : (4)

Grandmother : You're right, most young people enjoy the facilities of big cities.

Hana : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A. wonderful – snorkelled – never – ever – diving – driving

I travelled to Hurghada last summer. Hurghada is the most amazing city I have (1) visited. I spent a (2) time there. I (3) in the sea. Also, I went (4) with the help of my instructor.

B. since – do – make – for – ride – instrument

We have a nice house in our village. I have lived there (1) I was a child. In the summer, I usually (2) several activities. I sometimes like to play my favourite musical (3) Also, in my spare time, I like to (4) a horse.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rami has achieved great success; he has an amazing job.

a) made b) done c) ignored d) agreed

2. A/An is a place for the care and education of children who have no parents.

a) club b) orphanage c) prison d) park

3. He proved that he was sensitive. We use the prefix "....." to give the opposite meaning of "sensitive".
 a) dis- b) re- c) im- d) in-
4. I can't wait any longer; I must now.
 a) leave b) live c) let d) stay
5. Who found out that mistake? "Found out" here means ".....".
 a) forgot b) invented c) repeated d) discovered
6. A: How long have you practised your favourite sport?
 B: I have it for five years.
 a) made b) run c) gone d) done
7. He became a member of the club after it.
 a) joining b) entering c) going d) playing
8. When you are a talk, try to organise your ideas first.
 a) letting b) giving c) seeing d) going
9. Can you complete a timeline of important that made you happy in your life?
 a) accidents b) events c) problems d) failures
10. I have passed the exam. "Passed" here has the opposite meaning of ".....".
 a) fell b) lived c) left d) failed

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you (never) been to Hurghada?
2. I haven't seen Rami (for) the last time we were at the club.
3. We didn't travel to London (since) 2021.
4. A: Have you sent the car to the service centre?
 B: Yes, I (have sent) it yesterday.
5. Hala (wasn't returned) from London yet.
6. I'm very sad; I (had lost) my mobile.
7. My uncle (was having) a lung disease since 2020.



Listening

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Basmala has got a new bike.

Basmala : Hi, Kady! Guess what? I got a new bike!

Kady : Wow, that's awesome! (1).....?

Basmala : I got it from my father on my birthday. It's so cool!

Kady : (2).....?

Basmala : It's bright red, my favourite colour!

Kady : Have you taken it for a ride?

Basmala : (3)....., I rode it around the neighbourhood yesterday.

Kady : Great! How did you feel?

Basmala : (4)..... Let's go for a ride together to try it.

Kady : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

reasons – encouraged – understand – results – dyslexia – has encouraged

Salma is a good young woman. When she was young, she had (1)..... . It wasn't easy for her to (2)..... her lessons. Her teachers and parents always (3)..... her to do well and she got good (4)..... at the end. Now, she helps other children with the same problem.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

المسألة ٢٣

Once, something really cool happened in my life! I was in the park playing, and I found a shiny rock on the ground. It looked so pretty! I picked it up and showed it to my mum. She said it was special. That night, I put the rock under my bed. When I woke up in the morning, something amazing happened. I had the best day at school! I got the highest grade on my maths test, and all my friends wanted to play with me.

I realised the rock was bringing me good luck. So whenever I had an important test or a big event, I would put the rock under my bed. It made me feel really happy. The rock made me feel that I had the power to do great things. It taught me to believe in myself and work hard. That's why good things happened.

But suddenly, I woke up and found myself in bed. It was a dream, but I have learnt a lesson. Believe in yourself and chase your dreams. You can do amazing things too!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about a/an
 a) article b) biography c) dream d) story
- The speaker put the rock under his to bring him good luck.
 a) head b) boot c) bag d) bed
- It looked so pretty! The word "pretty" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) beautiful b) ugly c) large d) tiny

B) Answer the following questions:

- Infer from the text how the speaker got the highest marks in his tests.

- Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

- Do you believe in things that bring good luck? Why?/ Why not?



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is the final number that people or teams get at the end of an exam or sports match.
 a) result b) tent c) experience d) instrument
- Finding out some new information about something means
 a) discovering b) volunteering c) inventing d) deciding
- Baher finished first in the last race. He the cup.
 a) remembered b) left c) lost d) won
- He is very careful, so he always his answers before he ends his test.
 a) checks b) shares c) learns d) scares

5. I waited for my friend for more than one hour. "Wait" is the antonym of ".....".

- a) stay b) leave c) remain d) stop

6. To get an adjective from the noun "music", add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ist b) -ing c) -al d) -ive

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She (not/travel) to another country since she was a baby. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

2. (For) I started my job, I've worked with hundreds of computers. الشارقة ٢٠٢٤

3. Has your father (for) visited Paris?

4. Maria and Maged (not/receive) any updates from the team.

5. She (break) her leg the day before her exam.



Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

الشرعية ٢٠٢٤

"Which is better for you: life in a city or in a village?"

[illegible]

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2 & 3	4	5	6
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Yamen is asking Mazen about his visit to the zoo last weekend.

Yamen : Hi Mazen, what did you do over the weekend?

Mazen : Hi Yamen, (1).....

- a)** we went to the beach **b)** I didn't know
c) I stayed at home **d)** I went to the zoo with my family

Yamen : Wow, that sounds fun! (2).....?

- a)** Where did you see animals **b)** Which animals did you see
c) Which animals do you see **d)** Which animals will you see

Mazen : We saw lions, monkeys and elephants!

Yamen : That's amazing! Which animal was your favourite?

Mazen : (3)..... They were so funny!

- a)** I loved the monkeys the most **b)** I hated the monkeys
c) The monkeys aren't my favourite **d)** They aren't the monkeys

Yamen : I like monkeys too, they're so entertaining. (4).....?

- a)** Do you take any pictures **b)** Will you take any pictures
c) Did you take any pictures **d)** Can you take any pictures

Mazen : Yes, my dad took a lot of pictures. I can show them to you next time.

Yamen : Can I go with you next time?

Mazen : (5)..... It's my pleasure to be with me.

- a)** Yes, you can **b)** Sure, I did
c) Sorry, you didn't **d)** No, you can't

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

- My sister and I have (ever) visited another country before.
a) for **b)** never **c)** since **d)** when
- They have been married (since) 20 years.
a) since **b)** when **c)** ever **d)** for
- Mustafa has played the piano (when) he was seven years old.
a) never **b)** ever **c)** for **d)** since
- When she was little, she (learn) how to tie her shoes.
a) learned **b)** learns **c)** has learned **d)** learning
- Last weekend, I (watch) a funny cartoon.
a) watch **b)** watches **c)** has watched **d)** watched

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 a b c d	2 a b c d	3 a b c d	4 a b c d	5 a b c d
Q 2	1 a b c d	2 a b c d	3 a b c d	4 a b c d	5 a b c d

Unit 5

YOUNG ROLE MODELS



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player
- Writing** A description of someone's job; a paragraph about a tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model
- Listening** A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation about sharing good news
- Speaking** Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news
- Language** The present perfect with yet and already
- Life Skills** Respect for diversity



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

achievement (n)	إنجاز	health emergency (n)	طوارئ صحية
challenge (n)	تحدي	hyperloop (n)	هايبرلوب (نظام نقل)
championship (n)	بطولة	receive (d) (v)	يستلم/يتلقى
enter (ed) (v)	يدخل	role model (n)	قدوة
goal (n)	هدف	speech (n)	كلمة/خطاب
Jobs وظائف			
artist (n)	فنان/رسام	manager (n)	مدير
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	mathematician (n)	متخصص بالرياضيات
business person (n)	رجل/سيدة أعمال	musician (n)	موسيقي/موسيقيار
campaigner (n)	ناشط	scientist (n)	عالم
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر	sports champion (n)	بطل رياضي
engineer (n)	مهندس	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقال	engineering (n)	هندسة
award (n)	جائزة	equipment (n)	معدات
blind (adj)	أعمى	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
company (n)	شركة	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
crosswords (n)	الكلمات المتقاطعة	situation (n)	موقف
different (adj)	مختلف	space (n)	فضاء
disabled (adj)	معاق	until (prep)	حتى

Check Point

Choose and complete: volunteer – musician – astronaut – crosswords

- I like to do in newspapers and magazines.
- If you want to be a, you can start playing an instrument.
- My son's dream is to be an He loves space and planets.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
design (v)	يصمم	plan/create	يخطط/يخلق	damage/destroy	يدمر
different (adj)	مختلف	dissimilar	غير متشابه	similar/the same	مشابه/نفس
join (v)	ينضم إلى	enter/take part	يدخل/يشارك	leave	يترك
reduce (v)	يقلل	decrease	يقلل	increase	يزيد
pass (v)	يجتاز	succeed in	ينجح في	fail	يفشل/يرسب

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve > a goal	يحقق هدفًا	get > paid for	يتقاضى راتبًا مقابل
become > blind	يصبح أعمى	give > a speech	يلقي حديثًا/خطابًا
finish > university	ينتهي دراسته الجامعية	win > award	يفوز بجائزة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

award for	جائزة في/من أجل	with top marks	بأعلى الدرجات
believe in	يؤمن بـ	work for	يعمل لدى
on a recent day	في الآونة الأخيرة	work out	يحل

Check Point

Choose and complete:

for – achieve – in – work

- I know you can your goal if you keep practising.
- You should receive an award your hard work.
- I believe your abilities, and you can get high marks.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للكلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

achievement	إنجاز	something important that you have done
artist	فنان	someone who is good at art
business person	رجل/سيدة أعمال	someone who travels to meetings ⁽¹⁾ around the world
campaigner	ناشط	a person whose job is to try and change the way people do things in society ⁽²⁾
award	جائزة/مكافئة	a prize for an event or a competition
hyperloop	نظام نقل (هايبير لوب)	a new, very fast form of transport that travels above the ground

اجتماعات/مقابلات (1)

مجتمع (2)

championship	بطولة	a competition to find the best team or player in a sport
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	someone who works with hundreds of computers
enter	يدخل	decide to take part in something such as a competition
goal	هدف	something that you hope to do in the future
mathematician	متخصص بالرياضيات	someone who studies, works with or teaches maths
musician	موسيقي/موسيقيار	someone who is good at music
role model	قدوة	someone that you want to copy because you respect ⁽³⁾ them
scientist	عالم	someone who works with science
speech	كلمة/خطاب	a talk that someone gives to a group of people
sports champion	بطل رياضي	a person who wins a sports competition
volunteer	متطوع	someone who doesn't get paid ⁽⁴⁾ for work, but they like to help people

يحترم (3)

يتقاضى أجرًا مقابل (4)

اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
campaign (n)	حملة	-er		تحويل الفعل/الاسم إلى اسم فاعل		campaigner (n)	ناشط
manage (v)	يدير					manager (n)	مدير
disable (v)	يعطل/يبطل	-ed		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		disabled (adj)	معاق
educate (v)	يتعلم	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		education (n)	التعليم
engineer (n)	مهندس	-ing		تحويل الاسم إلى اسم آخر		engineering (n)	هندسة
music (n)	موسيقي	-ian		تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل		musician (n)	موسيقيار
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		different (adj)	مختلف

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
re-	use (v)	تحويل الفعل لفعل آخر ويعنى فعل الشيء مرة أخرى	reuse (v) يعيد استخدام
	cycle (n)	تحويل الاسم لفعل	recycle (v) يعيد تدوير

Places

أماكن

Africa	إفريقيا	China	الصين
Brazil	البرازيل	Nigeria	نيجيريا
Cambridge University	جامعة كامبريدج	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
Cairo University	جامعة القاهرة	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

Language Notes

- work as + وظيفة** يعمل كـ
• My uncle has **worked as** a **musician** in a famous band.
- unable عاجز (لديه إعاقة) / disabled غير قادر على فعل شيء**
• Noha is **unable** to speak English well. هنا توضيح لعدم قدره على فعل شيء
• I saw a **disabled** girl in a wheelchair. هنا توضيح للعجز بسبب إعاقة
- equipment معدات (كلمة لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولا يسبقها أدوات نكرة)**
• Doctors have special **equipment** to help them.
- model ميدالية / نموذج/قدوة / medal**
• My father is a great man. He is my role **model**.
• I won the golden **medal** at the running race.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My father is my role I want to be a successful musician like him.
a) medal b) marble c) model d) metal
- My mum works a teacher and she helps children learn new things.
a) as b) out c) on d) such
- Some boys in the class are to read the lessons well.
a) disable b) inable c) disabled d) unable

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What do you want to be in the future?

 Read the text. Why do you think Gamal likes his job?

SB page 45



My cousin, Gamal, is a **business person**⁽¹⁾. When he finished **university**⁽²⁾, he got a job with a big company in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.

I think he's got a very important job. He's the **manager**⁽³⁾ of a team of people and they have meetings every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from **companies**⁽⁴⁾ in other countries. He has travelled to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to **Nigeria**⁽⁵⁾ and **Brazil**⁽⁶⁾.

(1) رجل أعمال

(2) جامعة

(3) مدير

(4) شركات

(5) نيجيريا

(6) البرازيل

Comprehension Skills

Understanding reference:

مهارة فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير في النص:

من المهارات التي تختبرها أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين/فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير في النص وللإجابة على هذا النوع من الأسئلة لا بد من قراءة الفقرة جيداً وفهم الكلمة التي يشير إليها الضمير المحدد ومعرفة دلالات الضمائر وهل هو ضمير مفرد أو جمع أو عاقل أو غير عاقل.

He got a job with a big company in Cairo. He's worked **there** for three years now.

- The underlined pronoun "there" refers to the

a) company

b) Nigeria

c) meeting

d) university

Pre-reading question: - What are you interested in? Why?

Read the article quickly. What did Samar design?

Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space. As a young child, she wanted to be an **astronaut**⁽¹⁾. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space **engineering**⁽²⁾.

While Samar was at university, a space **technology**⁽³⁾ company had a **competition**⁽⁴⁾. Students had to design a **hyperloop**⁽⁵⁾ – a new, very fast form of transport that travels above the ground. Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from the university to join her team.

Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the **Middle East**⁽⁶⁾. They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the **award**⁽⁷⁾.

Three years later, Samar started her own company. Now, she is a space engineer and a business person. She also gives **speeches**⁽⁸⁾ to other young engineers to help them **achieve**⁽⁹⁾ their goals.

Lesson 2

SB page 46



(1) رائد فضاء

(2) الهندسة

(3) تكنولوجيا

(4) مسابقة

(5) هايبرلوب (نظام نقل)

(6) الشرق الأوسط

(7) جائزة

(8) خطاب

(9) يحقق

Lesson 2

WB page 103

Read and complete the text with these words.

Binita who is from a village in **India**⁽¹⁾ was five years old when she became **blind**⁽²⁾. This was a big **challenge**⁽³⁾ for her. She went to a **school for blind**⁽⁴⁾ children until she was eleven, when she **joined**⁽⁵⁾ a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about **her problems**⁽⁶⁾. They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do!

Now she is a **campaigner**⁽⁷⁾ for other people who are **disabled**⁽⁸⁾. Her next challenge is to help everyone understand that being disabled does not mean you cannot achieve your goals.



(1) الهند

(2) أعمى/كفيف

(3) تحدّي

(4) مدرسة للمكفوفين

(5) التحقت

(6) مشاكل

(7) ناشط

(8) معاقين

Post-reading questions:

1 What does the underlined word "her" refer to?

2 When did Binita become blind?



Pre-listening question: - Who is your role model?

Listen to a discussion about the campaigner Magdy Abdel Sayed. **SB Page 47**

Seleem Hi, Mazin! What are you reading?

Mazin It's an **article**⁽¹⁾ about Magdy Abdel Sayed.
He's a **campaigner**⁽²⁾ for people who are **disabled**⁽³⁾.

Seleem So, is he disabled?

Mazin Yes, he's been disabled all his life. He's done lots of amazing things – but he has had lots of **challenges**⁽⁴⁾.

Seleem What was his life like as a child?

Mazin Well, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Seleem Did he go to school?

Mazin Yes, but it wasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right **equipment**⁽⁵⁾ for disabled people.

Seleem So, what happened?

Mazin Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good **education**⁽⁶⁾. They found a school for him and he was an excellent student.

Seleem Were there a lot of challenges for Magdy at school?

Mazin Yes, there were, but he never stopped trying when things were difficult. Before he left school, he won an **award**⁽⁷⁾ from Cambridge University for his achievements.

Seleem That's amazing! What did he do when he finished school? Did he get a job or go to university?

Mazin Well, after Magdy won the award, a lot of companies wanted to give him a job, but he decided to go to university.

Seleem Of course – because education was very important to him.

Mazin Yes, but it wasn't the only important thing. Magdy has always believed in helping other people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for different charities.

Seleem And does he still help people now?

Mazin Yes, he does. He works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs. He also gives **speeches**⁽⁸⁾ about how everyone can achieve their goals.



(1) مقال

(2) ناشط

(3) معاق

(4) تحديات

(5) معدات

(6) تعليم

(7) جائزة

(8) خطب

Post-listening questions:

1 Why did Magdy Abdel Sayed decide to go to university?

2 How do you know that Magdy Abdel Sayed is a kind person?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sarah is and uses a wheelchair to get around.
a) blind b) disabled c) deaf d) strong
2. A is someone that you want to copy because you respect them.
a) goal b) speech c) role model d) championship
3. Next week, I will design a birthday card for my best friend. The synonym of "design" is ".....".
a) create b) damage c) join d) leave
4. He dreams of becoming a/an and exploring space.
a) manager b) engineer c) musician d) astronaut
5. Schools should have for disabled people. WB
a) development b) machine c) equipment d) information
6. A is someone who travels to meetings around the world. He always has meetings.
a) business person b) musician c) programmer d) championship
7. To get the noun for a person from the verb "manage", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ian b) -er c) -ent d) -ed
8. Nahla's is to pass all her exams with top marks!
a) award b) call c) ward d) goal
9. I think, I'll join the next poetry competition. The antonym of "join" is ".....".
a) leave b) enter c) design d) receive
10. always use experiments to learn about how things work.
a) Musicians b) Scientists c) Volunteers d) Engineers
11. To get the adjective from the verb "differ", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ence b) -able c) -ent d) -ful
12. Basmala an email from her friend thanking her for her help.
a) passed b) volunteered c) received d) designed
13. A/An is a prize for an event or a competition.
a) hyperloop b) award c) champion d) speech
14. To is to decide to take part in something such as a competition.
a) design b) recycle c) receive d) enter
15. We can reduce our waste by recycling. The antonym of "reduce" is ".....".
a) decrease b) increase c) destroy d) receive

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Longman

equipment – had – campaigner – campaign – article – has been

I like reading very much. I have read a/an (1) about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He is a/an (2) for people who are disabled. He (3) disabled all his life. It wasn't easy for his family to find a school with the proper (4) for him, where he proved to be an excellent student.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our school team came first in the tournament, this means it won the

اللقبوية ٢٠٢٤

a) text b) championship c) speech d) equipment

2. A/An is a person whose job is to try to change the way people do things in society.

الدفعلية ٢٠٢٤

a) driver b) campaigner c) artist d) pilot

3. He doesn't like numbers or maths problems. He can't be a

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

a) scientist b) musician c) mathematician d) footballer

4. A is a person who does work without being paid.

الأفصر ٢٠٢٣

a) farmer b) volunteer c) nurse d) player

5. I usually do the in the newspaper in my free time.

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) crosswords b) passwords c) crossroads d) keywords

6. An is something important you have done.

أسبوط ٢٠٢٣

a) opportunity b) aquarium c) achievement d) environment

7. My grandfather is blind. He always needs someone to help him. The word "blind" means he can't

أسبوط ٢٠٢٣

a) see b) smell c) speak d) hear

8. I succeeded in the exam. This means I it.

السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) lost b) filled c) missed d) passed

9. He is the champion of the last match. "Champion" means

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) loser b) winner c) spectator d) organiser

10. It was a real to climb that mountain, but we succeeded!

WB

a) challenge b) speech c) cause d) result

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1 The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

- e.g. • I **have finished** my homework.
• My mother **has washed** the dishes.

We use the present perfect for past actions when the time is not important or for things that are still continuing now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث ماضية عندما لا يكون الوقت مهماً أو للأشياء التي ما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

Form

التكوين

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + **have** / **haven't** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • I **have visited** my grandmother.
• My friends and I **haven't done** our homework.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + **has** / **hasn't** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • Habiba **has played** tennis in the club.
• Adel **hasn't swept** the floor.

A: Yes/No questions: السؤال بفعل مساعد

Have + I/we/you/they/ اسم جمع + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • **Have** your parents **watched** the film?

Has + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

Question

السؤال

- e.g. • **Has** she **helped** her mother with the housework?

B: Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. word + have + I/we/you/they/ اسم جمع + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • **What have** Habiba and Hala **done** in Alexandria?

Q. word + has + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • **Where has** he **gone** since yesterday?



2 The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

e.g. • I **visited** my uncle **yesterday**.

We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.
نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

Form

التكوين

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل +

Affirmative

الاثبات

- e.g. • Mayar **watched** an adventure film **yesterday**.
• My friends and I **were** at the museum **last** Friday.

لاحظ الفرق في التصريف الثاني للفعل بين الأفعال المنتظمة والأفعال غير المنتظمة. راجع جداول تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة داخل الدروس.

Negative

النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + مصدر الفعل inf.

- e.g. • I **didn't listen** to music last night.

لاحظ استخدام **wasn't/weren't** لنفي الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط.

- e.g. • My friends **weren't** absent **yesterday**.
• Amgad **wasn't** at school 3 days ago.

Yes/No questions: السؤال بفعل مساعد

...? مصدر الفعل inf. + subject الفاعل + **Did**

Question

السؤال

- e.g. • **Did** you **watch** TV last night?

Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

...? مصدر الفعل inf. + subject الفاعل + **did** + (أداة استفهام) Q. word

- e.g. • **When did** Dina's family **go** to the restaurant?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 She (study) that lesson for three times.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (has studied) لأنه لم يحدد وقت حدوث الفعل وذكر عدد مرات حدوثه فنستخدم مضارعاً تاماً.
- 2 Last weekend, we didn't (went) to Tanta.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (go) لأننا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد **didn't** في زمن الماضي البسيط.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (visit) three different countries this year.
2. Last year, I (be/ not) a good swimmer. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
3. Kamal (not/ invite) his cousin to his wedding last month. المنيا ٢٠٢٤
4. We (watch) all of our favourite TV shows last night.
5. Tala (never/ build) a sandcastle on the beach before today.
6. I (not/ bake) cookies for a long time.
7. Eman and Asmaa (explore) the forest last weekend.
8. How (the city/ change) since your last visit?
9. My grandma (see) that film four times. She likes it.
10. He (learn) to play the guitar when he was a teenager.
11. Columbus (arrive) in America in 1492. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
12. We (finish) our science project last week. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
13. I design bridges. Last year, we (build) a very long bridge in Cairo. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
14. Has the team (win) any games this season?
15. Salim (know) his best friends since he was four. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
16. Why did he (travelled) to London last week? Longman
17. The cookies (are) delicious, and we ate them all.
18. Who (has) the room painted by last week? Longman
19. My neighbour (had been) deaf all his life. Longman
20. When she (have been) in school, she came first in Egypt in NASA. Longman



1. Speaking

Discussing jobs مناقشة الوظائف

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Which university did Samar go to?

إلى أي جامعة ذهبت سمر؟

She went to Cairo University.

ذهبت إلى جامعة القاهرة.



What competition did she enter?

ما المسابقة التي اشتركت بها؟

She entered a space technology competition.

اشتركت بمسابقة لتكنولوجيا الفضاء.



When did Samar start her company?

متى أنشأت سمر شركتها؟

Three years later, after Samar had returned from the USA.

بعد ثلاث سنوات من عودة سمر من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

► Maher is asking Adel about his new job.

Maher : Hi Adel, I heard you started a new job. Congratulations!

Adel : (1)..... It was a challenge to find it.

Maher : (2).....?

Adel : I started it last week.

Maher : That's awesome. (3).....?

Adel : Our friend Said told me about it.

Maher : How was the interview?

Adel : (4)..... The manager was really friendly.

Maher : Are you happy with the job now?

Adel : (5)..... I'm really excited about it.



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a biography of your role model

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن شخص يمثل قدوة

A biography is a story of a person's life, and is written by someone else. You should:

السيرة الذاتية هي قصة حياة شخص، كتبت عن طريق شخص آخر، فيجب عند كتابة سيرة ذاتية أن:

1. Gather information about the person you're writing about, things you want your reader to know about him/her (who he/she is, when he was born, his education, what he's known for...).

(١) تجمع المعلومات جيداً عن الشخص الذي تكتب عنه (من هو/ متى ولد/ ماذا درس/ ما سبب شهرته؟)

2. Include your opinion of his/her achievements.

(٢) عبر عن رأيك في إنجازاته.

3. Use adjectives and adverbs to make your writing interesting.

(٣) استخدم صفات وأحوال تبديع في وصف الشخصية وتجعل السيرة شيقة للقارئ.

Writing tips

The way you organise your sentences helps the reader to understand better.

الطريقة التي تنظم بها الجمل التي تكتبها تساعد القارئ على الفهم بشكل أفضل.

Example

"A biography of my role model"

A role model is someone we admire. A role model can simply be anyone from our family, our friends, or even a famous person. My role model is Samar Abdelfattah. She is a space engineer and a business person. She has worked hard to achieve her goals. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering. While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Samar entered the competition with her team, engineering students from the university. Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East. They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award. Three years later, Samar started her own company. I hope to be like her when I grow up.

Check Point

Write a biography of your role model:

"My role model"

1.

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Riham tells Hend about her role model.

Riham : Hi, Hend! Do you know that I want to be like Samar Abdelfattah?

Hend : (1).....?

Riham : She is a space engineer and a business person.

Hend : Why do you want to be like her?

Riham : (2).....

Hend : That's great. (3).....?

Riham : Yes, I'm very interested in studying space. What about you?

Hend : (4)..... I like drawing and painting.

Riham : What do you do to improve your skills?

Hend : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

medicine – works – role – campaigner – rule – worked

Dr Magdy Yacoub is my (1)..... model. He did a lot of achievements in (2)..... . He is a (3)..... for people who have heart diseases, he (4)..... in England many years ago.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a new, very fast form of transport that travels above the ground.

القيوم ٢٠٢٤

a) motorcycle b) motorbike c) hyperloop d) school bus

2. A "....." is something you plan for and hope to do in the future.

المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) country b) century c) kettle d) goal

3. Samar travelled to the USA to receive an award. The word "award" here means ".....".

a) profit b) prize c) souvenir d) loss

4. The students here have done something important. They have made a good

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٤

a) achievement b) mistake c) cyberbullying d) friend

5. I don't agree with you, I have a different opinion. The word "....." is the antonym of "different".

- a) similar b) dissimilar c) useless d) both a & c

6. To make a name of a job from the word "music", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ist b) -ian c) -ion d) -er

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friends (practise) yoga for two years.
2. I (have) a problem with my computer yesterday.
3. My father has (never/forget) my birthday.
4. Who has Nada (meet) in the club?
5. Mo Salah (score) many goals in the last game.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A biography of a person you like most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاوب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He (never/stop) trying when things were difficult.
2. Sadly, I (lose) my new mobile phone.
3. I went to the club and (have) a nice time with my friends.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

app (application) (n)	تطبيق	medal (n)	ميدالية
biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية	medical team (n)	الفريق الطبي
bubble (n)	فقاعة (طبية)	ministry (n)	وزارة
competition/contest (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الأولمبية
competitor/player (n)	متنافس	organiser (n)	المنظم
coronavirus pandemic (n)	جائحة فيروس كورونا	quarter-finals (n)	الدور ربع النهائي
create (d) (v)	يبتكر/يبدع	spectator (n)	متفرج
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	sports event (n)	حدث رياضي
health centre (n)	مركز صحي	staff/workers (n)	العاملون
hold (held) (v)	يحتوي/يستوعب/يعقد	success (n)	نجاح
mathematics (maths) (n)	الرياضيات	tournament/contest (n)	دورة مباريات

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

aeroplane (plane) (n)	طائرة	stadium (n)	استاد
cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة	tests (n)	اختبارات/فحوصات
interview (n/v)	مقابلة/يجري مقابلة	timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
poem (n)	قصيدة	together (adv)	معاً
schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسي	youth (n)	الشباب

Check Point

Choose and complete:

hold – pandemic – poem – interview

- Let's a special birthday party for you and invite all your friends!
- A/An is when someone asks you lots of questions to learn more about you.
- In 2019, coronavirus became a serious

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
champion (n)	بطل	winner	فائز	loser	خاسر
excellent (adj)	ممتاز	perfect	ممتاز	ordinary	عادي
incredible (adj)	لا يصدق	fantastic	رائع	terrible/ordinary	فظيع/عادي
inside (adv)	بالداخل	indoors	بالداخل	outside/outdoors	بالخارج
nervous (adj)	عصبي/متوتر	anxious	قلق/متوتر	calm/quiet	هادئ
possible (adj)	ممکن/محتمل	likely	محتمل	impossible	غير ممكن

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

create > an app	يبتكر تطبيقاً	play > concerts	يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية
go > travelling	يذهب للسفر	reach > quarter-finals	يصل الدور ربع النهائى
have > a tour of	يقوم بجولة فى	score > a goal	يسجل هدفاً

Prepositions

حروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	prize for	جائزة فى
by night	بحلول الليل	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
on the Nile	فى النيل	thank for	يشكر على

Check Point

Choose and complete:

playing – going – for – champion

- I love concerts because I like to share my music with others.
- Nader won the race. He is a
- I won a prize being the best student in the class!

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للكلمات، مرادفها
وعكسها والتعبيرات
اللغوية وحروف الجر.



Definitions

التعريفات

app	تطبيق	software you can use on your computer or phone
biography	سيرة ذاتية	a book or text about someone's life
bubble	فقاعة (طبية)	a group of people who can meet during a health emergency ⁽¹⁾
competition	مسابقة/منافسة	an event in which people try to be the best at something
competitor	متنافس	a person or team that takes part in a competition
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة فيروس كورونا	the cause of the health emergency which began in 2019, when many people became ill around the world
create	ينشئ/يبدع/يبتكر	make something new
creative	مبدع/مبتكر	good at thinking of new ideas ⁽²⁾ or ways to do something
incredible	لا يصدق	really good, fantastic
organiser	المنظم	someone who organises or plans an event
quarter-finals	الدور ربع النهائي	the part of a competition when there are only eight teams or people in it
spectator	متفرج	someone who watches a sport or an event ⁽³⁾
staff	العاملون	the group of people who work somewhere
tournament	دورة مباريات	a competition in which many players or teams take part ⁽⁴⁾

طوارئ صحية (1)

أفكار (2)

حدث (3)

يشترك (4)

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
clean (v) ينظف	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	cleaner (n) عامل نظافة
organise (v) ينظم			organiser (n) منظم
create (v) يبتكر/يبدع	-ive	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	creative (adj) مبدع/مبتكر
nerve (n) عصب	-ous	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	nervous (adj) عصبى/متوتر
spectate (v) يشاهد	-or	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	spectator (n) مشاهد/متفرج

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
in-	credible (adj) معقول	تعطى عكس الصفة	incredible (adj) لا يصدق
im-	possible (adj) ممكن	تعطى عكس الصفة	impossible (adj) غير ممكن
tele-	vision (n) رؤية	تغير معنى الاسم	television (n) التلفاز

Important Words

كلمات هامة

Khan el-Khalili	خان الخليلي	the Ministry of Health	وزارة الصحة
Ivory Coast	ساحل العاج	the Ministry of Youth and Sports	وزارة الشباب والرياضة
the Africa Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الإفريقية	the Rio Olympics	أولمبياد ريو

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What's your hobby?

Lesson 3

Read Judy's biography of her friend Aya. Tick the things Aya has done in her life.

SB page 48

My friend Aya has always loved writing **stories**⁽¹⁾ and **poems**⁽²⁾. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be **creative**⁽³⁾. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two **concerts**⁽⁴⁾ already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing!

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an **app**⁽⁵⁾ to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit! Maybe we can go travelling **together**⁽⁶⁾.

Post-reading questions:

1 What is Aya good at?

2 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?



- | | |
|-----------|-------------------|
| (1) قصص | (2) قصائد شعر |
| (3) مبدع | (4) حفلات موسيقية |
| (5) تطبيق | (6) معاً |

Pre-listening question:

- Which apps on your mobile do you like best?

Listening Text



Lesson 3

Listen to the interview. What has Haytham created? What does it do?

SB Page 49



Interviewer So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and you have already **created**⁽¹⁾ an **app**⁽²⁾, is that right?

Haytham Yes! I created an app last year.

Interviewer What does your app do?

Haytham It's an app to help people **organise**⁽³⁾ their schoolwork and homework. I needed all my work and timetables to be in the same place so I made it to help me! Then my friends liked it too so I decided to let other people use it, too!

Interviewer That sounds great! When can we use it?

Haytham People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

Interviewer Have you created any other apps yet?

Haytham No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas!

Interviewer Have you got a job at a big technology company yet?

Haytham No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to university too.

(1) **بنتكر**


(2) **تطبيق**

(3) **ينظم**

Post-listening questions:

- 1 How old is Haytham?
- 2 When did Haytham create a new app?
- 3 Do you think Haytham's new app is useful? Why/ Why not?

- How was your life during coronavirus pandemic?

 Read the newspaper article quickly and answer the questions. **SB page 50**

IN THE BUBBLE⁽¹⁾

Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball **Championship**⁽²⁾ in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball **tournament**⁽³⁾ ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the **quarter-finals** (the last eight). There were over 600 **competitors**⁽⁴⁾ from 32 countries. They have played over 100 games and scored more than 5,500 goals! All of this was during the **coronavirus pandemic**⁽⁵⁾. Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest in Egypt has been fantastic!

The **medical team**⁽⁶⁾ have worked for months to make the tournament safe. Firstly, there haven't been any **spectators**⁽⁷⁾. Also, the players and staff have had tests for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this 'bubble'. These hotels all have a health centre and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners have worked day and night to clean the stadiums and the hotels and make them safe.

The medical team were from the **Ministry of Health**⁽⁸⁾ and the **Ministry of Youth and Sports**⁽⁹⁾. They have done such an incredible job that the **organisers**⁽¹⁰⁾ of the 2021 **Olympics**⁽¹¹⁾ in Japan have asked them for their advice. What an amazing **achievement**⁽¹²⁾!

Post-reading questions:

1 What do you think of the effort the Ministry of Health and the Ministry of Youth and Sports have done to hold the competition?

2 What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?



(1) فقاعة (طبية)

(2) البطولة

(3) دورة

(4) متنافسون

(5) جائحة فيروس كورونا

(6) الفريق الطبي

(7) مشاهدون


(8) وزارة الصحة

(9) وزارة الشباب والرياضة

(10) منظّمون

(11) الألعاب الأولمبية

(12) إنجاز

 Look at the words in bold in the text. Replace each one with a word from the box that has a similar meaning.

WB page 105

Egypt has already won the **Africa Cup of Nations**⁽¹⁾ seven times. That is a fantastic (an **incredible**⁽²⁾) achievement! In 2023, the contest (**tournament**) will be in the **Ivory Coast**⁽³⁾, who have already been winners (**Champions**) twice before. The players (**competitors**) will be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium, in **Abidjan**⁽⁴⁾, holds 60,000 people (**spectators**). The organisers are sure that it will be a great **success**⁽⁵⁾.



(1) كأس الأمم الإفريقية

(2) لا يصدق

(3) ساحل العاج

(4) مدينة أبيدجان

(5) نجاح

Post-reading questions:

- 1 How many times has Egypt won the Africa Cup of Nations?
.....
- 2 How many times has the Ivory Coast won the Africa Cup of Nations?
.....
- 3 Do you think that the tournament will be a great success in the Ivory Coast?
.....

Comprehension Skills

Critical Thinking Skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي وردت في النص من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص، ودائماً ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

Do you think the Egyptian team is a good team? Why?

Yes, I think so, because Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations seven times.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a person or team that takes part in a competition.
a) loser b) competitor c) spectator d) tournament
2. You did an excellent job. The synonym of "excellent" is ".....".
a) perfect b) ordinary c) calm d) anxious
3. The clean-..... makes sure that our roads are clean.
a) -or b) -er c) -ent d) -ous
4. There are only eight teams left, so this is the
a) end b) conclusion c) finals d) quarter-finals
5. The magic show was incredible. The antonym of "incredible" is ".....".
a) fantastic b) ordinary c) anxious d) quiet
6. You're going to have so much fun at the sports with all your friends.
a) event b) success c) medal d) champion
7. If you study hard, you'll likely do well on the test. "Likely" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) impossible b) excellent c) possible d) ordinary
8. Our school has a chess every year. A lot of people want to enter.
a) pandemic b) champions c) race d) competition
9. A is a book or text about someone's life.
a) coronavirus b) spectator c) bubble d) biography
10. I felt really before the interview. I was very worried.
a) excellent b) creative c) calm d) anxious
11. A/An is software you can use on your computer or phone.
a) biography b) blog c) email d) app
12. We add the suffix "....." to the verb "organise" to get the noun for a person.
a) -or b) -er c) -ive d) -ous
13. Your father isn't inside the house. He is right now.
a) alone b) together c) outside d) indoors
14. A is a group of people who can meet during a health emergency.
a) competitor b) bubble c) winner d) spectator
15. My sister won a prize for writing an amazing
a) bubble b) poem c) centre d) ministry

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

concert – terrible – have – competition – has – interested

We need to have a hobby. I am (1) in music. I (2) played it since I was seven. I played at a (3) in Cairo Opera House. It was amazing. Nowadays, I like playing football. I have been to football matches many times. My team won the last (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hajar is sure that her team will be the of the final match, not the loser.
 a) winner b) passenger c) poster d) worker
 أسبوط ٢٠٢٢
- We add the prefix "....." to give the opposite of "possible".
 a) un- b) im- c) dis- d) ir-
 السبوس ٢٠٢٣
- My dream is to create an app to help children learn better. "Create" here is like
 a) use b) visit c) teach d) make
 المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
- Spectators enjoyed every minute of yesterday's game. "Spectators" here is near in meaning to "people the game."
 a) watching b) playing c) winning d) riding
 المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
- Egypt has held a big conference. The verb "held" here means ".....".
 a) built b) grown c) organised d) painted
 المنيا ٢٠٢٣
- Tarek was a/an of the concert. He asked important musicians to play at it. **WB**
 a) spectator b) player c) competitor d) organiser
- We can add the suffix "....." to make the adjective of the verb "create".
 a) -ist b) -ive c) -er d) -ian
 بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
- He lost everything he had, so he is a
 a) winner b) viewer c) loser d) spectator
 بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
- Our school has a staff of 30. "Staff" here means
 a) workers b) buildings c) classes d) subjects
 الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤
- We add the prefix "....." to the word "credible" to give the opposite.
 a) in- b) dis- c) mis- d) ir-
 بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ **Quiz** الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The Present Perfect with **already** and **yet**:

زمن المضارع التام مع **already** & **yet**

1 already

بالفعل

تستخدم في وسط جملة المضارع التام المثبتة بعد (have/has) أو آخر الجملة لتدل على أن الحدث قد تم فعلاً.

Subject فاعل + have/has + **already** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. • They **have already** visited the museum.

• Sara **has already** helped her mum.

Subject فاعل + have/has + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل + **already**

e.g. • They **have washed** the dishes **already**.

• Amir **has won** the competition **already**.

لاحظ



يمكن أن تأتي **already** في نهاية الجملة/السؤال لتفيد التأكيد أو التعجب من شيء ما.

e.g. • She **has played** in two concerts **already**!

• A: Have you **tidied** your room **already**? B: You are very clever!

2 yet

حتى الآن/بعد

تستخدم في آخر الجملة المنفية للمضارع التام وأيضاً آخر السؤال مع المضارع التام.

Subject فاعل + **haven't/hasn't** + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل + **yet.**

e.g. • We **haven't finished** our homework **yet**.

• My father **hasn't travelled** to another country **yet**.

Have/Has + subject فاعل + **past participle** التصريف الثالث للفعل + **yet?**

e.g. • **Has** she **played** a musical instrument **yet**?

• **Have** Huda and Rana **done** their homework **yet**?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

① I (have) found the lost keys yet.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود كلمة (yet) التي تأتي مع النفي.

② Amira (already/cook) the lunch.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has already cooked) لوجود كلمة already الدالة على المضارع التام.

③ Have your brothers studied their lessons (already)?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (yet) لأنها صيغة سؤال ولا تفيد التعجب من شيء ما.



▶ **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I have (yet) finished my homework, so now I can play.
2. The kids (have) cleaned their room yet.
3. Rami has already (reading), so he can choose another one.
4. (Did) Rami solved the puzzle yet?
5. I haven't finished my exams (already). أسبوع ٢٠٢٤
6. Have you eaten all your ice cream (yet)? That is quick!
7. Fatma and Esraa have already (watch) that film, so they want to watch a different one.
8. My uncle (have bought) a new car yet.
9. My friends and I (already/visited) that museum many times.
10. Have the guests (arrive) at the party yet?
11. The boy (already/buy) vegetables from the market alone. السبوت ٢٠٢٢
12. She has played in two concerts (yet). بنات سويف ٢٠٢٤
13. Rami is hungry because he (not/eat) lunch yet. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
14. Have you checked your email (just)?
15. She (learn) to ride a bike yet.
16. He has done his homework (yet).
17. Haytham (create) an app already. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣
18. My sister has already (play) the piano in two concerts. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
19. Nada (came) to the party yet. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
20. I (already/pack) my bags for the trip; I'm ready to go.



1. Speaking

التحدث عن البطولات الرياضية Talking about sports tournaments

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



Have you ever watched a sports tournament at a stadium or on the TV?
هل سبق لك أن شاهدت بطولة رياضية في الاستاد أو على شاشة التلفاز؟

Yes, I have watched one on the TV.

لقد شاهدت واحدة في التلفاز.



Did you enjoy it?

هل استمتعت بها؟

Yes, of course.

نعم بالطبع.



Have you ever been in a tournament or a competition (for sport, music, art, etc.)?
هل سبق لك أن اشتركت ببطولة أو منافسة رياضية أو موسيقية أو فنية؟

Yes, I have been in a football competition at school.

نعم، لقد اشتركت بمسابقة رياضية بالمدرسة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

Nada asks Sarah if she took part in sports competitions.

Nada : Hello, Sarah. What's your favourite sport?

Sarah : Hi, Nada. (1).....

Nada : (2).....?

Sarah : Yes, I took part in a tournament when I was at school.

Nada : (3).....?

Sarah : I entered Women's Football competition.

Nada : Have you won before?

Sarah : (4)..... We have won the Cup.

Nada : Why don't you practise it now?

Sarah : (5).....



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة مقرة بشكل جيد.



1. How to write a review of a tournament or a competition

كيفية كتابة تقييم عن بطولة أو مسابقة

Example

"The 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt"

I like handball very much. It is my favourite sport. I was so proud that the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship was held in Egypt. It was from the 13th to the 31st of January, 2021. It was also the third World Championship held in Africa, the second in Egypt. There were over 600 competitors from 32 countries. The 32 teams were divided into eight groups of four teams each. The medical team has worked for months to make the tournament safe. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside a bubble. Every team has had a doctor to work with them. We were all very proud.

2. How to write a biography of a famous sportsman

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن رياضي مشهور

Example

"A biography of a famous sports person"

Ali Ahmed Mahmoud Ali Khalafalla is an Egyptian Olympic swimmer. He was born in Cairo. He was born on 13th May, 1996. Now he is 28 years old. He started swimming at the age of six. Like any other successful person, Ali Khalafalla worked very hard to be successful in his life. He spends a lot of time on developing his skills. He studied in the USA for three years. He went to Rio Olympics in 2016. After breaking the Egyptian record that stood strong for 25 years, he set a new Egyptian record in California in 2017. He was the fastest swimmer in Egyptian history in 2018. He swam at the Tokyo Olympics in 2021.



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

app – volunteer – yet – already – technology – encourage

Anas wants to be a computer programmer. He thinks that education is the best way to improve any community. He is ready to (1) to teach children writing. He wants to work in a (2) company and creates an (3) that helps children learn. He wants to visit other countries, but he hasn't been to any ones (4)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

المشكلة ٢٠٢٤

A lot of people admire famous persons such as scientists, film stars, sportsmen and writers. They love them and consider them role models, and often try to follow them. However, there are other heroes in our life. **They** may be less famous, but they play important roles in supporting their communities and providing a better life. We should respect every active farmer who works hard from sunrise to sunset to grow our food, the brave soldier who is ready to die for his country, the clever doctor who works day and night to fight diseases and helps sick people to become well in the future and the good citizen who does social and voluntary work. All of these are good examples of the real heroes, who should get much love and respect.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
 a) clever doctors b) active farmers
 c) honest teachers d) real heroes
- help their students to have a better life.
 a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Soldiers
- We should always the heroes in our life.
 a) forget b) respect
 c) dislike d) hat

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined word "**They**" refer to?
- Why should we respect soldiers?
- Who is your role model in life?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A person is good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something. الجيرة ٢٠٢٢
 a) creative b) volunteer c) musician d) player
2. A/An is a book or text about someone's life. دمج القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
 a) archaeology b) geology c) review d) biography
3. You can go to the centre if you have a headache.
 a) schoolwork b) youth c) success d) health
4. He was a great champion. The antonym of "champion" is " ". بنى سوفى ٢٠٢٤
 a) player b) winner c) beginner d) loser
5. We add the prefix "in-" to give the of the adjective "credible". البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
 a) verb b) adverb c) meaning d) opposite
6. "....." is the opposite of the word "nervous".
 a) Quiet b) Nervous c) Worried d) Credible

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nada (not/visited) the Pyramids yet. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. I've had lunch (yet), but I'll join you for coffee.
3. Haytham hasn't created any apps (already). السويس ٢٠٢٤
4. They have already (study) for the exam.
5. (she/meet) her new neighbour yet?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A short story of a famous sportsman"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nader wonders why Aya (answer) his letters yet.
2. Mahdy (work) here for two years. He works at another company now.
3. I (see) two police cars this morning (it's still morning).

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

connect (ed) (v)	يربط/يوصل	scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
culture (n)	ثقافة	score (n)	نتيجة/سجل النقاط
driving test (n)	اختبار قيادة	society (n)	مجتمع
perform (ed) (v)	يؤدي	STEM	ستيم (مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا)
recycled (adj)	معاد تدويره	used (adj)	مستخدم/مستعمل

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

as well as	بالإضافة إلى/أيضاً	natural (adj)	طبيعي
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	Polish (adj)	بولندي
believe (d) (v)	يصدق/يعتقد	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	swimmer (n)	سباح
hero (n)	بطل	teenager (n)	مراهق

Check Point

Choose and complete: **society – returned – performed – score**

- Last week, I a role in the school play.
- My father late from work yesterday.
- Kady got an excellent in her spelling test.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
dirty (adj)	قذر/غير نظيف	polluted	ملوث	clean	نظيف
international (adj)	دولي	global/worldwide	عالمي	national/local	قومي/محلي
result (n)	نتيجة	outcome	نتيجة	cause	سبب
repair (v)	يصلح	mend/fix	يصلح	damage/smash	يحطم

Language Expressions

come	> first/second	يحتل المركز الأول/الثاني	find/have	> a scholarship	يجد منحة دراسية
do	> an exam	يؤدي الامتحان	follow	> dreams	يتبع الأحلام
	> well	يؤدي جيدًا	solve	> a problem	يحل مشكلة
	> a scholarship	يحصل على منحة	win	> fourth place	يفوز بالمركز الرابع
get	> a score	يحصل على الدرجة	write	> piano music	يؤلف موسيقى البيانو
	> dressed	يرتدي/لبس			

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

at a top university	في جامعة مرموقة	respond to	يرد على
connect with	يربط/يوصل بـ	surprised by	مندعش بواسطة/بـ
look after	يعتني بـ	work on a project	يعمل في مشروع

حروف الجر

Choose and complete:

- Last week, my team first in the football tournament.
- I was surprised a big birthday party with all my friends!
- The result of my exam was fantastic. The antonym of "result" is ".....".

cause - came - for - by

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
لل كلمات ومرادفها
وعكسها والتعابير
واللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

Definitions

scholarship	منحة دراسية	money that a university or school gives to someone to pay for their education
STEM	(ستيم) مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا	Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School

التعريفات

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	-al		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		natural (adj)	طبيعي
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		pollution (n)	تلوث
swim (v)	يسبح	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		swimmer (n)	سباح
dirt (n)	قذارة	-y		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		dirty (adj)	قذر

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة

inter-

Word

الكلمة

national (adj) قومي/وطني

The new word الكلمة الجديدة

international (adj)

دولي

Study these places

Canada

دولة كندا

Columbia University

جامعة كولومبيا

Italy

إيطاليا

Society for Science

جمعية العلوم

Switzerland

سويسرا

Tokyo

طوكيو

قم بدراسة هذه الأماكن

Language Notes

1 Exclamation

How + adj. الصفة! / What + (a/an) + adj. الاسم + الصفة + noun

صيغة التعجب

• How amazing!

• What an amazing achievement!

2 Find a way for + شخص + to + inf.

• Fatma El-Banna found a natural way for villagers to clean dirty water.

وجد طريقة لـ

3 born in/ born into

(be) born in + سنة/شهر

• My father was born in 1980.

(be) born into + عائلة

• My mother was born into a big family.

وُلد في

Check Point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 delicious! This ice cream is the best I've ever tasted.

a) Which

b) Who

c) How

d) What

2 Can you find a way for Basma how to drive?

a) to learn

b) to learning

c) learn

d) learning

3 Mr Mesbah was born Dakahlia in 1986.

a) on

b) into

c) for

d) in

4 Dareen was born a great family in Alexandria.

a) in

b) on

c) into

d) for

B Reading & Listening Skills



Lesson 5

Pre-listening question: - What do you usually do before Exams?

SB page 51



Listen to Fareeda. What is the good news she is telling her friend, Malak?

Malak Hi, Fareeda!

Fareeda Hi, Malak, guess what? I just got the **results**⁽¹⁾ of my music **exam**⁽²⁾!

Malak Yes? How did you do?!

Fareeda I passed!

Malak Of course, you did! Well done! Great job!

Fareeda But also, I got the highest score in the class!

Malak Wow, you did really well - what an amazing **achievement**⁽³⁾!

Fareeda I can't **believe**⁽⁴⁾ it, I was so **nervous**⁽⁵⁾ doing the exam.

Malak I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked really hard.

Fareeda Thanks, Malak.

(1) نتائج

(2) اختبار

(3) إنجاز

(4) يصدق

(5) عصبى/متوتر

Post-listening questions:

1 How did Fareeda do at the music exam?

2 Do you think Fareeda was happy?

Lesson 5

WB page 106



Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

Mother You look happy, Nader.

Nader I am! I've won a short story competition!

Mother Well done! Was that a competition at your school?

Nader No, it was a short story competition for everyone.

Mother For everyone? What an amazing achievement.

Didn't you win the school competition last year?

Nader Yes, I came second in the class, so I worked harder this year!

Mother I knew you would do well. You worked really hard.

Nader Thanks. I'll get the award next week.

Mother I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch!



Post-listening question:

- When will Nader get the award?

Young role models

Pre-reading question: - Do you have a hero? Who is he/she?

Lesson 6
Put these sentences from a biography about Nada Zaher in the correct order.

SB page 52

- (1) Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt.
- (2) As a child, she played a lot of tennis.
- (3) When she was a **teenager**⁽¹⁾, she found out that she had a sports **scholarship**⁽²⁾ to go to **Columbia University**⁽³⁾ in the USA.
- (4) Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis.
- (5) After university, she returned to Egypt and decided to help more international **athletes**⁽⁴⁾ to study in other countries.
- (6) Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow their **dreams**⁽⁵⁾.
- (7) So, she started a company to connect athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships.



- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| (1) مرافق | (2) منحة دراسية |
| (3) جامعة كولومبيا | (4) رياضيون |
| (5) أحلام | |

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Where is Nada from?
- 2 Why did Nada go to the USA?

Lesson 5
Read the email from your friend. Write a reply in your notebook.

WB page 106

Hi!

I've got some good news. I've won an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital decided to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it?



Pre-reading question: - In your opinion, how can we save water?

Complete the biography with these time expressions.

Lesson 6

WB page 107

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. **As** a **child**, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great **scientist**⁽¹⁾. **After** she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, **Technology**⁽²⁾, **Engineering**⁽³⁾ and Maths school (STEM) in Alexandria. She **then** learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the **environment**⁽⁴⁾ and Egypt's **culture**⁽⁵⁾. **When she was** at school, she came first in Egypt in the **NASA International Space Apps Challenge**⁽⁶⁾, a problem solving competition for scientists around the world.



Later, she worked on a school project. She found a **natural**⁽⁷⁾ way for villages to clean dirty water and to recycle used water. The recycled water is used to help plants to grow, and the project can also help to stop **water pollution**⁽⁸⁾. She sent her project to the **Society for Science**⁽⁹⁾ in the USA. **In** 2021, her project won fourth place in another international competition for science and engineering.

Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

(1) عالم

(2) تكنولوجيا

(3) هندسة

(4) البيئة

(5) ثقافة

(6) تحدى التطبيقات الفضائية الدولية لناسا

(7) طبيعي

(8) تلوث الماء

(9) جمعية العلوم

Post-reading questions:

- What does the word "STEM" stand for?
- How can we use recycled water?

Complete the dialogue with these words. Then listen and check your answers.

Lesson 7

SB page 53

Fares Guess what? I have good **news**!

Mazen What is it?

Fares I have got a **scholarship** to a university in Canada!

Mazen Well **done**! That's incredible.

Fares Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazen I'm really **happy** for you. You will play at an important **tournament** soon!



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

السويس ٢٠٢٣

loved – were – was – finished – scientist – has loved

Fatma El-Banna (1)..... born in Alexandria in 2003. When she was a child, she (2)..... learning about science. She wanted to be a great (3)..... She (4)..... preparatory school. She worked on a school project. She found a natural way for villagers to clean dirty water and recycle used water.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Animals like to live in their nature homes. To correct the underlined word, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -ed c) -ing d) -ive
- People from different countries often come together for events.
a) natural b) local c) international d) national
- A/An is someone who has done something good and is liked by a lot of people.
a) hero b) adult c) applicant d) worker
- He is a good He entered the Olympics Games many times.
a) scholarship b) company c) cause d) athlete
- My friend said that he had won a million pounds, but I couldn't him.
a) guess b) believe c) repair d) connect
- Most young people want to a scholarship for the USA.
a) stay b) make c) give d) find
- Tamer repaired my bike. The antonym of "repair" is ".....".
a) mend b) fix c) damage d) renew
- He worked hard to pass his exams. The synonym of the word "pass" is ".....".
a) fail b) embarrass c) disappoint d) succeed in
- I have already passed my test; now I'm allowed to drive a car legally.
a) diving b) driving c) swimming d) running
- Unfortunately, the company didn't to my request; I didn't receive a reply.
a) receive b) send c) talk d) respond

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Longman

Longman



Speaking

Responding to good news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة

- Well done!

- أحسنت!

- Great news!

- أخبار عظيمة!

- That's incredible.

- هذا لا يصدق.

- Great job. Well done!

- أداء عظيم. أحسنت!

- I knew you would do well.

- كنت أعلم أنك ستؤدي جيداً.

- You did really well.

- لقد أديت بشكل جيد حقاً.

- What an amazing achievement!

- يا له من إنجاز رائع!

- I'm really happy for you.

- أنا حقاً سعيد من أجلك.

- You worked really hard.

- لقد عملت بجد حقاً.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

الدفعلية ٢٠٢٣

Finish the following dialogue:

Ali went to Cairo to buy a new car.

Sami : Hello, Ali. I didn't see you yesterday.

Ali : Hello, Sami. (1).....

Sami : (2).....?

Ali : I went to Cairo to buy a new car.

Sami : A new car! Did you find a good car?

(3)....., I bought a red one.

(4).....! I'm really happy for you.

: Thanks a lot for your feelings.

(5).....?

£ 750,000 pounds.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mera is very happy as she won the spelling competition.

Mera : Merna, guess what? I won the spelling competition at school!

Merna : Really? (1).....!

Mera : Thank you, Merna.

Merna : (2).....?

Mera : That was yesterday.

Merna : Have you won this competition before?

Mera : (3)..... . It's the first time. I'll get an award.

Merna : (4).....?

Mera : I'll get the award next Sunday.

Merna : (5).....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

has – have – award – scholarship – contests – competition

Youssef Hany Mohamed from Khedive Secondary School got an (1)..... for his invention of a robot that helps locate people. He won first place in an international research and invention (2)..... in South Korea. Youssef (3)..... joined many international (4)..... and won a special prize from Taiwan.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organisation to help pay for their education.
a) result b) culture c) score d) scholarship
- A is the marks that you get when you do a test.
a) university b) cause c) result d) hero
- My father is a role model for everyone who wants to achieve great things. He's my
a) hero b) champion c) athlete d) swimmer
- You should have many skills that help you your problems.
a) do b) solve c) make d) create

5. We should drink clean water. The adjective "clean" is an antonym of ".....".

- a) nice b) clear c) pure d) dirty

6. To form the noun of "pollute", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -ed b) -ion c) -tion d) -ition

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We have (yet) eaten dinner, so now we can have dessert.
2. She (has learned) how to swim yet.
3. Has your brother returned the library books (already)?
4. (the plane/ land) yet?
5. Engineers have (yet) designed the bridge, but we haven't finished it yet.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A biography of an Egyptian student who won an international award"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. mobile phones are cheaper.
a) Use b) Using c) Used d) User
2. water is a good way to save water.
a) Recycle b) Recycling c) Recycled d) Recycler
3. I came in the race; I won the silver medal.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

Ali

SamTION SURVEY

Ali

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

SamT : (

1 Speaking 2 Reading Comprehension 3 Vocabulary 4 Language 5 Writing

Ali : It's

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Salma and Hala are talking about exam results and the summer holiday.

Salma : You seem worried, Hala. What's the matter?

Hala : (1).....

Salma : The exam results! (2).....?

Hala : I think we will get them tomorrow.

Salma : Oh. (3).....

Hala : Right, we finished exams on May 15th, and today is May 29th. I'm sure you will get high marks as usual.

Salma : (4).....

Hala : (5).....?

Salma : I intend to spend the summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh.

Hala : Luckily, our family decided to go there, too.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A: made – done – since – for – civilisation – equinox الاعتدال الصيفي

The ancient scientists were keen on the study of the universe. Space has interested Egyptians (1)..... thousands of years. They were the first (2)..... to study the stars and the planets. They have (3)..... some important discoveries. For example, they first discovered the (4)....., which happens in March and September every year.

B: problems – activities – have come – are coming – wonders – experience

Tourism is very important. Tourists (1)..... to Egypt for hundreds of years. They like to see the (2)..... of the Ancient Egyptians. Also, they prefer to (3)..... the wonderful natural world, such as the desert and the Red Sea, where they can do different (4).....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a person who is trained to travel in a spacecraft.

- a) cyclist b) scientist c) astronaut d) engineer

2. She did well in the exam; she it easily.

- a) posted b) passed c) possessed d) praised

3. The 2021 World Men's Handball was held successfully in Egypt.

- a) Championship b) Champion c) Challenge d) Charge

4. Gamal could solve the difficult sum. This means he out that sum.
 a) put b) found c) worked d) looked
5. A computer writes, modifies and tests codes that allow computer software and applications to work properly.
 a) seller b) buyer
 c) programmer d) programming
6. Don't make the same mistake again. "The same" is opposite in meaning to ".....".
 a) different b) difficult c) suitable d) old
7. A is a person who plays a musical instrument.
 a) musical b) musician c) music d) musically
8. It isn't possible to reach the station on time; it's because you're too late.
 a) dishonest b) unimportant c) impossible d) incorrect
9. The scientist won a/an for his contributions إسهامات to helping humanity إنسانية.
 a) present b) award c) money d) ward
10. I can't believe what has happened; it's
 a) possible b) believable c) incredible d) credible

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hatim returned from the United States (since) 2020.
2. Tamer has just (arriving); you can come and see him.
3. Don't worry; I have (never) brought you the money you need.
4. I (won't do) my homework yet.
5. (does she clean) the house yet?
6. (Has) she hit your car by mistake last night?
7. They (will come) on time, haven't they?
8. I visited London in 2010. This means that I (not/visit) London since 2010.
9. A month ago, we (be) in our village.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

المناقشة ٢٠٢٤

Shady is talking with his friend Amir about a prize medal.

Shady : What's in your hand, Amir?

Amir : It's a medal. I got it as a prize.

Shady : (1).....?

Amir : I got it for writing the best story this year.

Shady : (2).....?

Amir : The story is about successful people and how they think and work.

Shady : How long did it take you to write this story?

Amir : (3)..... . Would you like to read it?

Shady : (4)..... . How do you get the ideas for your stories?

Amir : (5)..... . There, you can find a lot of useful websites.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

championship – tournament – used – competitors – losers – are using

The 2021 World Men's Handball (1)..... was held in Egypt in January 2021. There were over 600 (2)..... from 32 countries. The 32 teams were divided into eight groups of four teams each. The medical team has worked for months to make the (3)..... safe. Players and people working at the tournament (4)..... four hotels and stayed inside a bubble.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٤

Magdy Abdel Sayed is a campaigner for people who are disabled. He has been disabled all his life. He has done lots of amazing things, yet he has had lots of **challenges**. When he was a child, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people. Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good education too. They found a school for him afterwards and he was an excellent student. Although he faced so many **challenges**, he never stopped trying. He always believed that having

difficulties does not mean you cannot reach your goals. He won an award from Cambridge University.

He also believed in helping people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for charities. Now he works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title for the text is ".....".
 a) The Disabled and Challenges
 b) The Disabled and Universities
 c) The Disabled and Charities
 d) The Disabled and Equipment
- The word "**challenges**" in the passage is close in meaning to
 a) parents
 b) years
 c) difficulties
 d) awards
- Magdy wanted to help other people. As a result, he works as a
 a) teacher
 b) volunteer
 c) professor
 d) doctor

B) Answer the following questions:

- Infer how Magdy's parents were good.

- In two sentences summarise the second paragraph in your own words.

- If you worked for a charity, what would you do?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An is a person who takes part in organised activities that are intended to change something in society.
 a) soft engineer
 b) campaigner
 c) officer
 d) judge
- A is a person who plays a musical instrument.
 a) musical
 b) musician
 c) music
 d) musically
- A: Look! I've finished my painting! B: Great Well done!
 a) job
 b) help
 c) sport
 d) business
- Her project won fourth place in another international competition for science and
 a) engineers
 b) school
 c) engineering
 d) society

Longman

Longman

WB

WB

5. Hatim usually cycles to school. To change "cycle" into a verb giving the meaning of converting waste into reusable material, we add the prefix ".....".

a) il- c) re- d) un-

Longman

6. The synonym of "enter" is ".....".
- a) look after b) take part c) care for d) give up
- Answer with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.**
1. The film (finish) yet! It ends at nine o'clock.
 2. Why did he (come) late yesterday?
 3. The boy (already/buy) vegetables from the market alone.
 4. I (finish) my homework yet.
 5. My friend Aya has always (love) writing stories and poems.

1. The film (finish) yet. It's still on.
2. Why did he (come) late yesterday?
3. She (already/buy) vegetables.

1. The film (come) late yesterday!
2. Why did he (already/buy) vegetables from the market alone.
3. The boy (finish) my homework yet.

4. I (finish) my homework yet.

4. I (finish) my homework yet.
5. My friend Aya has always (love) writing stories and poems.

D

Writing

6 Write **ONE HUNDRED** and **TEN (110)** words on:

"A biography of your role model"

"A biography of your role"

Handwriting practice lines on a page.

QUESTION SURVEY

Question Tackles Mark	1 Speaking	2 & 3 Reading Comprehension	4 Vocabulary	5 Language	6 Writing
-----------------------	------------	-----------------------------	--------------	------------	-----------

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Zein and Zaher are talking about sports.

Zein : Have you ever been in a tournament or a competition?

Zaher: (1).....

a) I've ever been in a competition.

b) Yes, I've been in a competition.

c) No, I've been in a competition.

d) I've never been in a competition.

Zein : (2).....

a) When have you been in?

b) How long have you been in?

c) How have you been in?

d) Which one have you been in?

Zaher : I have been in a football competition at school.

Zein : (3).....

a) Who won it?

b) Did you win it?

c) Have you won it?

d) How did you win it?

Zaher: Our team won the cup.

Zein : Did you enjoy the competition?

Zaher: (4).....

a) No, I don't.

b) Yes, I do.

c) Yes, I did.

d) No, I haven't.

Zein : Have you ever watched a sports tournament at a stadium?

Zaher: (5)..... I have only watched one on TV.

a) No, I don't.

b) Yes, I have.

c) Yes, I am.

d) No, I am not.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. The chef has (yet) cooked the special dish for tonight's menu.

a) ever

b) for

c) since

d) already

2. I (finish) reading the book yet; it's quite long.

a) haven't finished

b) have finished

c) finished

d) didn't finish

3. Noha (already) received the award for her performance in the play.

a) already has

b) has already

c) already have

d) have already

4. I haven't seen that new film (already).

a) for

b) already

c) yet

d) never

5. Have they fixed the car (already), or is it still in the garage?

a) yet

b) ever

c) never

d) since

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Unit 6

WHAT'S WRONG?



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| Reading | An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem |
| Writing | A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues |
| Listening | A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems |
| Speaking | Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems |
| Language | had to/didn't have to, was/wasn't able to, could/couldn't |
| Life Skills | Empathy |



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

abilities (n)	قدرات	negative (adj)	سلبي
anxious (adj)	قلق/مهموم	positive (adj)	إيجابي
appearance (n)	مظهر (خارجي)	report (ed) (v/n)	يبلغ عن/تقرير
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	secret (n/adj)	سر/سري
behaviour (n)	سلوك	social life (n)	الحياة الاجتماعية
billion (n)	مليار	sort (n)	نوع
cyberbully (yied) (v)	يتنمر إلكترونياً	spread (v)	ينتشر/ينشر
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	support (ed) (v)	يدعم
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج	teen (adj/n)	في سن المراهقة/مراهق
lonely (adj)	وحيد/منعزل	understanding (n/adj)	التفاهم/متفاهم
mental health (n)	الصحة النفسية/العقلية	upset (adj)	منزعج

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

British (adj/n)	بريطاني	importance (n)	أهمية
completely (adv)	تماماً/بالكامل	on the other hand	ومن ناحية أخرى
disappoint (ed) (v)	يُحبط/يُخيب أمل	PE (physical education)	التربية البدنية
even if	حتى لو	scary (adj)	مخيف
experience (d) (v/n)	يجرب/تجربة/خبرة	science subjects (n)	المواد العلمية
height (n)	الطول/الارتفاع	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة

Choose and complete: behaviour – height – Social – importance

- 1 Having good on the school bus means sitting calmly and listening to the bus driver.
- 2 life is important because it allows us to make friends and enjoy time with others.
- 3 The of the mountain is so high that it reaches the clouds.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
common (adj)	شائع/منتشر	popular	شائع	uncommon	غير شائع
embarrassed (adj)	مُحْرَج	ashamed	خجلان	proud	فخور
necessary (adj)	ضروري	essential	ضروري	unnecessary	غير ضروري
online (adj)	عبر الإنترنت	connected	متصل	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
support (v)	يدعم	encourage	يشجع	discourage	يحيط
terrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب	horrible	فظيع/رهيب	beautiful	جميل
upset (adj)	منزعج	annoyed/worried	منزعج	happy	سعيد
scared (adj)	خائف	frightened	خائف	brave	شجاع
cyberbully (v)	يتنمر	annoy	يضايق	support/encourage	يدعم/يشجع

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do > badly	يؤدي بشكل سيئ	keep > secrets	يحفظ الأسرار
get > bullied	يتعرض للتنمر	say > unkind things	يقول أشياء غير لطيفة
have > a haircut	يقص شعره	show > understanding	يظهر التفاهم

Prepositions

حروف الجر

anxious about	قلق بشأن	laugh at	يسخر من
belong to	ينتمي لـ/يخص لـ	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
embarrassed about	محرج بسبب	unkind to	غير عطوف مع
go back to	يعود إلى	with similar interests	باهتمامات متشابهة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
spend	spent	spent
get up	got up	got up

Check Point

Choose and complete: about - have - spend - at - brave

- I'm going to a haircut tomorrow, so I can have a fresh new look.
- I intend to the summer holiday in Hurgada.
- Leila felt embarrassed wearing the wrong shirt to school.
- Don't be scared of trying new things. The antonym of "scared" is ".....".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.



Definitions

التعريفات

anxious قلق/مهموم	worried that something bad might happen
billion مليار	one thousand million (1,000,000,000)
appearance مظهر خارجي	the way that someone or something looks
cyberbully يتنمر إلكترونياً	say unkind or cruel ⁽¹⁾ things about someone online
cyberbullying التنمر الإلكتروني	when you say unkind or cruel things about someone online
embarrassed مُحرج	feeling uncomfortable when people are watching you or after they have seen you do something that you think is wrong or not very good
lonely وحيد/منعزل	unhappy because you are not with other people/ having no friends with you
mental health الصحة النفسية/العقلية	the health of your mind ⁽²⁾ ; how happy you are
negative سلبي	seeing only bad things
positive إيجابي	seeing only good things
secret سر	something that you do not want other people to know
social life الحياة الاجتماعية	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people
support يساعد/يدعم/يؤيد	help and encourage ⁽³⁾ someone
understanding التفاهم	showing that you understand a person's feelings and situation
upset منزعج	unhappy because something bad has happened

قاس (1)

عقل (2)

يشجع (3)

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v) يظهر	-ance	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	appear ance (n) مظهر (خارجي)
cyberbully (v) يتنمر إلكترونياً	-ing	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم/صفة	cyberbully ing (n) التنمر الإلكتروني
understand (v) يفهم	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	understand ing (n/adj) التفاهم/متفاهم
complete (adj) تماماً/بالكامل	-er	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم فاعل	complet ely (adv) تماماً/بالكامل
teenage (adj) سن المراهقة			teenag er (n) مرافق

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Word الكلمة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
en-	courage (n)	تحويل الاسم إلى فعل	encourage (v) يشجع

Language Notes

1 spend + time + v + ing

يقضي وقتاً

- My advice is to **spend** your free time **doing** something useful.

2 alone (adj)

بمفرده (أي شخص واحد فقط)

lonely (adj)

وحيد/منعزل (أي شعور بالوحدة حتى لو كان في مجموعة)

- After my family travelled, I lived **alone** in the house.
- Although I live with my family, I feel **lonely**.

3 someone/everyone/anyone/no one/somebody/everybody/anybody/nobody

هذه الكلمات تأتي معها فعل مفرد وعند التعويض عنها بضمير تأخذ ضمير جمع

- A:** There is **someone** at the door. **B:** Oh, I know **them**. Open the door.

4 feel/get + adj.

يشعر بـ

- You shouldn't **feel bad** about being tall.
- For me, exams are a problem. I **get** very **anxious** about them.

5 hundred/thousand/million/billion

هذه الكلمات لا يمكن جمعها إذا سبقت بأى رقم، ولكن يمكن جمعها إذا لم تسبق بأى أرقام

- About 18 **million** people live in Cairo.
- Thousands** of people gathered to see the show.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Somebody waiting at the bus stop for their friend.

a) have b) has c) is d) are

- 2 Yesterday, I spent the afternoon with my friends at the park.

a) playing b) to play c) played d) plays

- 3 I feel when I play with my toys. I like them most.

a) not happy b) unhappy c) happily d) happy

- 4 Mum and dad say I can stay home while they go to work.

a) lonely b) alone c) one d) first

- 5 There are about 50 spectators at the stadium at the moment.

a) thousands b) millions c) thousand d) billions

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 1

Pre-listening question: - What problems do you face at school?

Listen to Hisham and Kamal talking about the website on page 54.

What problems do they talk about?

SB page 55

Hisham I agree that most of these are **common**⁽¹⁾ problems for **teenagers**⁽²⁾. Most of us aren't completely happy with our **appearance**⁽³⁾. I'm **embarrassed**⁽⁴⁾ about being so tall, for example.

Kamal You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a **positive**⁽⁵⁾ thing! For me, exams are a problem. I get very **anxious**⁽⁶⁾ about them.

Hisham I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at me in PE.

Kamal **Cyberbullying**⁽⁷⁾ is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced it.

Hisham Yes, that is really **scary**⁽⁸⁾. For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really **upset**⁽⁹⁾.

Kamal What did she do?

Hisham She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

Kamal It's good that she talked to someone about it.

Hisham That's right.



(1) شائع / منتشر

(2) مراهقون

(3) مظهر

(4) مُحَرَج

(5) إيجابى

(6) قلق

(7) التنمر الإلكتروني

(8) مخيف

(9) منزعج


Post-listening questions:

1 Have you ever experienced cyberbullying? What did you do?

2 Infer the teenage problems from the previous text.

Pre-reading question:

- Are you interested in social media? Why/Why not?

 **Read the text. What are the positive and negative things it says about social media?**

SB page 55

Today, nearly four **billion**⁽¹⁾ people use **social media**⁽²⁾ in their daily lives. Some studies have found that around 63% of people report feeling **upset**⁽³⁾ and **anxious**⁽⁴⁾ after using social media. On the other hand, social media can be helpful because we can share **experiences**⁽⁵⁾ and **support**⁽⁶⁾ each other. People can **spread**⁽⁷⁾ positive messages this way about the importance of looking after our **mental health**⁽⁸⁾.



(1) مليار

(2) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

(3) منزعج

(4) قلق

(5) خبرات


(6) يدعم

(7) ينشر

(8) الصحة النفسية

Pre-reading question: - What are the problems you worry about?

Lesson 1

 **Read and match the situations 1–5 with what the teenagers worry about**

WB page 109

a–e.

a) achievements

b) appearance

c) cyberbullying

d) skills and abilities

e) social life

(1) **b** I had a **haircut**⁽¹⁾ last week and I think it is terrible! I'm **embarrassed**⁽²⁾ to go out and see my friends!

(1) قصة شعر

(2) مُحَرَجٌ

(2) **e** All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.

(3) ينضم/يلتحق بـ

(4) مسابقات

(3) **c** Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class unkind messages on social media. I'm worried that I will start receiving them, too.

(4) **d** I've tried to **join**⁽³⁾ an art club, a language club and a music club, but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest. I'm just not good at these things!

(5) **a** My sister is 18 and she has won lots of **competitions**⁽⁴⁾ and done really well in her exams. I don't think I will ever be as good as her!

- Who is the person you always tell him/her your secrets? Why do you prefer to tell this one and not another one?

 Read the texts quickly and answer the questions.

SB page 56

Teen problems

- (1) Nobody knows that I failed my English speaking test, and I feel very **embarrassed**⁽¹⁾ about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, 'Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a **secret**⁽²⁾'. The next day, my friend's mother, who is British, offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.



(1) مُحْجَر

(2) سر

(3) وحيداً

(4) يخيب ظن

Magda

- (2) I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree, and I feel that I am very different from them. It makes me feel **lonely**⁽³⁾.


Salma

- (3) My parents want me to be a doctor when I finish school. A doctor has to be good at science subjects, however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to **disappoint**⁽⁴⁾ them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

Adam

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What problem was Magda embarrassed about?
.....
- 2 Why does Salma think her friends are different to her?
.....
- 3 Do you think Adam wants to be a doctor? Why?
.....

 Read and match these answers a–c to the people who have the problems in Exercise 1. Do you think this is good advice? Why?

SB page 57

- (b) 1 Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets. However, you don't have to see this as a **negative**⁽¹⁾ thing since she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer?



(1) سلبى

- (c) 2 How about joining a club to meet people with **similar** **interests**⁽²⁾? You don't have to **belong to**⁽³⁾ only one group of friends.

(2) اهتمامات متشابهة

(3) ينتمى إلى

- (a) 3 You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding than you think.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 From your point of view, what is a real friend?
.....
- 2 Why do you think teenagers shouldn't belong to only one group of friends?
.....
- 3 Do you think it's correct to tell your parents about everything you feel?
.....

Comprehension Skills

"Guessing the meaning of a vocabulary"

مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة فى النص

تعتبر مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة فى النص من المهارات التى قد تختبرها قطعة الفهم وتعتمد على فهم معنى الكلمة من خلال السياق.

"Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret."

- The underlined word "secret" means things people know.

a) must

b) should

c) mustn't

d) can



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To be is to see only bad things.
a) upset b) lonely c) negative d) positive
- Renad tried her best not to her parents with her school grades.
a) disappoint b) report c) avoid d) spread
- It is necessary to eat fruits and vegetables. To get the opposite of "necessary", add the prefix ".....".
a) im- b) en- c) dis- d) un-
- A is something that you do not want other people to know.
a) fact b) secret c) report d) file
- I had a terrible dream last night. The synonym of "terrible" is ".....".
a) horrible b) social c) happy d) beautiful
- The unkind text messages made her feel really
a) noisy b) ugly c) upset d) positive
- Teachers of English should their students to practise English inside and outside the class.
a) discourage b) provide c) hide d) encourage
- Blue jeans are a common type of pants that many people wear. They are very
a) uncommon b) popular c) scary d) embarrassed
- The of someone is the way that someone or something looks.
a) appearance b) understanding c) cyberbullying d) health
- When I fell in front of everyone, I felt embarrassed. The antonym of "embarrassed" is ".....".
a) common b) unnecessary c) ashamed d) proud
- I like to share my experiences on social
a) stop b) station c) media d) transport
- To form the verb of the noun "courage", we add ".....".
a) -ive b) un- c) en- d) -ous
- The health is the health of your mind; how happy you are.
a) social b) negative c) lonely d) mental
- Sometimes the internet has some negative effects. Negative is opposite in meaning to ".....".
a) positive b) common c) proud d) terrible
- To keep your room tidy, leaving toys and clothes on the floor.
a) spread b) disappoint c) avoid d) support

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

unsafe – then – bullying – safe – normal – than

It's (1) for teenagers to worry about things. Some common teenage problems are schoolwork, stress and (2) Treating every worry as a big problem can do more harm (3) good. If you do, your child might start to see the world as (4) and dangerous. Not all worries need professional help.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The antonym of the word "upset" is " ".
a) sad b) happy c) free d) angry
- She has no friends, so she always feels
a) lonely b) interesting c) tired d) exciting
- " " is the unkind things we say or write about someone online.
a) Texting b) Suggesting c) Thinking d) Cyberbullying
- The word has the same meaning of "encourage" and "help".
a) include b) support c) make d) remain
- The unkind text messages made her feel really
a) noisy b) ugly c) upset d) positive
- Some people are embarrassed about being so tall or so short. They should be positive. "Embarrassed" here means to feel
a) comfortable b) uncomfortable c) happy d) kind
- It is impolite to cyberbully people. The word "cyberbully" means
a) keep b) annoy c) protect d) encourage
- Eslam is connected to the internet. He's
a) offline b) online c) outline d) deadline
- We add the suffix " " to make the adjective from "understand".
a) -ing b) -ed c) -ful d) -ness
- My parents always me to get high marks.
a) introduce b) encourage c) provide d) protect

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Necessity in the present الضرورة في المضارع

1 have to/has to

يُضطر أن

- e.g. • I **have to** sleep early tonight.
• Sara **has to** help her mother today.

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use **"have to/has to"** when something is essential to do.
(When you have no choice.) and **"don't/doesn't have to"** when something is not essential to do.

- نستخدم (have to/has to) عندما يكون هناك شيء من الضروري القيام به. (أي أننا ليس لدينا اختيار).
وتستخدم (don't/doesn't have to) عندما يكون هناك شيء ليس من الضروري القيام به.

Form

التكوين

A) Affirmative

الإثبات

I/We/You/They/ جمع اسم + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • I **have to** wear my school uniform at school.
e.g. • Hend and her sister **have to** get up early to catch the train.

He/She/It/ مفرد اسم + has to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • She **has to** do her homework before going out.
e.g. • My father **has to** go to work at 7 am every day.

B) Negative

النفي

I/We/You/They/ جمع اسم + don't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • I **don't have to** get up on Friday. It's a holiday.
e.g. • My friends and I **don't have to** cross the street. We can use the bridge.

He/She/It/ مفرد اسم + doesn't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. • Rodina **doesn't have to** buy a new phone. She has a good one.
e.g. • He **doesn't have to** wear his uniform. It's a school trip.

A Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل)

Do + I/we/you/they/ اسم جمع + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. **A:** Do you **have to wear** the school uniform on a school trip?
B: No, I don't.

e.g. **A:** Do your brothers **have to speak** English in the classroom?
B: Yes, they do.

Does + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. **A:** Does Sara **have to get** up early on holidays?
B: Yes, she does.

e.g. **A:** Does he **have to do** his homework now?
B: No, he doesn't.

B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + do + I/we/you/they/ اسم جمع + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. **A:** What **do** you **have to do**? **B:** I **have to help** my mother.

e.g. **A:** When **do** you **have to go** to school? **B:** At 8 o'clock.

Q. Word + does + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. **A:** When **does** she **have to come**? **B:** She **has to come** up early.

e.g. **A:** What **does** Ali **have to do** now? **B:** He **has to do** his homework.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 All the students (has) to follow the school rules.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (have) لوجود to ولأن الجملة تعبر عن إلزام وفاعل الجملة اسم جمع.

2 What do you (has) to do when crossing the street?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (have) لوجود do التي يتبعها فعل في المصدر لأنه سؤال.

3 (Do) your cousin have to leave early?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لأنه سؤال وفاعل الجملة مفرد.

4 You (not/have) belong to only one group of friends.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't have to) لأن الجملة تعبر عن شيء ليس من الضروري فعله ولوجود الفاعل You.



► **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. My parents (has) to borrow some money to buy a new car.
2. Grandma (have to) take her medicine every day. She's very ill.
3. When does your sister (has to) practise the piano?
4. She (not/have to) clean her room today; that's a job for tomorrow.
5. (Does) you have to finish your homework before playing?
6. We (have) clean our teeth before bed.
7. (Is) your father have to go to work on Saturdays?
8. Does Ola (had to) clean the house?
9. Kamal can't go with you; he has to (studying) up tonight.
10. Tomorrow is a holiday. My children (not/have) get up early.
11. (Do) the doctor have to wear a uniform?
12. You (have to) worry about cooking dinner; I'll take care of it.
13. Suzy has to (wore) a helmet when riding her bike to stay safe.
14. We (has) feed the cat twice a day.
15. She (not/have) hurry. She is not late for school.
16. Ahmed has to (visited) the doctor. He's very ill.
17. You (not/have to) finish your homework now if you need a break.
18. Faten has to (waters) the plants to help them grow.
19. When (does) they have to type letters?
20. He (not/have) run. There's enough time.

e.g. Students **must follow** the school rules.

e.g. People **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use **"must/ mustn't"** to talk about things that are necessary/ unnecessary to do.

- نستخدم (must/mustn't) (يجب أن/ ألا) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي من الضروري فعلها أو من الممنوع فعلها.

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject فاعل + must + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. We **must listen** to our teachers carefully.

Negative

النفي

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You **mustn't park** your car here. It's not allowed.

لاحظ



We can use mustn't with:

يمكن استخدام (mustn't) مع الكلمات التالية:

it is forbidden / banned / not allowed / against the law / محظور / ممنوع / غير مسموح / ضد القانون

Question

السؤال

A Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل)

Must + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: **Must** we go now?

B: Yes, we must.

B: No, we mustn't.

B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + must + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: **What must** you do at the museum? B: We **must** follow rules.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We (must) feed the animals at the zoo. It's forbidden.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (mustn't) لوجود forbidden الدالة على المنع.

2 We must (respecting) our neighbours.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (respect) لوجود must التي يتبعها الفعل في المصدر.

3 should /shouldn't:

ينبغي أن/ينبغي ألا:

- e.g. We **should** visit our grandparents at the weekend.
People **shouldn't** tell lies.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "should/shouldn't" for advice or to talk about things that are or are not a good idea to do.

- تستخدم (shouldn't/should) (ينبغي أن/ينبغي ألا) للنصيحة أو للتحدث عن الأشياء التي فعلها أو عدم فعلها يعتبر فكرة جيدة.

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject فاعل + should + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. We **should** help poor people.

Negative

النفي

Subject فاعل + shouldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. You **shouldn't** say unkind things.

Question

السؤال

- A Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل)

Should + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- e.g. A: **Should** you have a rest? B: Yes, we should. B: No, we shouldn't.

- B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + should/shouldn't + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- e.g. A: **What should** you do at the library? B: We should be quiet.

4 might:

من المحتمل/ربما:

We use "might" to say that something is probable.

- تستخدم (might) (من المحتمل/ربما) لنقول إن شيئاً ما ممكن حدوثه أو ممكن عدم حدوثه.

- e.g. They **might** visit their grandparents on Friday.

Subject فاعل + might + inf. مصدر الفعل

- e.g. My father **might** buy a new car next year. I'm not sure.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Children (should) talk to people they don't know.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأن الجملة تدل على شيء لا ينبغي فعله.

- 2 We might (eats) popcorn at the zoo.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (eat) لوجود might التي يتبعها الفعل في المصدر.



► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. People who are on a diet (must) have chocolate.
2. You (should) eat too many sweets because they're not healthy.
3. Your favourite show might (is) on TV tonight, so don't forget to check.
4. You (must) see a star if you look up at the sky. I'm not sure.
5. You mustn't (touching) the hot stove.
6. We should (recycling) our empty bottles and cans to help the environment.
7. We (must) go to the zoo this weekend. We don't know.
8. Children (must) play with matches.
9. They might (going) to the beach this weekend if the weather is nice.
10. Should they (sharing) the crayons during art class?
11. You mustn't (running) near the swimming pool; you might fall.
12. What should we (does) if we are late?
13. You (must) park your car here. It's not allowed.
14. He (must) annoy his friends; it's impolite.
15. What must Ali (does) before going out?
16. Kids (should) stay up too late; a good night's sleep is important.
17. You (might to) learn something new if you read a book.
18. You mustn't (crossing) the street without looking both ways; it's dangerous.
19. Everyone should (being) kind to one another.
20. A: Must visitors follow the museum's rules during their visit?
B: Yes, they (mustn't).



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She (mustn't) go by bus. She could take a tram or a train, too. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. Friends should (keeping) each other's secrets. الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٣
3. Heba hurts her leg badly and she (have) to see a doctor. أسوان ٢٠٢٤
4. A scientist has to (did) researches to help people. الحيرة ٢٠٢٤
5. I (not/have) get up early tomorrow, because it is Friday! كمش الشيخ ٢٠٢٣
6. Adel and Samy have to (hurrying) to catch the train.
7. You (shouldn't) turn off the lights before going to bed.
8. You must (to read) quietly in the library. أزهر إسخندرية ٢٠٢٤
9. What do you (has) to do during the weekend? الحيرة ٢٠٢٣
10. Students (not/have) to stay in the class during lunch break.
11. You (must) tell anyone about your friend's secret. I advise you. السويس ٢٠٢٤
12. They might (being) more understanding than you think.
13. A doctor (mustn't) be good at science subjects. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
14. Does your sister have to (leaving) early?
15. You (should) say unkind things to people on social media.
16. You (has) to wear a heavy coat. It isn't very cold. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
17. Where does Maged (has to) go after school?
18. You (mustn't) come to my brother's birthday party; you will have a nice time.
19. You (mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
20. Primary school students (should) wear a uniform; it's obligatory.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Speaking

Discussing teenage worries and suggesting solutions to problems

مناقشة أمور مقلقة للمراهقين واقتراح حلول

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد

← online

I'm embarrassed about being so tall.

You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive thing!

For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious about them.

I guess we're all good at different subjects, and not so good at others.

أنا مُحَرَج من كونى طويلًا جدًا.

يجب ألا تشعر بالسوء تجاه طولك. إنه شيء إيجابي!

بالنسبة لى، الامتحانات هى مشكلتى. أشعر بالقلق الشديد تجاهها.

أعتقد أننا جميعًا جيّدون فى مواد مختلفة، ولسنا جيّدين فى مواد أخرى.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

▶ Renad is upset because she has got some bad messages.

Renad : I'm not feeling good.

Laila : You look a bit sad. What's wrong?

Renad : (1)..... It's making me feel embarrassed.

Laila : You shouldn't feel that. (2).....?

Renad : I think they're doing that because I made a mistake in class, and now they're making fun of me.

Laila : It's okay to make mistakes. Everyone does. (3).....?

Renad : No, I haven't told anyone about it.

Laila : (4).....

Renad : I'll tell my father. Thanks for your advice.

Laila : (5).....



2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about teenage problems

كيفية الكتابة عن مشاكل المراهقين

- What kinds of problems do teens have?
- How does social media affect their life?
- Who can give them help?
- Suggest solutions for their problems.

Writing tips

Your topic sentence should be around the topic mentioned or you will be off point.

يجب أن تكون جملةك الرئيسية حول الموضوع المذكور وإلا فستكون بعيدة عن الهدف.

Example

"Teenage problems"

Teenagers around the world have a lot of problems, and today I'd like to talk about bullying and its effects. Many people have terrible memories of school, because of the bullying they have experienced. It's important to keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying, and different solutions: Physical bullying is the most common form of bullying. Verbal bullying (التنمر اللفظي) is when someone insults and calls others names; he or she uses hurtful language to upset others. Emotional bullying is even more serious than verbal bullying. It's to try to get someone else to feel lonely and depressed. Cyberbullying is becoming a very serious problem for teens. This type of bullying uses messaging, mobile phone text messages and online social networks. We need to keep teens aware of such bullies and teach them how to ask for help.

Check Point

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Teenage worries"



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Finish the following dialogue:
Fatma and Samar are talking about using social media.

Fatma : Do you like using social media?

Samar : (1).....

Fatma : Why don't you like it?

Fatma : Why don't you like it? I'm worried.
Samar : (2)..... You should

Fatma : Why don't you I'm worried.
Samar : (2) You shouldn't read these messages.
Fatma : (3) ?

Fatma : (3) ?
Samar : (4) the positive message

Samar : (4)
Fatma : You should read the positive messages.
 (5)

Samar : Good idea! (5)..... ?

Fatma : You should eat ?
Samar : Good idea! (5)
Fatma : We can share experiences and information and support each other on social media.

Samar: Thank you for your advice.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

القلبية ٢٠٢٤

importance - physical - bullying - more - important - most

importance - physical - bullying - more - important

Teenagers around the world have a lot of problems. One of these problems is (1) which has a bad effect on teenagers. It's (2) to keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying. They are (3) , verbal, emotional bullying and cyberbullying. Physical bullying is the (4) common form of bullying. We need to keep the teenagers aware of such bullies and teach them how to ask for help.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
1. "....." is the health of your mind; how happy you are.
a) Social life b) Mental health
c) Mind health d) Understanding
 2. To feel is to feel uncomfortable when people are watching you.
a) mental b) pleased c) embarrassed d) positive
 3. "....." has the same meaning of "worried".
a) Important b) Interesting c) Anxious d) Quiet
 4. You should tell your parents if someone tries to you online.
a) cyberbully b) support c) encourage d) help

5. To get the opposite of "common", we add the prefix ".....".

a) im-

b) in-

c) dis-

d) un-

6. The antonym of "scared" is ".....".

a) essential

b) brave

c) negative

d) popular

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٤

1. She doesn't (has to) take the umbrella.

هنا ٢٠٢٤

2. You (must) smoke in hospitals.

3. The farmer (shouldn't) water his plants regularly so they can grow.

4. Your friend (should) come over to play with you. I guess that.

5. My father (not/have) go to work today because it's his day off.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of a problem you have"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think (should/I) look for a new job?

2. It's OK; you (mustn't) pay for it right now.

3. You (don't have to) use the swimming pool before 10.
It's forbidden.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question
Tackles
Mark

1
Speaking

2
Reading Comprehension

3
Vocabulary

4
Language

5
Writing



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك	mention (ed) (v)	يذكر/يشير
blog (n)	مدونة	message (n)	رسالة
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	mindfulness (n)	تركيز كامل للذهن
breathing (n)	عملية التنفس	practise (d) (v)	يتدرب على/يمارس
comment (ed) (n/v)	تعليق/يعلق	realise (d) (v)	يدرك
deeply (adv)	بعمق	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
include (d) (v)	يتضمن	review (n)	مقالة نقدية/نقد
joke (d) (v/n)	يمزح/نكتة	waterfall (n)	شلال
life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

apologise (d) (v)	يعتذر	locked (adj)	مقفل
brave (adj)	شجاع	mind (n)	عقل
certain (adj)	معين/متأكد	mistake (n)	خطأ
definition (n)	تعريف	next door	مجاور
dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	reader (n)	قارئ
engine (n)	محرك/موتور	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
face (d) (v)	يواجه	thoughts (n)	أفكار

Check Point

Choose and complete:

realised - comment - apologised - mistake

- 1 Don't forget to on your friend's drawing on his blog.
- 2 If you make a, don't be afraid to ask for help or try again.
- 3 I that I left my toy at the park and had to go back to get it.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
continue (v)	يستمر	go on	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
funny (adj)	مضحك	amusing	مسلى	unfunny/serious	جاد
happiness (n)	السعادة	joy/pleasure	الفرح/السرور	sadness	حزن
improve (v)	يحسن	develop	يطور	damage	يضر
luckily (adv)	لحسن الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unluckily/unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
popular (adj)	شعبي/محبوب	lovely	محبوب	unpopular	غير محبوب
present (adj)	مضارع/حاضر	current	حالي	past/future	ماضٍ/مستقبل
simple (adj)	بسيط	easy	سهل	complex/difficult	صعب/معقد
quickly (adv)	بسرعة	fast	سريع/بسرعة	slowly	ببطء

Language Expressions

be	> friends with	يكون صداقات مع	do	> a test	يؤدي اختبارًا
stay	> up late	يسهر حتى وقت متأخر		> better at	يعمل بشكل أفضل في
say	> sorry	يتأسف			

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

breathe in	يستنشق	reason for	سبب لـ
breathe out	يزفر	revise for	يراجع لـ
count to	يعد حتى	stop from	يمنع من
on a helicopter	في هليكوبتر	turn into	يحول إلى

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
hurt	hurt	hurt
lose	lost	lost

Choose and complete:

lost - for - did - stayed - Develop

- 1 Can you tell me your reasons coming late?
- 2 I up late last night to watch a film with my family.
- 3 Our school team the final match. They were sad.
- 4 The storm damaged many houses. "....." is the opposite of "damage".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.



Definitions

breathe	يتنفس	take air ⁽¹⁾ in and out of the body
include	يتضمن/يشمل	allow ⁽²⁾ or want someone or something to be part of something
joke	يمزح	say something to make people laugh ⁽³⁾
mindfulness	تركيز كامل للذهن	being able to relax ⁽⁴⁾ by calmly thinking about your feelings ⁽⁵⁾ and what is around you at the moment
relax	يسترخى	become more calm and less worried, or make someone feel this

التعريفات

(1) هواء

(2) يسمح

(3) يضحك

(4) يستريح

(5) مشاعر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
define (v)	يُعرف	-ition	تحويل الفعل لاسم	definition (n)	تعريف
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness	تحويل الصفة لاسم	happiness (n)	السعادة
mindful (adj)	متنبه			mindfulness (n)	تركيز كامل للذهن
lock (v)	يقفل	-ed	تحويل الفعل لصفة	locked (adj)	مقفّل
read (v)	يقرأ	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	reader (n)	قارئ

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		certain (adj)	معين/متأكد		تعطى عكس المعنى	uncertain (adj)	غير مؤكد

Language Notes

1 **suggest + v + ing/suggest + inf.** المصدر + فاعل

- I **suggested going** to the zoo.
- They **suggested** that she **write** the paragraph again.

يقترح

2 "be" + able to + inf.

قادر على

A) Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.

قادر على (فى المضارع)

- I **am able to** do my English homework alone.
- Nada **is able to** cook pizza.
- They **are able to** win the game.

B) Subject + was/were + able to + inf.

كان قادرًا على (فى الماضى)

- I **was able to** save a little girl from the fire.
- We **were able to** solve the problem.

C) Subject + will be able to + inf.

سوف يكون قادرًا على (فى المستقبل)

- Next year, I **will be able to** drive a car.

3 everyday

يومي (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)

- Children should tell their parents about their **everyday activities**.

every day

كل يوم (ظرف زمان)

- I do exercise **every day**.

4 is called / called الذى يُسمى

- My uncle **is called** Sayed.
- We know a doctor **called** Fawzi. He can help you.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I clean my teeth before bed.

a) everyday b) every day c) every d) day

- 2 My father suggested my brother the new football team.

a) to join b) joins c) joining d) join

- 3 I to draw a picture when I was young.

a) able b) will be able c) was able d) am able

- 4 My father Mesbah. He is a farmer.


a) called b) is called c) calling d) calls

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever followed your friends without thinking? If yes, tell us what happened.

 **Read the blog quickly and answer the questions.**

SB page 58

I always wanted to be part of a certain group of **popular**⁽¹⁾ students. One day, they suggested that we **cyberbully**⁽²⁾ a boy in my class called Eyad, so I wrote an unkind comment about him on social media.



I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't **realise**⁽³⁾ that they were **joking**⁽⁴⁾, and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to **include**⁽⁵⁾ me in their group. I am so embarrassed about what I did.

However, I hope my experience will have a **positive result**⁽⁶⁾, too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends **carefully**⁽⁷⁾ and always be kind to people.

Hussein

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What did Hussein do on social media?
- 2 How did Eyad feel when he read the unkind comment?
- 3 What was Hussein able to do the next day?

(1) شعبي/محبوب

(2) يتنمر على الإنترنت

(3) يدرك

(4) يضحك/يهرج

(5) يتضمن/يضم

(6) نتيجة إيجابية

(7) بعناية

Pre-reading question: - Do you enjoy the sea? Why?

Complete the story with these words. You can use them more than once.

WB page 111

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I **had to** wear a special **life jacket**⁽¹⁾ and he said I **could** walk carefully around the boat, but I **couldn't** run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I **couldn't** see the beach, only the sea. Then the **engine**⁽²⁾ stopped! We tried to start it, but we **couldn't**.

I **could** swim well, but I knew that I **couldn't** swim to the **beach**⁽³⁾. So my uncle **was able to** telephone for help! They said they **could** send a helicopter to help us.

However, **suddenly**⁽⁴⁾ the engine started again! So we **didn't have to** go home on a helicopter.

Post-reading question: - Why did the writer's uncle phone for help?



(1) ستر النجاة

(2) موتور/محرك

(3) شاطئ

(4) فجأة

Pre-reading question:

- How do you think we can stay positive during rough times?

Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 60

THE DAILY NEWS

As part of a plan to **improve**⁽¹⁾ students' **mental health**⁽²⁾, more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced **mindfulness**⁽³⁾ as a part of the timetable. In a mindfulness class, students learn to **breathe**⁽⁴⁾ slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do to in the future. However, trying to think only about the present helps us to **relax**⁽⁵⁾, and to really think deeply about everything we are doing at the moment.

This helps to stop us from feeling **anxious**⁽⁶⁾ or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to feel better about themselves, and afterwards, they do better at their school work, too.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

mindfulness /maɪndfʊlnəs/
breathe /bri:ð/



(1) يطور/يحسن

(2) الصحة النفسية

(3) تركيز كامل للذهن

(4) يتنفس

(5) يستريح

(6) قلق

Post-reading question: - What do you think of mindfulness?

Pre-listening question:

- What do you do when you feel bad about something?

Listening Text



Lesson 3

Listen to some students talking about mindfulness. Put the following things they mention in the correct order.

SB page 60

Boy 1 In **mindfulness**⁽¹⁾ classes, we learn that it's OK to have **negative**⁽²⁾ thoughts, like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people too.

Girl 1 In the class, you have to close your eyes, **breathe**⁽³⁾ in, count to 5, then breathe out slowly. Breathing like this makes you feel **calm**⁽⁴⁾.

Boy 2 In the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the **present**⁽⁵⁾ only, what's happening right now. The **reason**⁽⁶⁾ for this is – we can't change the **future**⁽⁷⁾ or the **past**⁽⁸⁾, we can only do something about the present.

Girl 2 In mindfulness, you have to learn to find **happiness**⁽⁹⁾ in **simple**⁽¹⁰⁾ things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks – this is a new way of doing everyday things.

(1) تركيز كامل للذهن

(2) سلبي

(3) يتنفس

(4) هادئ

(5) الحاضر

(6) سبب

(7) المستقبل

(8) الماضي

(9) السعادة

(10) بسيط

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What do we learn in mindfulness classes?
- 2 Why should we think only about the present?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do when you feel angry or anxious?

Complete the sentences with these words.

Lesson 4

WB page 112

Ashraf I understand my **feelings** better now. For example, when I feel **angry**, I play a sport. I usually find I play better!

Lamar It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling **anxious**. We had a test last week and I did **badly**. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.

Mariam It's morning. I can hear the wind in the trees and the birds **singing**. I am **breathing** slowly and carefully.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What does Ashraf do when he feels angry?
- 2 What's your advice for the people who are always worried?



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sarah her favourite storybook because it was very interesting.
 a) stopped b) mentioned c) faced d) continued
- I can't express my happy when I saw my old friend. We should add the suffix "....." to correct the underlined word.
 a) -er b) -ness c) -ly d) -ing
- To is to take air in and out of the body.
 a) breathe b) include c) count d) revise
- Mohamed Salah is very popular all over the world. We add the prefix "....." to "popular" to get its opposite.
 a) in- b) dis- c) im- d) un-
- The country wants to improve education. The antonym of "improve" is ".....".
 a) include b) continue c) damage d) contain
- We watched the water falling from the top of the high rocks. It was a great
 a) message b) waterfall c) well d) joke
- We thought deep- about what games to play at the birthday party.
 a) -ly b) -ing c) -y d) -er
- My grandmother always and makes us laugh when we visit her.
 a) jokes b) cries c) shouts d) provides
- To get the opposite of "luckily", we add the prefix ".....".
 a) dis- b) im- c) un- d) in-
- Before sailing on the Nile, I wore a to be safe.
 a) life jacket b) coat c) shirt d) scarf
- To is to become more calm and less worried.
 a) practise b) comment c) relax d) realise
- The verb is "lock", but the adjective is ".....".
 a) locks b) locker c) locking d) locked
- I usually mixing with bad friends. I don't like them.
 a) enjoy b) avoid c) prefer d) want
- "....." means being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment.
 a) Mindfulness b) Mind c) Thoughtfulness d) Illness
- Basmala is a lovely girl. "Lovely" and "....." have the same meaning.
 a) current b) serious c) popular d) amusing

Time to Practise



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

include – relax – improve – had to – have to – exclude

All schools should have a plan to (1) students' mental health. For this reason, some schools (2) mindfulness in their activities. Students learn to breathe slowly and to only think of the present. Trying to think only about the present helps us to (3) Our school had a mindfulness class yesterday and we (4) try it with the teacher.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The suffix "....." changes the adjective "careful" into an adverb.
a) -able b) -ness c) -ment d) -ly
- I'm not serious; I'm just
a) jotting b) joking c) cheating d) sharing
- Fortunately, the car wasn't damaged in the road accident. "Fortunately" here means ".....".
a) luckily b) badly c) completely d) unluckily
- Maria understood the why her mom asked her to wear a hat in the sun.
a) rule b) result c) role d) reason
- I can't you in the game because you are still young.
a) contain b) include c) think d) dismiss
- Oh! It's a funny situation. "....." is an antonym for "funny".
a) Crazy b) Dangerous c) Simple d) Serious
- You should go to bed early; don't late.
a) make up b) leave for c) look for d) stay up
- You are right; go on speaking. "Go on" and "....." have the same meaning.
a) hurry b) stop c) interrupt d) continue
- You should read this interesting story. To get the noun for a person from the verb "read", add the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -ing c) -ist d) -ness
- I'm certain our team will win the match. "Certain" here is a synonym for ".....".
a) unsure b) powerful c) doubtful d) sure

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

Longman

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



1 had to:

e.g. I **had to** tell my parents to help me with my problem last week.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "**had to/didn't have to**" to talk about things that were or weren't necessary or essential to do in the past.

تستخدم (**had to/didn't have to**) للحديث عن أشياء كان من / لم يكن من الضروري القيام بها في الماضي.

A) Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + had to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. I **had to** study hard because there was an Arabic exam at school.

• Yara **had to** learn English because she travelled abroad.

Form

التكوين

B) Negative

النفي

Subject الفاعل + didn't have to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. Ramy **didn't have to** do what his friends suggested.

• My friends and I **didn't have to** take a taxi. The library was near.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Sama and her brother (**have**) get up early yesterday to catch the bus.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**had to**) لأن الجملة تعبر عن شيء كان من الضروري فعله في الماضي.

2 My mother (**not/have**) buy bread yesterday. She had much bread already.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**didn't have to**) لأنه شيء ليس من الضروري فعله لوجود كمية من الخبز والجملة في الماضي.

3 Fares didn't have to (**tidies**) his room last Saturday. His sister did.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**tidy**) لوجود **didn't have to** التي يتبعها الفعل في المصدر.

A Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject فاعل + have to + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. A: Did you have to get up early yesterday?

B: Yes, I did.

B: No, I didn't.

e.g. A: Did Nora have to walk to school 3 days ago?

B: Yes, she did.

B: No, she didn't.

Question

السؤال

B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + did + subject فاعل + have to + inf مصدر الفعل ؟

e.g. A: What did you have to do to help your mother yesterday?

B: We had to help her prepare our lunch.

e.g. A: Where did they have to go last weekend?

B: They had to visit their grandparents.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What did you (has) to do when your mother was away?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (have) لأنه سؤال في الماضي ونستخدم بعد الفعل المساعد did مصدر الفعل.

2 Where (do) your uncle have to go yesterday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (did) لأنه سؤال في الماضي لوجود كلمة yesterday الدالة على الماضي.

3 (Does) she have to go to school last week?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Did) لأنه سؤال في الماضي لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الماضي.

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





► Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I wrote an unkind comment about my friend, so I (have to) tell my parents about that.
- I had no money, so I (has to) walk home.
- What did you (had to) do yesterday?
- My uncle took me out on his boat and I had (wear) a special life jacket.
- Yesterday, I (had to) clean the floor because my sister did it.
- I didn't go out last Friday. I (had/look) after my ill sister.
- Before we had the internet, we (have to) find all our information in books.
- My parents (have to) travel by train to Tanta Yesterday.
- Did they (had to) wear uniforms to the school event?
- Ghada (not/have to) feed the chicken because her brother did it already.
- My father had to (went) to work early this morning. He had a meeting.
- The students had (study) for their last exams.
- Where (does) he have to go yesterday?
- The teacher felt sick. That's why she (have to) leave the lesson earlier.
- (Does) she have to cook dinner for everyone last night?
- I (had to) take the bus because my father drove me.
- Tarek (has to) go to the dentist because his tooth hurt.
- In the morning, there was much traffic, so I (have to) wait a long time for the bus.
- Toka (has) to clean her room before her friends came over.
- I (not/have) to study yesterday, because I finished my homework at the weekend.

e.g. I **could** swim when I was six.

Noha **was able to** use a computer at the age of eight.

Usage

الاستخدام

Use "**could/couldn't/was/wasn't able to**" to talk about past abilities.

- نستخدم (could/couldn't/was/wasn't able to) للحديث عن القدرة/عدم القدرة على عمل شيء في الماضي.

A could:

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject فاعل + could + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. Karim **could** speak English when he was seven.

Negative

النفى

Subject فاعل + couldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. They **couldn't** sleep because of their worries.

Question

السؤال

A Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل)

Could + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: **Could** you climb a tree when you were five?

B: Yes, I/we **could**. / No, I/we **couldn't**.

B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + could + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. What **could** you do when you were three?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 (Can) your son swim when he was six?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Could) لأنه سؤال عن القدرة على عمل شيء في الماضي.

2 Last Sunday, we could (takes) some photos in the park.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (take) لوجود could التي يتبعها الفعل في المصدر.

B was, were able to:

Affirmative

الإثبات

We/You/They/ اسم جمع + were able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. My brother and I **were able to** pass our exams last year.

I/He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + was able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. My friend **was able to** win the prize.

Negative

النفي

We/You/They/ اسم جمع + weren't able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You weren't able to drive your bike well last month.

I/He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + wasn't able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. Sally wasn't able to make cake alone.

Question

السؤال

A Yes/No questions: (هل) السؤال بـ

Were + we/you/they/ اسم جمع + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: Were your brothers able to speak French when they were seven?

B: Yes, they were.

B: No, they weren't.

Was + I/he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: Was Ramy able to draw a picture?

B: Yes, he was.

B: No, he wasn't.

B Wh- questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q. Word + were + we/you/they/ اسم جمع + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: When were you able to ride a horse?

B: I was able to ride a horse at the age of 15.

Q. Word + was + I/he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. A: When was Heba able to help her mother?

B: She was able to help her mother when she was nine.



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 It was really noisy, so I (couldn't) to sleep last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't able) لوجود كلمة to قبل المصدر والفعل .

2 Sandy wasn't able to (riding) the bike two years ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ride) لوجود (was able to) التي يتبعها فعل في المصدر.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- He (couldn't) ride a bike without training wheels when he was four.
He was very happy.
- When my sister was five, she could (reading) and write English.
- My cousins were able (finish) their homework before bedtime.
- At the age of four, I (not/able) fly a kite alone.
- The boy (not /able) walk well after he broke his leg.
- (You could) swim when you were seven years old?
- I (not/able) to find a birthday present for my mum this year.
- What was Ahmed able (doing) when he was a child?
- (Are) you able to write when you were five?
- He (could) carry that box. It's too heavy.
- Nobody (couldn't) answer the difficult question in the last exam.
- My little brother couldn't (reaching) the top shelf in the kitchen.
- I could (solved) the math problem on my own.
- Shahenda (could) go to the party because she was sick.
- They (was) able to win the last championship game.
- (Did) he able to repair the broken chair yesterday?
- I (not/able) catch the bus and had to wait.
- My grandmother (could) use a computer until last month.
- He couldn't (climbed) the high wall.
- There was no water. So, he (able) have a bath in the morning.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Soha (not /had) to buy more rice because we had lots already. الأفصر ٢٠٢٣
2. I (able) to come with you to the concert because I was ill. الأفصر ٢٠٢٣
3. Last Thursday was a holiday, so I (not/have) go to school. I stayed home. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. I (has to) tell my parents about the problem that I faced. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
5. We studied hard, so we (able) to get high marks last year. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
6. Eight years ago, I (can) play the piano. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
7. We (have to) walk to the museum because there was a bus. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
8. Could Maher (swam) when he was five? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
9. There was a fire at the hotel, but firefighters (able) to put it out very quickly. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
10. My mother told me that I (not/able) to speak until I was about 4. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤
11. Although he was tired, he (able) play the match. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
12. My brother (able to) fix the computer yesterday. مطروح ٢٠٢٤
13. My neighbour (not/ have to) leave for work because he was still ill.
14. I ran fast, but I (could) win the race!
15. At the age of three, I (could) run, but I could walk.
16. **A:** (Do) you have to wait for a longer time? **B:** Yes, because the manager was busy.
17. I (have) visit my uncle in the hospital.
18. He watched this film many times, but he (not/able) understand it.
19. Last week, we (can't) take any photos in the museum.
20. (You/could) play chess when you were six?

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Write it right

How to write about ways to relax

كيفية الكتابة عن طرق الاسترخاء

- Why do people need to relax?
- How can we relax?
- What do you do to calm down?
- In which situations do you need to calm down?
- Suggest new ways for people to relax.

Writing tips

Spelling and grammatical errors can make it difficult for the reader to understand. Try to swap your writing with a friend and get his feedback.

أخطاء القواعد والأخطاء الإملائية يمكن أن تصعب على القارئ فهم الفقرة. حاول أن تبادل فقرتك مع صديق للحصول على تعليقاته عنها.

Example

"Ways to relax"

There are lots of ways to relax. Some ways are designed to relax your mind and some to relax your body. Because the mind and body are connected, many relaxation ways work on both the mind and the body. Breathing exercises are one way to relax. Take a deep breath, hold it for a moment, and then let it out. Relaxing can quiet your mind and make you feel peaceful and calm. You can practise mindfulness. You should think about the things that are happening right now in the present moment. For example, listen to your body. Is your breathing fast, slow or deep? The idea is just to realise what is happening without trying to change it. There are many ways to relax, you can sit in a warm bath and listen to soft music. Some people feel more relaxed after they write about their feelings. Try to relax whenever possible and enjoy your special time.

Check Point

Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"How to relax"



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

had to – broke – has to – walk – pleased – sad

My friend Sara was very (1) last week. Her grandmother fell off the chair and (2) her leg. They took her to hospital. She (3) relax for a week. She wasn't able to (4) or do any housework, so Sara bought her a new book to help her enjoy her time.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today's modern life can be tiring. It can be hard to make time for yourself. But it's important to find the time. Relaxing can help keep you healthy, in both your body and mind. Luckily, no matter how busy you are, it's simple to learn how to have time for relaxing. You can find five minutes of your day for yourself.

Breathe it out. Breathing exercises are one of the simplest ways. **They** can calm your body and mind. Sit down in a quiet and safe place, such as on your bed or the floor in your home. Breathe in to a slow count of three, and then breathe out to the same slow count of three. Repeat five times.

Write down your thoughts. It may help you relax. When you feel anxious, take a few minutes to write down some short notes about how you're feeling or how your day is going.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about ways of
 a) breathing b) relaxing c) thoughts d) exercises
- The underlined word "Luckily" means
 a) ugly b) lovely c) friendly d) fortunately
- The passage mentioned ways to help you to relax.
 a) two b) three c) four d) no

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the pronoun "**They**" refer to?
- Summarise the ways that help you to relax.
- What do you think is the best way to relax?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you, you feel more calm and less worried.
 a) run b) imagine c) relax d) fix
- To is to say something to make people laugh.
 a) include b) joke c) count d) imagine

3. You should go to bed early; don't late.
 a) make up b) leave for c) look for d) stay up
4. The website had a great of the science museum.
 a) blog b) review c) joke d) message
5. To get the antonym of "popular", we add the prefix "".
 a) un- b) in- c) dis- d) ir-
6. Money could not buy happiness. The antonym of "happiness" is "".
 a) mistake b) mindfulness c) sadness d) pleasure

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last Sunday, we (can't) take any photos in the museum.
2. It was very windy, so planes (not/able) to leave the airport.
3. Could they (talking) when they were two?
4. Hazem (have to) stay up late last night.
5. Heba hurt her leg badly and she (have) to see a doctor.

أسوان ٢٠٢٤

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of Mindfulness"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't have the (able) to run fast.
2. Hagar (able to) buy a new dress next month.
3. We (has to) sell our car as we needed money.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1 & 2	3	4	5
Tackles	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark				



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

brainstorm (n)	العصف الذهني	member (n)	فرد/عضو
clear (adj)	واضح	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
digital (adj)	رقمي	teenage (adj)	مراهق
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	tip (n)	تلميح/نصيحة
feelings (n)	مشاعر	trust (ed) (v)	يثق في
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع	weather (n)	الطقس

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	listener (n)	مستمع
diary (n)	مذكرات/يوميات	opinion (n)	رأي
example (n)	مثال	medicine (n)	الطب/الدواء
finally (adv)	أخيراً	mind (ed) (v)	يمنع
first of all	أولاً	secondly (adv)	ثانياً
housework (n)	أعمال المنزل	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	speaker (n)	متحدث

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete:

explain – interrupt – seem – diary

- 1 You excited about going to the park!
- 2 I will to you why it's important to clean your teeth after eating.
- 3 I'll make a note of our next meeting in my

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
depressed (adj)	محبط	frustrated	محبط	cheerful/excited	مبتهم/متحمس
display (v)	يعرض	exhibit	يعرض	hide	يخفي
explain (v)	يشرح	clarify	يوضح/يشرح	obscure	يخفي
interrupt (v)	يقاطع	disturb	يزعج	continue	يستمر

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

earn > money	يكسب مالا	make > a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
get > ready for	يستعد لـ	a poster	بعد ملصقاً إعلانياً
go > well	يسير على ما يرام	take > a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

agree on	يتفق على	help with	يساعد في
a long way from	على مسافة طويلة من	meet up with	يجتمع مع/ يلتقي مع
calm down	يهدأ	cope with	يواكب/ يتعامل مع
depressed about	محبط من	worried about	قلق على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
leave يترك/ يغادر	left	left
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Check Point

Choose and complete:

about – for – got – took

- 1 He ready for his birthday party by inviting all of his friends.
- 2 I felt depressed losing my favourite toy.
- 3 Yesterday, I a selfie with my best friend at the park.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

ادرس مفردات اللغة جيداً حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Definitions

التعريفات

clear واضح	easy to understand
cope with يواكب/ يتعامل مع	manage or be able to do something, although it is difficult
interrupt يقطع	stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
clear (adj) واضح			clearly (adv) بوضوح
final (adj) نهائي	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف	finally (adv) أخيراً
depress (v) يكتئب	-ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	depressed (adj) محبط
digit (n) رقم	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	digital (adj) رقمي
listen (v) يستمع			listener (n) مستمع
speak (v) يتحدث	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	speaker (n) متحدث

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Who do you talk to when you have a problem?

Listen to four conversations and answer the questions.

SB page 61

Narrator: Conversation 1

Boy 1 My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really **depressed**⁽¹⁾ about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2 Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway. You can find new friends.



(1) محبط

(2) نتائج

(3) الطب

Narrator: Conversation 2

Boy 3 What's wrong, Khaled?

Boy 4 I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3 Tell me about it. What happened?

Boy 4 I heard some bad news yesterday ...

Boy 3 Go on ... It might help to talk about it, you know.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Girl 1 I think I'm going to fail my exams.

Girl 2 Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly too.

Girl 1 But I really want to get good **results**⁽²⁾. I want to go to university and study **medicine**⁽³⁾ ...

Girl 2 I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America ...?

Narrator: Conversation 4

Girl 3 I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4 I see. What makes you say that?

Girl 3 She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know.

Girl 4 It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Girl 3 She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4 That must make you feel very sad.

Post-listening question: - What does Girl 2 want to do?

 Listen and check your answers, then role-play the dialogue. **WB Page 113**

Mazin I had a terrible day at school.

Mother Tell me about it. What happened?

Mazin It was my English class. You see ...

Mother Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mazin We had a test and I was last in the class!

Mother That must make you feel very sad.

Mazin It was so difficult.

Mother Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Mazin Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.


Mother It's clear you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the teacher?



Post-listening question:

- Why do you think that Mazin was sad?

Pre-reading question: - How do you help your friends at school?

 **Dalia's friend Riham has written an email to her friends with suggestions about how to help Dalia. Put her email in the correct order. **WB page 114****

Hi, friends,

(C) **1** I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will continue to feel lonely and **upset** ⁽¹⁾. This will not help her.

(A) **2** So, first of all, it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her **feelings** ⁽²⁾. Then we will know how best to **support** ⁽³⁾ her.

(D) **3** Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is **worried about** ⁽⁴⁾ her brother. I think this might help.

(B) **4** Finally, I think we should tell her that we are **proud** ⁽⁵⁾ to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can relax after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree? Email and let me know.

Best wishes, Riham

Post-reading questions:

1 What's Dalia's problem?

2 Do you think it's a good idea to talk to the teacher?



(1) منزعج

(2) مشاعر

(3) يساعد

(4) قلق على

(5) فخور

Pre-reading question: - Do you help your little siblings with studying?

 **Read about Dalia's day. Which parts of the day are positive for her?**

SB page 62

Which are negative?

Dalia gets ready for school. She can hear her parents talking to her older brother. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He does not look happy and this makes her feel even worse.



Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.



The first lesson at school is science. Dalia works hard and does some good work. The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder?

Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do Dalia's parents feel worried?
- 2 What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
- 3 What did Dalia advise her brother?

Pre-reading question: - Do you live near your school?

Read about Taha. Why does he feel lonely and worried?

WB page 114

Taha's friends all live near to their school. When they have finished their homework, the friends all meet up to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work, too.

Taha lives a long way from the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small **village**⁽¹⁾. He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill. So when he gets home, he has to **look after**⁽²⁾ his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

(1) قرية

(2) يعتنى بـ



Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Taha's life?

Complete the text messages with words from the box.

Lesson 7

SB page 63

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy about her **appearance**. How can I help her feel more **positive** about herself? People like her and she has won prizes for her art; the only **negative** thing about her is her opinion of herself. It's really bad for her **mental health**.

I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful **achievement**.

I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm **embarrassed** to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a **secret**. My parents know I feel a bit **upset** but they don't know why.

It can be **lonely** being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability. Try to **breathe** in and out calmly, and then talk to people.

Nobody minds when people make mistakes!

 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. **WB page 115**

Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, **she had** to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She **was able to** go home the next day but she **wasn't able to** walk for many weeks. She could go to school, but of course she **couldn't** do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she **didn't have to** do any housework, either. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she **was able to** play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better!



مهارة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية

"Giving the main idea"

من ضمن المهارات التي تختبرها قطعة الفهم هي مهارة استخلاص الفكرة الأساسية للنص أو لفقرة معينة ويقصد بها تحديد الفكرة الأساسية التي يدور حولها النص أو الفقرة: لأنه من الممكن أن يعرض الكاتب أفكاراً مختلفة في فقرات متنوعة، وعند قراءة الفقرات سنجد أنها تدور كلها عن موضوع واحد هو الفكرة الأساسية أو العنوان المناسب، وقد يختلف شكل السؤال الذي يناقش هذه المهارة كالاتي:

- What's the main idea of the text?
- Give a suitable title to the passage.
- In the previous passage, the main idea of the text is
- a) Ola broke her arm
- b) Ola broke her leg
- c) Ola's feelings
- d) Ola's new phone



1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

quiet – has to – have to – quite – bully – interrupt

We have a list of school rules. All students (1)..... follow these rules. We mustn't (2)..... other students. We shouldn't (3)..... others while they are talking. We should keep (4)..... and listen carefully to our teachers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Being a good team means sharing and helping others.
a) speaker b) diary c) member d) listener
- The question is; it's too easy to understand.
a) clear b) hard c) serious d) popular
- To form the adjective of the verb "depress", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -en b) -ous c) -ful d) -ed
- My sister will display her artwork at the school's art show. The antonym of "display" is ".....".
a) mind b) trust c) hide d) exhibit
- It's important to be careful and while crossing the road.
a) depressed b) clear c) serious d) digital
- He hopes to with his old friends at the weekend.
a) meet up b) make up c) look after d) take
- She is proud to be a good Everyone likes to talk with her.
a) reader b) listener c) writer d) sleeper
- Young children are not good listeners because they often!
a) think b) interrupt c) meet d) listen
- The in Egypt is very hot today.
a) problem b) speaker c) weather d) brainstorm
- He had expected her to be angry, but she was actually very
a) terrible b) understanding c) silly d) naughty



Speaking

إبداء الاهتمام
أثناء الاستماع
بمفك السؤال
أو الاستيضاح
باستخدام الـ: yes

1. Showing that you are listening

إبداء الاهتمام والاستماع (لمشاكل صديق)

- What's wrong?
- Tell me about your problem. What happened?
- Go on! It might help to talk about it, you know!
- Can you give me an example of what you mean?
- ما الأمر؟ / ما المشكلة؟
- أخبرني عن مشكلتك. ماذا حدث؟
- استمر، فالحديث عن مشكلتك يمكنه المساعدة، كما تعرف.
- هل يمكن أن توضح ما تقصده بمثال؟

2. Suggesting solutions to problems

اقتراح حلول للمشاكل

- So, first of all, it would be a good idea to + inf. ...
- Finally, I think we should + inf. ...
- Why don't we + inf. ...?
- حسنًا، أولاً وقبل أي شيء، إنها لفكرة جيدة أن ...
- في النهاية، أعتقد أنه يجب أن ...
- لم لا ...؟

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialogue:

SB

Rana is worried about her friend. She's not working hard at school.

Alaa : Hello, Rana. How are things?

Rana : (1).....

Alaa : Not good! (2).....?

Rana : I'm worried about my friend.

Alaa : (3)..... . What happened?

Rana : She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't pleased with her.

Alaa : I see. (4).....?

Rana : I say that because she's not the same person I used to know.

Alaa : Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Rana : (5).....



1 Finish the following dialogue:

You are talking to a friend who has got a problem.

You : What's wrong with you?

Friend : (1)

You : (2)?

Friend : The problem is that my parents will be very angry with me.

You : (3)?

Friend : Because I broke my new mobile phone.

You : (4)

Friend : I can't repair it as it will cost a lot of money.

You : I will lend you the money you need.

Friend : (5)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

cope – have to – should – minds – depressed – seems

I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good to her. She just (1) different. She doesn't know how to (2) with them. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring. I feel really (3) about it. I think she (4) find new friends.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To is manage or be able to do something, although it is difficult.
a) explain b) cope with c) display d) seem
- To is to stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking.
a) feel b) interrupt c) earn d) seem
- The teacher wrote the numbers on the board clear-, so everyone could read them.
a) -ly b) -ness c) -ing d) -er
- I'm disappointed. This means that I'm
a) serious b) depressed c) proud d) cheerful
- He joined a sports centre. This means he is a there.
a) host b) guest c) number d) member
- My son is a good He always listens to what I say carefully.
a) speaker b) listener c) reader d) writer

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (mustn't) stop when the traffic lights turn red.
2. We (shouldn't) stop smoking, it's very bad for our lungs.
3. I (must) pass my exams. I'm not sure.
4. Fatma (not/able) to walk to school because she hurt her leg.
5. Did Selim (has to) help his father?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of Teens' problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Sport is our daily activity. "Daily" here is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a) every day b) day c) everyday d) urgent
2. I'm worried; I haven't received the exam yet.
 a) errors b) causes c) results d) reasons

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You must be careful when using the internet. This means that it's
 (unnecessary) to do so.
2. She (has to) hurry because she still has a lot of time to catch the train.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك في كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

Question	1	2	3	4	5
Tackles	Speaking	Reading Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
Mark					

Longman Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Rami and Fadi are talking about common problems for teenagers.

Rami : Most teenagers have a lot of problems, don't they?

Fadi : (1).....

Rami : (2).....?

Fadi : I feel bad about being tall.

Rami : You shouldn't be embarrassed about your appearance; you're a basketball player so, being tall is a positive thing.

Fadi : (3).....?

Rami : (4).....

Fadi : Worried about exams! I know you're always studying hard. You should be quiet and confident.

Rami : You are right. (5).....

Fadi : I believe we are all good at different things.

Rami : I completely agree with you.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

A: available – password – bully – must – mustn't – cyberbully

There are some tips to follow when using the internet. You (1)..... be careful when you use the internet. Don't tell others your (2)..... Respect others and never (3)..... anyone. Don't use all (4)..... websites; only use the ones you trust.

B: had to – must – kind – positive – negative – rules

Our parents usually ask us to be good to others. We should be (1)..... to our friends. We (2)..... cooperate with them to do school projects. We should exchange (3)..... ideas with our classmates. We must follow school (4).....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My parents usually support us; they us to achieve more success.

a) stop b) encourage c) let d) make

2. No one studies with me in this room; I study

a) alone b) only c) lonely d) together

3. A/An is a person aged between 13 and 19 years.
 a) old man b) baby c) adult d) teenager
4. Don't worry; it is a common mistake. "Common" here can be replaced with
 ".....".
 a) strange b) harmful c) ordinary d) painful
5. I want to my language skills. I need to make them better.
 a) delete b) improve c) move d) weaken
6. Children don't like scary films. "Scary" here means ".....".
 a) frightening b) safe c) frightened d) quiet
7. Don't worry; the exam is simple. "....." is opposite in meaning to "simple".
 a) Easy b) Long c) Clear d) Complex
8. We should spend money on essential things only. "Essential" here means
 ".....".
 a) unimportant b) cheap c) necessary d) expensive
9. She seemed very happy. To change "happy" into a noun, delete "y" and add
 ".....".
 a) -ness b) -iness c) -ity d) -ment
10. I had a terrible day because of the accident. "Terrible" here means very
 a) cold b) hot c) good d) bad

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (can) park here; it isn't allowed.
2. She (has to) hurry because she still has a lot of time to catch the train.
3. A: (Do) you have to wait for a longer time? B: Yes, because the manager was busy.
4. Everyone (shouldn't) take care of their health.
5. The pilot (have to) land suddenly as they were something wrong with the plane.
6. I'm sorry; I (am able) to come on time yesterday because the bus had broken down.
7. My neighbour (not/have) leave for work because he was still ill.
8. You shouldn't feel (badly) about being poor.
9. You must be careful when using the internet. This means that it's (unnecessary) to do so.
10. Everyone (shouldn't) follow the eating healthy habits.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Noran broke Sara's favourite toy.

Noran : Dalia, I have something important to tell you.

Dalia : Sure, Noran. (1).....?

Noran : Well, it's about my best friend, Sara. You see ...

Dalia : (2)..... . I'm here to listen, you know.

Noran : We were playing in the park today. (3)..... .

Dalia : Oh no! How did that happen?

Noran : I was running and I fell over the toy.

Dalia : (4).....?

Noran : Yes, I feel terrible about it.

Dalia : (5)..... . She might understand when you talk to her.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

الدفعية ٢٠٢٤

mindfulness – holding – peaceful – exercises – hold – nervous

There are lots of ways to relax. Breathing (1)..... are one way to relax. Take a deep breath, (2)..... it for a moment, and then let it out. Relaxing can quiet your mind and make you feel (3)..... and calm. You can practise (4)..... . You should think about the things that are happening right now in the present moment.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

How old will you be in 2030? Do you think life will be different then? Do you think you will have the skills that help you to face life challenges? To be ready for the future, you have to improve your skills like computing skills, problem solving, communication and self-learning. You should be physically ready for work and life by eating healthy food, doing exercises and having enough sleep at night. Your body needs food, exercise and sleep. It is also necessary to be ready by

working hard to succeed and get the knowledge which helps you to enjoy your life. It is also necessary to be open to different cultures and accept different points of view. **They** might be better than your own opinion. A successful person should be flexible. In addition, technology controls our life. That is why we should improve our technical skills. Once you have improved all these skills, you will be prepared for future jobs as well as future life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A successful person has to be
 a) physically strong b) hard working
 c) flexible d) all of them
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to
 a) challenges b) technical skills c) points of view d) cultures
3. will help you to enjoy your life.
 a) Knowledge b) Challenges c) Competitions d) Contests

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does your body need to be ready for life and work?

5. What skills do you think are needed for future jobs?

6. Why should you improve your technical skills?



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To people means to try to make them do something good. اسويط ٢٠٢٤
 a) encourage b) disappoint c) create d) annoy
2. Don't tell anyone my It's for you only.
 a) importance b) cyberbullying c) understanding d) secret
3. She feels depressed. The antonym of "depressed" is ".....".
 a) kind b) cheerful c) frustrated d) sad
4. Shady makes us laugh. He is always!
 a) crying b) joking c) shouting d) looking

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Khaled got bad results in his exams.

Khaled : I feel a little depressed!

Ayman : (1).....

a) What are you doing?

b) What's right?

c) What's wrong?

d) What is it about?

Khaled : I'm really worried about something.

Ayman : Tell me about it. (2).....

a) What happened?

b) How happened?

c) When happened?

d) Where happened?

Khaled : I heard some bad news yesterday ...

Ayman : (3).....! It might help to talk about it, you know.

a) Sleep

b) Wait

c) Stop

d) Go on

Khaled : (4).....

a) I'm happy.

b) I'm cheerful.

c) I got bad results.

d) I got good results.

Ayman : That must make you feel very sad.

Khaled : Yes, I feel very sad. What should I do now?

Ayman : (5).....

a) You shouldn't get up early.

b) You shouldn't revise well next time.

c) You should sleep a lot.

d) You should revise well next time.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. It's raining outside. You must (taking) your umbrella.

a) to take

b) to taking

c) took

d) take

2. It's Friday today. I (have to) do any homework.

a) don't have to

b) doesn't have to

c) didn't have to

d) must

3. When someone helps you, you (shouldn't) say thank you.

a) should

b) should to

c) has to

d) had to

4. He (able) go to the party yesterday. He was happy.

a) wasn't able to

b) was able to

c) couldn't

d) can

5. I looked everywhere for my glasses, but I (could) find them anywhere.

a) shouldn't

b) mustn't

c) can't

d) couldn't


ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 a b c d	2 a b c d	3 a b c d	4 a b c d	5 a b c d
Q 2	1 a b c d	2 a b c d	3 a b c d	4 a b c d	5 a b c d

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- Can you name two Egyptians Paralympic swimmers?

 **Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. SB page 64**

Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian Paralympic swimmer with an **incredible**⁽¹⁾ list of **achievements**⁽²⁾. She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in **national competitions**⁽³⁾.

When she was 16, Aya became the first and youngest Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio **Paralympic Games**⁽⁴⁾.

Aya had to face many **challenges**⁽⁵⁾ in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or equal **opportunities**⁽⁶⁾ for **disabled people**⁽⁷⁾. Aya was able to achieve her goals with the support of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive for young disabled athletes.

Aya is now a member of the **Egyptian Paralympic team**⁽⁸⁾. Although she has a busy life as a university student, she is also a **campaigner**⁽⁹⁾ for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training since her last event. She is a true role **model**⁽¹⁰⁾ for all Egyptians!

(1) لا يصدق

(2) إنجازات

(3) مسابقات قومية

(4) الألعاب البارالمبية

(5) تحديات

(6) فرص


(7) ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة

(8) الفريق المصري للألعاب البارالمبية

(9) ناشط

(10) نموذج

Pre-reading question: - What kind of stories are you interested in?

 **Read the newspaper article. Choose the correct words.**

Police in Australia **have found** a man who was lost in the **desert**⁽¹⁾ for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, **drove** from his hotel in the morning of January 2nd.

He **was** not able to move his car after he went down a small **farm road**⁽²⁾. He tried to walk back to his hotel, but he **couldn't** remember the way. For many days, Robert **had to** drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. **Nearly**⁽³⁾ three weeks later, a man found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

'Robert has **already** drunk lots of water and feels better now, but he hasn't slept much **yet**,' said a police officer. 'Remember that you **must** tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert,' he said. 'You **shouldn't** drive along small roads either. They are not always safe.'

Post-reading questions:

- How was Robert when the man found him?
- Have you ever got lost? if yes, tell us when and where and what you did.

Lesson 1

WB page 116

(1) صحراء

(2) طريق زراعي

(3) تقريبا



Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever felt disappointed? Why?

Listen to two conversations. Which two problems do the speakers talk about?

SB Page 64

Narrator: Conversation 1

Ola What's wrong, Lina? Has something bad happened? You look really unhappy.

Lina It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious, that's all.

Ola Tell me about it. What are you anxious about?

Lina Well, you know it's the national maths competition soon.

Ola Yes. Go on.

Lina I've revised for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

Ola I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

Lina Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.



Narrator: Conversation 2

Hany Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK?

Tamer Well ...

Hany I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it?

Tamer I'm too embarrassed to talk about it, Hany. I'm afraid I've done something wrong.

Hany Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.

Tamer One of my school friends told me a secret, and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.

Hany I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there anything you can do?

Tamer I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.

Hany You could try sending him an email? It's often easier to write about how you feel than to talk about it.

Tamer Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.

Post-listening question: - What's Tamer's problem?



Pre-listening question:

- Have you ever travelled by plane?

Listen and match the conversations 1–3 with the places a–d (there is one place you don't need).

WB Page 117

a) at an airport

b) by a road

c) at a sports tournament

d) at a train station

Conversation 1

Wael Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet?

Ziad No, it hasn't, Wael.

Wael How long have you been here?

Ziad I've been here for twenty minutes⁽¹⁾.

Wael The bus is very late. Shall we walk?

Ziad Good idea.



Conversation 2

Nawal Hi Marwa. How are you?

Marwa Hi, Nawal. I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.

Nawal Have you arrived at the hotel yet?

Marwa No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.

Nawal So you're at the train station⁽²⁾?

Marwa No, we haven't left the airport yet.

Conversation 3

Mother Hi, Hisham. Have you done well?

Hisham Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.

Mother Well done! What an amazing achievement⁽³⁾! Have you got a medal?

Hisham No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!

Mother I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

(1) دقائق

(2) محطة قطار

(3) إنجاز

Post-listening question:

- Why is Hisham's mother happy for him?

New Hello!

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

Final Revision & Exams Booklet

Prepared by
Said Darahem
&

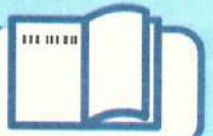
A Group of Experts in Teaching English

راجع

إجاباتك

نزل إجابات
الكتاب بصيغة

PDF



CONTENTS

Part 1 Final Revision

3

1. Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2. Language Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3. Skills Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة على المهارات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

- Speaking Skills

- مراجعة على أهم مهارات التحدث

- Writing Skills

- مراجعة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

4. Al-Adwaa Test on Each 2 Units

اختبار الأضواء على كل وحدتين

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises

22

1. SB & WB General Exercises

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

2. End of Term Practice

اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسي.

Part 3 Final Exams

32

1. 22 Governorates Exams

اختبارات المحافظات وعددها ٢٢

2. 4 Al-Azhar Exams

اختبارات الأزهر وعددها ٤

3. 2 Inclusive Exams

اختبارات الدمج وعددها ٢



Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

Language Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

Skills Revision on Each 2 Units

مراجعة عامة على المهارات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

A. Speaking Skills

- مراجعة عامة على أهم مهارات التحدث

B. Writing Skills

- مراجعة عامة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

Al-Adwaa Test on Each 2 Units

اختبار الأذواء على كل وحدتين

Vocabulary Revision

Units 1 & 2

Unit 2

Key Vocabulary

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	jewellery	مجوهرات	shopping centre	مركز تسوق
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	sports centre	مركز رياضي
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	passenger	مسافر/راكب	timetable	جدول مواعيد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
attractive	جذاب	beautiful	جميل	ugly/unattractive	قبيح/غير جذاب
famous	مشهور	well known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف
peaceful	هادئ	quiet/calm	هادئ	noisy	صاخب/مرزعج

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
use (v)	يستخدم			useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
help (v)	يساعد	-ful		helpful (adj)	مفعلون

Prefix

Prefix	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
im-		comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
		politely	بإحسان	impolitely	بوقاحة

Definitions

traffic	حركة المرور	cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road
pottery	الخطار	pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay.
platform	رصيف محطة	a place where you can catch a train

Key Vocabulary

handicraft	حرفة يدوية	discount	تخفيض/خصم	password	كلمة السر/المعبر
special offer	عرض خاص	fill in (ed)	يملأ استمارة	plug (ged) in	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
log in	يسجل الدخول	sign in	يسجل الدخول	log out	يسجل الخروج
horrible	فظيع	terrible	مفزع/مكرب	wonderful	رائع
worried	قلق	anxious	قلق	unworried/relaxed	غير قلق

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
wood (n)	خشب	-en		wooden (adj)	خشبي
colour (n)	لون	-ful		colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان
tradition (n)	عادة/تقليد	-al		traditional (adj)	تقليدي

Definitions

complaint	شكوى	something that you say or write when you are unhappy about something
fridge	ثلاجة	a machine we use to keep food cold and help food stay fresh longer
kettle	غلاية	a machine we use to boil water
microwave	ميكروويف	a machine we use to cook things quickly

Unit 1

1 Prepositions of time

حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان

in	on	at	No preposition
- Months الشهور	- Days of the week أيام الأسبوع	Clock times الساعات	next / last / this / every / today / tomorrow / yesterday
- Seasons فصول السنة	- Days + parts of days أيام و فترات اليوم	Festivals مهرجانات	
- Years السنوات	- Dates التاريخ	Exact or a particular time وقت محدد	
- Centuries القرنات	- Special days أيام مميزة		
- Times of day فترات اليوم			

2 The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الأحداث المجدولة أو لوجود معايير عامة لكيفية التصرف.

e.g. The first metro train **leaves** at 8:20.

A: What time **does** the exhibition **start**?

B: It **starts** at 9:30.

Affirmative

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → inf.
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → inf. + s, es, ies

e.g. I **wash** my face every morning.

Ali (He) **washes** his car once a week.

Negative

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → don't + inf.
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → doesn't + inf.

e.g. My friends and I (We) **don't go** to school on Fridays.

My sister (She) **doesn't listen** to music in the evening.

Question

Do/Does + subject + inf.?

e.g. **Do** Sally and Omar **play** tennis? - **Does** Shahenda **have** a car?

Q. word + do/does + subject + inf.?

e.g. **Where** **does** Aya **live**? - **When** **do** they **play** chess?

Unit 2

1 Comparing adjectives

مقارنة الصفات

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives	adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
Long adjectives	more/less + adj. + than	the most/the least + adj.

e.g. My house is larger **than** yours. - Everest is **the** highest mountain in the world.

2 both/ either/ neither

(A) both ... and ... كل من ... و ...

both + 1 فاعل + and + 2 فاعل + فعل

e.g. Both Nessma **and** I like shopping at the market.

فعل جمع داخلا + اسم جمع + both (of) + اسم جمع

e.g. Both (of) the sisters are good at maths.

(B) either ... or ... إما ... أو ...

either + 1 فاعل + or + 2 فاعل + فعل

e.g. Either you **or** Mona has to finish the report before 5 p.m.

فعل مفرد + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + either of + اسم جمع

e.g. Either of these shirts is good. = Either of them is good.

(C) neither ... nor ... لا ... ولا ...

neither + 1 فاعل + nor + 2 فاعل + فعل

e.g. Neither Nawal **nor** Nader likes washing the dishes.

فعل مفرد + اسم جمع/ضمير مفعول جمع + neither of + اسم جمع

e.g. Neither of those necklaces is cheap.

3 When & While

عندما ببساطة ، أثناء ببساطة

e.g. **When** I phoned my friends, they were playing the piano.

عندما ببساطة ، أثناء مستمرا ، أثناء مستمرا

e.g. **While/As** I was riding my bike, I fell off.

Skills Revision

Units 1 & 2



A: Speaking

Unit 1

Discussing timetables and public transport

مناقشة الجداول الزمنية والمواصلات العامة



What time is the next train?

ما موعد القطار التالي؟



The next train goes in five minutes.

القطار التالي سيطلق خلال خمس دقائق.



Which platform does the train leave from?

من أي رصيف سيغادر القطار؟



It leaves from platform 7.

سيغادر من الرصيف رقم سبعة.

Unit 2

Making and answering a complaint

تقديم شكوى والرد عليها



Hello, how can I help you?

مرحباً، كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟



Hello, I want to make a complaint.

مرحباً، أريد أن أقدم شكوى.



Oh, dear. What's the problem?

يا الهي! ما المشكلة؟



Your website says the delivery takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

يقيد موقعكم الإلكتروني أن التوصيل يستغرق ٥ أيام، ولكنني ما زلت أنتظر.



Can I take your name and the order number, please?

هل يمكنني أن أحصل على اسمك ورقم الطلب من فضلك؟



Yes, it's Waleed Ali, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8.

نعم، أنا ولاء علي. رقم الطلب هو ٣٤٤٥٣٨.



B: Writing

Unit 1

My visit to Ismailia

Last weekend, I went on a nice trip to Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live here, but since traffic is slow, there isn't much pollution. Ismailia is peaceful, but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially at the weekends. I went to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it. There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum because I'm interested in animals. It was a nice trip and I enjoyed it there. It's a good place to go at the weekend.

Unit 2

Online shopping

We all know that online shopping is very useful because it has many advantages. It saves time and money. You buy what you want without moving. However, my opinion about that changed when I decided to buy a present online. I visited websites for electronics until I found this website. I ordered a toaster as a present for my mother on her birthday. The website said the delivery would be in two days, but the delivery arrived in two weeks. I opened the box and put it in the kitchen. It looked great and good, but when I plugged it in, it made smoke then a fire. That was terrible. At once, I called them and asked them if I wanted to send it back. They were sorry. After two days, a new toaster arrived. It was really great in the kitchen. My mum was very happy with it.



Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

الحوار ٢٠٢٣

A customer is making a complaint.

Assistant : Good afternoon, sir. How can I help you?

Customer: (1).....

Assistant : (2).....?

Customer: I ordered a kettle from your website, but it doesn't work.

Assistant : When did you order it?

Customer: (3).....

Assistant : Would you like to replace the kettle or have your money back?

Customer: (4).....

Assistant : OK, we'll give your money back, but you have to come to the shop.

Customer: Thank you. (5).....?

Assistant : Our shop is next to the bank.



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤

enjoyed – behind – interesting – between – nature – boring

Last Saturday, I went on a school trip to Ismailia. It's (1)..... Port Said and Suez. There are some (2)..... museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the (3)..... Science Museum because I'm interested in animals. It was a nice trip and I (4)..... it there.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ismailia is a city in the north east of Egypt. It's known in Egypt as "The City of Beauty and Enchantment". Ismailia is on the west bank of the Suez Canal, it is the capital of the Ismailia Governorate. The city has a population of 1,402,132 as of 2021. It is halfway between Port Said to the north and Suez to the south. It was founded in 1863, during the Suez Canal building, by Khedive Ismail, so it is named after him. The head office of the Suez Canal is in Ismailia at the shore of Lake Timsah. It has a large number of buildings. Ismailia has several public and private schools. Ismailia

is the home of the Suez Canal University, built in 1976 with the help of the Chinese Government to serve the region of Suez Canal and Sinai. Ismailia owns a successful football club, Ismaily SC. The team has won the Egyptian League three times (1967, 1991, 2002), the Egyptian Cup twice (1997, 2000), and the African Champions League once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab Club team won this league.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is talking about
a) Japan b) China c) England d) Ismailia
- Ismailia is Port Said and Suez.
a) behind b) opposite c) between d) next to
- Ismaily SC has won the Egyptian League
a) 4 times b) 3 times c) 5 times d) 7 times

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

5. "Ismailia is a good place to visit". Explain.

.....

6. Who was the city of Ismailia named after?

.....



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The is a place where you can borrow, save or exchange money.
a) library b) lake
c) bank d) aquarium
- A means a good or cheap price.
a) discount b) canoe
c) deal d) handicraft
- They were because they didn't win the match.
a) happy b) unhappy
c) happiness d) happily
- If something is it is enjoyable and exciting.
a) boring b) tiring
c) interesting d) bad

سؤال ٢٤

5. Sarah is interested in the modern art. The synonym of "modern" is "new".
a) old b) aged
c) new d) near
6. To form the noun from "speak", add the suffix "-er".
a) -or b) -er
c) -ist d) -ian

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **A:** What time (do) the train leave? **B:** It leaves at 7.00.
2. The weekly meeting is (at) Wednesdays at 10 am.
3. They (watch) TV when we arrived.
4. This is the (hard) question in the exam.
5. I don't know where Faris is; he is (both) at school or at home.

D

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of something you bought online"

(This area contains horizontal ruling lines.)

Unit 3

Key Vocabulary

calligraphy	ممارسة فن الخط	experience	خبرة	initiative	مبادرة
community	مجتمع	facilities	مستلزمات/خدمات/مرافق	leaflets	منشورات
conclusion	خاتمة	graffiti	الرسم على الجدران	neighbourhood	حي/جيرة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
encourage	يشجع	support	discourage	يحبط
local	محلي	national	international	عالمي
repair	يصلح	mend/fix	damage/break	يضر

Suffix

Word	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	يُنجِز	-ment	achievement (n)	إنجاز
communicate (v)	يتواصل	-ion	communication (n)	تواصل
access (n)	وصول	-ible	accessible (adj)	يمكن الوصول إليه

Prefix

Prefix	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-	formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي

Definitions

neighbourhood	حي/جيرة	a small area of a town or village and the people who live in it
lodger	نزيل/مستأجر (الفرقة بصر)	someone who pays to live in another person's house/someone who pays for a room in a house
encourage	يشجع	to try to make people do something

Unit 4

Key Vocabulary

competition	منافسة/مصارعة	deaf	أصم	sign language	لغة الإشارة
canoe	زورق	dyslexia	صعوبة/عسر القراءة	theme park	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
concert	حفلة موسيقية	orphanage	دار أيتام	windsurf	يركب الموج

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	serious/unsafe	safe	آمن
difficult	صعب	hard	easy	سهل
surprised	مدهش	amazed	unsurprised	غير مدهش

Suffix

Word	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
gymnast (n)	لاعب جيمناز	-ics	gymnastics (n)	الجيمناز
head (n)	رأس	-ache	headache (n)	صداع
noise (n)	ضوضاء	-y	noisy (adj)	صاخب

Prefix

Prefix	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
a-	wake (v)	يستيقظ	awake (adj)	مستيقظ

Definitions

canoe	زورق	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
orphanage	دار أيتام	is a place for the care and education of children who have no parents
experience	تجربة حياتية/خبرة عمل	something that happens to you
dyslexia	صعوبة/عسر القراءة	a learning difference that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read, write or spell

Unit 3

1 The Present Continuous Tense

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية النهائية (مستقبل مرتب له مسبقاً).

Form
Subject + am/ is/ are (not) + inf. + ing

- We're starting a project next month.
I am not travelling abroad next summer holiday.

Look! – Listen! – now – still – at the moment – at the present

- Look! Ali is riding his new bike.
- Listen! Mona is singing beautifully.

Key words

2 Adjectives ending in -ing or -ed

الصفات

- We use adjectives ending in -ing to describe a noun (thing/person) that causes a feeling.
وصف الاسم (الشئ/الشخص) الذي تسبب في الشعور (مؤثر) نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (-ing).
- The results of the survey were interesting.

- We use adjectives ending in -ed to describe a feeling.

- Khaled was disappointed to see the rubbish.

3 Future with "(be) going to"

معدود الفعل
Subject + am/is/are (not) + going to + inf.

- Omar is going to join a boarding school.

- We use 'be going to' for future plans, decisions and intentions.

- We're going to start our own social network service.

Unit 4

1 The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Subject + has/ have (not) + past participle

- Salma has eaten Chinese food. • They haven't slept in a tent.

Key words

(A) ever/never

never (أبداً) نستخدم في وسط جملة المضارع التام. أي بعد (have/has) نلجأ على النقيض.

Subject + have/has + never + past participle

- He has never been to Paris.

ever (من قبل) نستخدم في وسط السؤال في المضارع التام أي بعد (have/has) وللتأكيد وقيل P.P.

Subject + have/Has + subject (الفاعل) + ever + past participle

- Has your father ever visited Paris?

(B) since/for

عند ذكر وقت مع المضارع التام نستخدم قبل الوقت كلمة (for) لمدة أو (since) منذ.

Subject + have/has + past participle

- My father and mother have lived in Tokyo since 2015.

مدة وقوع الحدث كلمة + for + التصريف الثالث للفعل للتعبير عن المدة منذ 9 years.

- My brother has lived in Rome for 9 years.

2 The difference between the Present Perfect and Past Simple

الفرق بين المضارع التام والمضارع البسيط

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Use it for past actions when the time is not important or for things that still continue now.

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Use it for finished actions in the past. We usually say when it happened.

نستخدم لأحداث منتهية في الماضي. وعادة ما نذكر وقت الحدث (مع كلمات دالة على الماضي).

نستخدم لأحداث ماضية عندما لا يكون الوقت مهماً أو للأشياء التي ما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن (لا يوجد الوقت مهماً).



A. Speaking

Unit 3

Using formal and informal introductions and greetings

استخدام التقديم والتحية الرسمية وغير الرسمية

رسمي Formal

Use formal language with people you don't know.

- Hello, Mr Reda.

التحية A) Greetings

- مرحبا سيد رضا.

أهلاً

التقديم B) Introductions

- I'd like to introduce myself.

أود أن أقدم نفسي.

- I'd like you to meet my friend, Habiba.

أود أن أقدم صديقتي، حبيبة.

- I'd like to introduce my friend, Nader.

أود أن أقدم صديقي، نادر.

أنا آدم.

- Adam, meet Omar.

- This is my friend, Basma.

هذه صديقتي، بسما.

- Do you know my friend, Imad?

هل تعرف صديقي، عماد؟



B. Writing

Unit 3

A biography of a famous sportsman

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He was born in a village in Gharbia. Mohamed Salah is 1.75 metres tall. He is polite and hardworking. Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He has played for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scored many goals for our national team. He played for Fiorentina and Roma in Italy. Now, he plays for Liverpool in England and scored many goals. Liverpool is a very good team. I like the way in which they play. Players are so active and present great shows and good results. That happened after Salah had joined them. Salah added much speed to the team.

Unit 4

Asking and answering questions about experiences



Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?

هل أي شخص من عائلتك تسلق جبلاً؟

Yes, My cousin has climbed a mountain.

نعم، قام ابن خالي بتسلق جبل.



When did Talia's grandmother move to the house she lives in now?

متى انتقلت جدة تاليا إلى المنزل الذي تعيش فيه الآن؟

She moved to it 7 years ago.

انتقلت إليه منذ سبع سنوات.



How long has Talia's grandmother been married?

كم مدة زواج جدة تاليا؟

She has been married since 1980.



Unit 4

A short story of Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

My favourite story is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. It's a children's story by Lewis Carroll. He wrote it in 1865. Alice is the main character of the story. She is a clever girl. She's also sensible. She goes to Wonderland and meets a lot of interesting characters there. She meets the White Rabbit who is always busy and in a hurry. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice, so she can go home again. I learnt from this story that friendship is very important to us.

**Language Functions****1 Finish the following dialogue:**

Hanaa is introducing Sawsan to Hayam.

Hanaa : Hello, Hayam. How are you?

Hayam : (1)

Hanaa : I'd like you to meet our new friend, Sawsan.

Hayam : Oh, (2)

Sawsan : Nice to meet you, too.

Hayam : (3)?

Hanaa : We are going to visit Al-Azhar Park next weekend.

Sawsan : (4)?

Hanaa : That's a good idea. It's nice to go together.

Hayam : (5) Don't come late.

**Reading Comprehension****2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

attraction – will – going to – encouraged – improved – graffiti

In our community meeting, we decided to improve the buildings that are full of (1) and plant trees in front of each house. We (2) all young people to help with our community project which takes a few months to finish. As soon as we complete it, our neighbourhood becomes very attractive and it is (3) be a tourist (4)

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

When I was young, I always loved both drawing and painting, but I could neither read nor write well. As a result, I didn't understand the lessons at school and got bad marks.

My parents thought that I wasn't very clever. For this reason, they took me to some tests. They discovered that I suffered from dyslexia which means it was difficult for my brain to read and spell. To help me, my parents asked a teacher to give me special lessons which made me have good results. Later at school, I was better and did well in exams.

Also, I got a prize for my art. Then, I decided that I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia to offer help and teach them about art.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is
a) the problem of charities b) the problem of exams
c) the problem of dyslexia d) drawing and painting
2. My parents helped me with the problem when they
a) took me to a doctor b) gave me a lot of money
c) volunteered at a charity
d) asked a teacher to give me special lessons
3. The writer was good at
a) both reading and writing b) neither drawing nor painting
c) either reading or writing d) both drawing and painting

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
.....
5. Summarise the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.
.....
6. How do you think the writer will help other children?
.....

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I volunteered to help clean the from the walls of the museum.
a) profile b) calligraphy
c) graffiti d) handwriting
2. If you are, you do not expect something, and it seems strange or unusual.
a) elderly b) surprised
c) terrible d) horrible
3. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of the verb "achieve".
a) -ly b) -ble
c) -tion d) -ment

4. To is to say hello to or welcome someone.
a) communicate b) greet c) pay d) feel
5. A is someone who pays to live in a house.
a) tenant b) customer c) volunteer d) architect
6. Amazing! She's a very clever girl. The antonym of "clever" is ".....".
a) smart b) stupid c) wise d) dark

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You are a (surprise) player, Adel; we all like your talent!
2. How long have you (know) your best friend?
3. I (see) a great film yesterday.
4. Aya has just (did) her homework.
5. Volunteers (be/go) to clean up the park at 9 am.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A biography of a person you admire"

[illegible]

Key Vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	health emergency	طوارئ صحية	role model	قدوة
bubble	فقاعة	medical team	الفريق الطبي	hyperloop	هايبرلوب
challenge	تحدي	pandemic	جائحة/وباء	tournament/contest	دورة مباريات

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
nervous	عصباء/مقلق	anxious	calm/quiet	هادئ
international	دولي	global	national/local	قومي/محلي
pass	يحتاج	succeed in	fail	يفشل/يرسب

Suffix

Word	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	-al	natural (adj)	طبيعي
pollute (v)	تلوث	-ion	pollution (n)	تلوث
create (v)	يبتكر/يبدع	-ive	creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر

Prefix

Prefix	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-	possible	ممکن	impossible	غير ممكن
in-	credible	معتقّل	incredible	لا يصدق

Definitions

campaigner	نشطاء/مناضل	a person who tries and changes the way people do things in society
volunteer	متطوع	someone who doesn't get paid for work, but they like to help people
creative	مبدع/مبتكر	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something

Key Vocabulary

appearance	مظهر (خارج)	comment	تعليق/معلق	mental health	الصحة النفسية/العقلية
behaviour	سلوك	cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكتروني	social life	الحياة الاجتماعية
blog	مدونة	interrupt	يقاطع	teenage	سن المراهقة
brainstorm	المحفّ الذهلي	life jacket	سترة النجاة	tip	تلميح/نصيحة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (Opposite)	عكسها
display	يعرض	exhibit	hide	يخفي
scared	خائف	frightened	brave	شجاع
common	شائع/منتشر	popular	uncommon	غير شائع

Suffix

Word	Suffix	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
read (v)	يقرا	-er	reader (n)	قارئ
appear (v)	يظهر	-ance	appearance (n)	مظهر (خارجي)
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness	happiness (n)	السعادة

Definitions

social life	حياة اجتماعية	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people
mindfulness	تركيز كامل للذهن	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment
cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكتروني	when you say unkind or cruel things about someone online
relax	يستريح	become more calm and less worried, or make someone feel this

التعريفات

Unit 5

The Present Perfect with **already** and **yet**:1 **already**المضارع التام مع **yet** و **already**

نستخدم **في** وسط جملة المضارع التام، أي بعد *(have/has)* أو آخر الجملة لتدل على أن الحدث قد تم فعلاً.

التصريف الثالث للمضارع التام **have/has + already + past participle**

e.g. She **has already** written a book of stories.

Subject **has/has + already + past participle**

e.g. They **have played** in two concerts **already**.

2 **yet**

نستخدم **في** آخر الجملة المتبقة للمضارع التام وأيضاً في آخر السؤال مع المضارع التام.

Subject **hasn't been to** another country **yet**. / **haven't/hasn't + past participle**

e.g. She **hasn't been to** another country **yet**. / **I haven't done** my homework **yet**.

Have/Has + Subject + past participle

e.g. **Has she played** a musical instrument **yet**?

Have the girls **cleaned** the house **yet**?

Unit 6

1 **Modal Verbs**

الضرورة

In the present: المضارع

Subject **can/must + inf.**

e.g. Friends **must** **keep** secrets.

Subject **can/must + have/has to + inf.**

e.g. I **have to** **be** good at science subjects.

In the past: الماضي

Subject **could/might + had to + inf.**

e.g. I **had to** **tell** my parents about my exam results.

عدم الضرورة

In the present: المضارع

Subject **can/couldn't + have to + inf.**

e.g. You **don't have to** **see** this as a negative thing.

Salma **doesn't have to** **get up** early on Friday.

In the past: الماضي

Subject **could/might + didn't + have to + inf.**

e.g. I **didn't have to** **do** what my friends suggested.

3. Prohibition: المنع / التحريم

Subject **can/mustn't + inf.**

e.g. I **mustn't** **talk** to people I don't know.

الضرورة

Subject **can/couldn't + inf.**

e.g. You **should** **talk** to your friends in a good way.

You **shouldn't** **tell** others about your password.

الاحتمال

Subject **can/might + inf.**

e.g. They **might** **be** more understanding than you think.

القدرة في الماضي

6. Ability in the past:

Subject **could/couldn't + inf.**

Subject **could/couldn't + was/were(n't) + able to + inf.**

(كان قادراً على أن لم يكن قادراً على أن)

e.g. I **could** **ride** a bike when I was four.

Karim **was able to** **speak** English at the age of seven.

We **couldn't** **understand** why he did it.

They **weren't able to** **solve** the difficult problem.



A. Speaking

Unit 5

Responding to good news

- Well done!
- Great news!
- That's incredible.
- Great job. Well done!
- I knew you would do well.
- You did really well.
- What an amazing achievement!
- I'm really happy for you.
- You worked really hard.

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة

- أحسنت!
- أخبار عظيمة!
- هذا لا يصدق!
- أداء عظيم. أحسنت!
- كنت أعلم أنك ستفعل جيداً.
- لقد أديت بشكل جيد حقاً.
- يا له من إنجاز رائع!
- أنا حقاً سعيد من أجلك.
- لقد عملت بجد حقاً.

Unit 6

Discussing teenage worries and suggesting solutions to problems

مناقشة أمور متعلقة للمراهقين واقتراح حلول

I'm embarrassed about being so tall.

You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive thing!

For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious about them.

بالنسبة لي، الامتحانات هي مشكلة. أشعر بالقلق الشديد تجاهها.

I guess we're all good at different subjects, and not so good at others.

أعتقد أننا جميعاً جيدين في مواد مختلفة، وليسنا جيدين في مواد أخرى.

Cyberbullying is a problem, too.

التنمر الإلكتروني مشكلة أيضاً.

You should tell a teacher or a parent.

يجب أن تخبر معلماً أو ولياً أمر.



B. Writing

Unit 5

A biography of my role model

A role model is someone we admire. My role model is Samar Abdelfattah. She is a space engineer and a business person. She has worked hard to achieve her goals. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering. While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Samar entered the competition with her team, engineering students from the university. Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East. They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award. Three years later, Samar started her own company. I hope to be like her when I grow up.

Unit 6

A review of teenage problems

Teenagers around the world have a lot of problems, and today I'd like to talk about bullying and its effects. Many people have terrible memories from school, because of the bullying they have experienced. It's important to keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying, and different solutions: Physical bullying is the most common form of bullying. Verbal bullying is when someone insults and calls others names; he or she uses hurtful language to upset others. Emotional bullying is even more serious than verbal bullying.

It's to try to get someone else to feel lonely and depressed. Cyberbullying is becoming a very serious problem for teens. This type of bullying uses messaging, mobile phone text messages and online social networks. We need to keep teens aware of such bullies and teach them how to ask for help.



Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Noha is back from school and her mother is opening the door.

Mother : Hi Noha, how was your day at school?

Noha : (1).....

Mother : (2).....?

Noha : Because my teacher gave me a prize.

Mother : (3).....?

Noha : During the Arabic lesson.

Mother : What was the prize for?

Noha : (4).....

Mother : Well done! You have always been good at writing poems.

Noha : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

common – has to – must – bullying – experienced – beautiful

Teenagers have a lot of problems. (1)..... is the most common one. Many people have terrible memories from school, because of the bullying they have (2)..... . We (3)..... keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying. Physical bullying is the most (4)..... form of bullying. Verbal bullying is when someone insults and calls others names.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Relaxation is an essential part of our daily routine, and there are many ways to relax after a long day. Taking a warm bath or shower can help you relax. The heat from the water can calm your muscles, and the steam can clear your mind. This is an easy way to calm yourself after a long day.

Practise deep breathing. Deep breathing is a simple technique that can help you calm your mind and body. To practise deep breathing, find a quiet place to sit. Close

your eyes and take slow, deep breaths in through your nose and out through your mouth. Focus on your breath and leave any thoughts or worries.

Read a book. Reading is an excellent way to relax and escape from the stresses of daily life. It can also improve your mental health and increase your creativity. Reading before bed can also help you sleep better.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is one way to relax after a long day.
a) Taking a cold shower b) Taking a warm bath or shower
c) Exercising strongly d) Sleeping too much
- can develop your mental health.
a) Reading b) Sleeping
c) Watching TV d) Playing games
- The underlined word "technique" means
a) creativity b) breath
c) way d) road

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the best title for this passage?

.....

5. Summarise how to practise deep breathing.

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An is something that you hope to achieve in the future.
a) goal b) skill c) award d) bridge
- To is to manage or be able to do something, although it is difficult.
a) go on b) meet up with c) look after d) cope with
- I felt really nervous before the interview. I was
a) anxious b) calm c) ordinary d) impossible
- My parents always me when I have a competition. They help me.
a) introduce b) guess c) support d) save

5. We add the prefix "....." to form the opposite of the word "possible".

a) re-

b) im-

c) dis-

d) ex-

6. The synonym of the word "pass" is ".....".

a) fail

b) embarrass

c) disappoint

d) succeed in

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I haven't seen that new film (already).

2. (Did) he able to do the quiz himself yesterday?

3. I've (yet) eaten lunch, so don't cook me anything.

4. We (could) get to the meeting on time yesterday because the train was late.

5. Where did Ayman (had) to go last Friday?



Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A review of teenage problems"

Part 2

SB & WB General Exercises



1

SB & WB General Exercises

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

2

End of Term Practice

اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسي.

Unit 1

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Khaled is inviting his friend Fawzi to visit the Space Exhibition.

Khaled : Hi, Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition?

Fawzi : Yes, please! (1).....?

Khaled : It starts at 9:30. We're going by metro.

Fawzi : Which train shall we get?

Khaled : (2).....

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition starts!

Khaled : Perhaps we can leave later.

Fawzi : What time does it finish?

Khaled : (3).....

Fawzi : OK. (4).....?

Khaled : Yes, one leaves at 1:15 pm and arrives at 1:25.

Fawzi : (5).....

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

- Go (post) the restaurant and the library.
- From the sports centre, (goes) straight on for about 20 metres.
- What time (the lesson/starts)?
- The library (open) at 8:30 in the morning.
- The train to Port Said (leave) this station at 3:15.
- The film hasn't finished. It (end) at nine o'clock.
- When (this plane/arrives) in Cairo?
- What time (be) the next train?
- Which platform does it (leaves) from?
- How long (do) the journey take to Luxor?

Unit 2

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Mrs Nahla wants to make a complaint about her new kettle.

Mrs Nahla : Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.

Assistant : Oh, dear. (1)

Mrs Nahla : I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave!

Assistant : (2) Can I take your name, please?

Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

Assistant : (3)

Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's 0551209. Can you call me back today, please?

Assistant : (4)

Mrs Nahla : Okay. Thanks for your attention.

Assistant : (5)

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Televisions are (expensive) than kettles.
2. The (more/useful) thing in my kitchen is the fridge.
3. It is (easy) to shop online now than before.
4. The (busy) shop in my town is the supermarket.
5. How much (be) the bigger one?
6. (be) that your best price?
7. The film was terrible. I think it was the (worse) film I've ever seen!
8. It is (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.
9. None of us (want) to buy these phones.
10. This morning, I (go) to the town centre with my mum.
11. We took the bus there and I (buy) a really cool new phone!
12. I showed them my new phone while we (walk) down the road.
13. I like these TVs, but I think the smart TVs are the (good).
14. (None) Alexandria and Port Said are on the Mediterranean Sea.

Unit 3

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Adam and Amr are talking about a book.

Adam : Are you enjoying that book, Amr?

Amr : (1)

Adam : (2)?

Amr : Because it's not my favourite kind.

Adam : (3)?

Amr : I like adventure stories. Did you read it?

Adam : (4) I read it last year, but I
thought it was amazing! The ending is surprising.

Amr : Well, your review makes it sound very interesting. Perhaps I should finish it!

Adam : I hope you will enjoy it.

Amr : (5)

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. I was (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.
2. Heba thought that Injy was ill, so she was (surprise) to see her at school.
3. I was (amaze) by the number of people who came to the festival.
4. "That is a very (interest) building," said the architect.
5. We were all very (exciting) when we heard about our next class trip.
6. Volunteers (going/clean up) the park at 9 am.
7. Food market (going/be) closed from 8 am to 2 pm.
8. The handball competition (going/start) at 2 pm at the sports centre.
9. A famous architect (going/talk) at the new museum at 4 pm.
10. We are (going/play) King Lear at the theatre at 6 pm.
11. The Egyptian football team beat Brazil 3-0 which was a (surprise) result!
12. Kamal swam all along the beach which was very (tired).

Unit 4

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Hania has (play) tennis many times.
2. Has Lina (ever/see) that film?
3. Lama has had her phone (since) two years.
4. Mr Sabri has been at this school (for) 2020.
5. Hatem (live) in Alexandria for many years.
6. Malak (be) friends with Injy since they were children.
7. Fady has (have) a headache for about an hour.
8. Kamal and Lina (marry) last year.
9. How long have you (live) in this house?
10. We've been married (since) fifty years!
11. I've (live) in the same house since I was born.
12. How long have you (know) your best friend?
13. My sister has been good at tennis (for) she was ten.
14. We've waited for the bus (since) two hours.
15. Have you ever (be) in London on business?
16. (Have) he ever forgotten your birthday party?
17. Have you ever (make) a kite?
18. I have (ever) travelled by plane; I don't like travelling by air.
19. Who has (write) this list of new students?
20. I have never (win) a competition at school.
21. My sister (learn) two new languages since she left school.
22. How long have Laila and Hassan (be) married?

Unit 5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Mother is congratulating Nader who won a story writing competition.

Mother : You look happy, Nader.

Nader : Yes, of course! (1).....

Mother : Well done! (2).....?

Nader : No, it wasn't at school. It was for everyone.

Mother : For everyone? (3).....?

Nader : No, I came second in the class, so I worked harder this year!

Mother : I knew you would do well. When will you get the prize?

Nader : (4).....

Mother : I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch!

Nader : (5).....

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Sami (pass) his exams last week.
2. I (visit) lots of interesting cities in my country.
3. My mum (want) to be a sports champion when she was young.
4. Since I started my job, I (work) with hundreds of computers!
5. Last year, I (travel) to meetings around the world.
6. I design bridges. Last year, we (build) a very long bridge in China.
7. He hasn't got a job (already).
8. He (already/talk) to some companies about his ideas.
9. We (finish) our science project last week.
10. Noha (work) as a volunteer since she left school.
11. My brother (read) lots of interesting books about space science.
12. Haytham (create) an app already.

Unit 6

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Speaking

Mazin and his mother are talking about a day at school.

Mazin : I had a terrible day at school.

Mother : Tell me about it. (1).....?

Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...

Mother : Go on. (2).....

Mazin : We had a test and I got bad marks.

Mother : (3).....!

Mazin : It was so difficult.

Mother : That's Okay. Did you talk to your teacher?

Mazin : (4).....

Mother : Why not?

Mazin : (5).....

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Our class (have to) do a test this morning.
2. We (not/have) walk to the museum because there was a bus.
3. Fatma (not/able) walk to school because she hurt her leg.
4. Tarek (have to) go to the dentist because his teeth hurt.
5. It was very windy, so planes (able) to leave the airport.
6. I'll tell you a secret, but you (must) tell anyone!
7. In the mountains, we (can) see an amazing waterfall.
8. Tarek is worried because he (could) do well in his exams.
9. You (mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer.
10. You (not/should) say unkind things to people on social media.
11. My father (have to) go to work at 6 am tomorrow for a meeting.
12. I (not/have) get up early tomorrow because it is a holiday!



Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Samir has a problem with his laptop.

Salesperson: Hello. How can I help you?

Samir : (1).....

Salesperson: (2).....?

Samir : I can't turn on my laptop. It suddenly turned off although (3).....

Salesperson: Don't worry. We will check it.

Samir : (4).....?

Salesperson: You can take it tomorrow afternoon.

Samir : I hope (5).....

Salesperson: Of course, we will make sure there is no problem with the battery.

Samir : Thank you very much.



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

discovered – dyslexia – results – when – since – hoped

My cousin was born in a village. He loved drawing (1)..... he was a child. But, when he was five, his parents (2)..... that he didn't like reading and writing. They knew that he had (3)..... After that, he got help at school and began to understand more. Later, he was happy when he started to achieve good (4).....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool. But have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called yellow fever. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.

We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than

other rooms! Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about
a) how ice is made
b) how to keep food cool
c) fridges in the USA
d) keeping people cool when they get sick
2. John Gorrie invented a machine that
a) made ice
b) kept food cool
c) made people ill
d) cooked food
3. The fridges we have today are
a) old and big
b) noisy and making the room hot
c) moving all the time
d) working non-stop

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Describe how people came to use the fridge at their homes today.
.....
5. Why do you think that places which sold meat started to have fridges by 1900?
.....
6. Do you think people will continue to develop the fridge? What other things can people make better?
.....



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Trying to think only about the present helps you relax. Relax is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) lie b) rest c) work d) test
2. The government is going to renew more schools. What is the suffix used to change the verb "renew" into an adjective?
a) -al b) -non c) -able d) -dis
3. It wasn't a dream. I was awake. The antonym of "awake" is ".....".
a) slow b) above c) fast d) asleep

4. A lodger is someone who
a) builds a room in a house b) owns a house
c) pays rent for a room in a house d) keeps a room
5. The medical team helped everyone in the village. They really
a difference to the people's lives.
a) helped b) made
c) drove d) caught
6. Our school has a staff of 30. "Staff" here means the
a) buildings of our school
b) number of students in our school
c) group of people working in our school
d) number of classes in our school

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The film is (bore); I don't want to continue watching it.
2. Have you ever (drive) a car?
3. The homework is almost done. You (have to) stay up late.
4. Reading is my favourite hobby. I think it's (useful) than watching TV.
5. None of my friends (be) going to travel to Alex.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following:

1. An article about how to help people in your community.
2. A biography about the person you like most.
3. A paragraph on one of the achievements and what you did to achieve it.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 3

Final Exams



22 Governorates Exams

اختبارات المحافظات وعددهم ٢٢

4 Al-Azhar Exams

اختبارات الأزهر وعددهم ٤

2 Inclusive Exams

اختبارات الدمج وعددهم ٢

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mazen is making a complaint.

Assistant : Hello. How can I help you?

Mazen : (1)

Assistant : A complaint! (2)?

Mazen : I want to change the new television.

Assistant : Why do you want to change it?

Mazen : (3)

Assistant : (4)?

Mazen : I bought it last week.

Assistant : Do you have the receipt to change it?

Mazen : (5)

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

medicine – works – role – campaigner – rule – worked

4

Dr Magdy Yacoub is my (1) model. He did a lot of achievements in (2) He is a (3) for people who have heart diseases. He (4) in England many years ago.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

We were very tired from all the work we had done before. All of us were awake all the time. Finally, we got to our destination. We had reached the space station. We had so much to do every day on our ship.

Now there would be more people to help us. We would be on a team. We moved into the space station, I felt great. There were many beds to sleep in. We would have better food. The six astronauts on the space station were happy to see us. **"They"**

have been waiting and we were glad to see them, too. We had a good dinner then we were going to sleep, but one of the astronauts said, "Each person has to take turns staying awake for twenty hours".

I became an astronaut so that I could travel in space. It is hard work. It's even more challenging than I expected.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- station is the name of their destination.
a) Sun b) Space c) Moon d) Sky
- Each person mustn't for twenty hours.
a) wake up b) get up c) sleep d) awaken
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) astronauts b) beds c) station d) hours

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the astronaut feel great?

.....

5. How many astronauts were there on the space station first?

.....

6. Is it difficult or easy to be an astronaut? Why/Why not?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- A is the area in a station where you get on or off a train.
a) park b) platform c) school d) garden
- Teachers should always support their students. The antonym of the verb "support" is ".....".
a) encourage b) assist c) discourage d) help
- To is to put electricity into something such as a phone.
a) fill b) decorate c) change d) charge

4. Omnia bought a kettle on a special offer. This means she got a
a) present b) discount c) prize d) gift
5. Karim pays for a room to live in a house with its owner. This means he is a/an
a) lodger b) owner c) seller d) tenant
6. We add the suffix "....." to get the noun for "polite".
a) -ness b) -ment c) -ly d) -ed

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We studied hard, so we (able) to get high marks last year.
2. It is cloudy. I think it (go) to rain.
3. It is (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.
4. I want to buy (either) food and drink.
5. They've known each other (since) a long time.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review on what you should and shouldn't do at school"

1
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
 8
 9
 10
 11
 12
 13
 14
 15
 16
 17
 18
 19
 20
 21
 22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65
 66
 67
 68
 69
 70
 71
 72
 73
 74
 75
 76
 77
 78
 79
 80
 81
 82
 83
 84
 85
 86
 87
 88
 89
 90
 91
 92
 93
 94
 95
 96
 97
 98
 99
 100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525



Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Leila wants to buy a present for her mother.

Leila : Good morning!

Seller : Good morning! Can I help you?

Leila : (1).....

Seller : (2).....?

Leila : I want to buy a microwave.

Seller : A small or a big one?

Leila : A big one (3).....?

Seller : It is 3000 pounds. Is it OK?

Leila : (4)....., thank you.

Seller : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

stay – hot – traffic – weather – tourists – staying

4

It is my first visit to Egypt. My friends advised me to go to Alexandria. It is summer, but it is not very (1)..... there, so many (2)..... go at this time. Now I'm (3)..... in a hotel near the sea. There is little (4)..... in the streets because it is Friday, so I enjoyed the fine weather there.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Dear Peter,

Hi, I hope you are well. I'm sorry that I haven't sent you emails recently because we were busy moving back to our village after "The Decent Life Initiative" has improved it.

Let me tell you first what "Decent Life Initiative" means. It means a project to develop all the villages of Egypt.

In my new village now, we have a primary, a preparatory and a secondary school. I do not have to walk kilometres to go to my school every day.

The facilities are the best thing in our community, we have great shops and many job chances. The new health care centre has modern equipment. We have playgrounds where we can play volleyball, basketball and football. There is a place where families can enjoy being outside together. Now, we really live a happy decent life.

Yours,
Emad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is ".....".
a) Our village schools b) Our village improvement
c) Our village bad facilities d) Our village bad playgrounds
- The best thing in Emad's community is the
a) facilities b) roads c) teachers d) students
- Emad is a/an
a) doctor b) student c) engineer d) player

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why couldn't Emad send emails to Peter recently?

.....

5. Summarise the improvements of Emad's village.

.....

6. After 5 years, what do you think the villages of Egypt will be?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- A is something that you use in the kitchen to boil water.
a) fridge b) TV c) kettle d) radio
- We can make a noun from the verb "sell" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ment b) -er c) -ist d) -ness
- The antonym of the word "dangerous" is ".....".
a) serious b) unsafe c) difficult d) safe

4. The laptop I ordered online was broken, so I made a
a) complaint b) deal c) book d) shop
5. A/An is a place where children without parents live.
a) club b) orphanage
c) botanical garden d) sports centre
6. People left the party early because it was
a) excited b) worried c) interesting d) boring

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I like neither the red shirt (or) the blue one.
2. I usually visit my grandparents (at) Fridays.
3. Smartphones are (popular) than the old ones.
4. A scientist has to (did) researches to help people.
5. Last year, I (be/not) a good swimmer.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a person you like"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Magdy wants to buy a new mobile phone.

Shop assistant : Hello! How can I help you?

Magdy : (1).....

Shop assistant : What kind of mobile do you want?

Magdy : (2).....

Shop assistant : (3).....?

Magdy : It's great! How much is it?

Shop assistant : (4).....

Magdy : Here you are.

Shop assistant : (5).....?

Magdy : No, thanks.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

importance – physical – bullying – more – important – most

Teenagers around the world have a lot of problems. One of these problems is (1) which has a bad effect on teenagers. It's (2) to keep in mind that there are different kinds of bullying. They are (3) , verbal, emotional bullying and cyberbullying. Physical bullying is the (4) common form of bullying. We need to keep the teenagers aware of such bullies and teach them how to ask for help.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use them a lot in medicine nowadays.

With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be got quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are widely used in science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best title of the passage is ".....".
a) The disadvantages of computers
b) Computers are useless
c) Computers endanger the world
d) The importance of computers
2. The underlined pronoun "them" in the second paragraph refers to
a) calculations b) computers c) memories d) human beings
3. Computers can store amounts of information.
a) few b) little c) great d) a few

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why are computers more efficient than human beings?
.....
5. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.
.....
6. Do you think computers will control the world one day? Why/ Why not?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On Fridays early morning, the streets are very peaceful. The synonym of the word "peaceful" is ".....".
a) careful b) terrible c) quiet d) noisy
2. The suffix "....." forms an adjective of the word "tradition".
a) -ed b) -al c) -ly d) -able
3. mean services, such as electricity, natural gas or water to help the members of the community.
a) Difficulties b) Healthy services
c) Individual differences d) Public services

4. Finding out some new information about something means
a) discovering b) volunteering c) inventing d) deciding
5. Our school team came first in the tournament. This means it won the
a) text b) championship c) speech d) equipment
6. People can communicate with each other all over the world. This means they use
a) darkness b) maps
c) books d) social network services

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The government (build) our new school next summer.
Everything has been arranged.
2. I think English is the (good) subject. I like it most.
3. Rasha (not/see) her mum since she was 5 years old.
4. Our first lesson (starting) at 8 o'clock.
5. Kamal (not/invited) his cousin to his wedding last month.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story of a day you spent in the park with your family"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Shady is talking with his friend Amir about a prize medal.

Shady : What's in your hand, Amir?

Amir : It's a medal. I got it as a prize.

Shady : (1)?

Amir : I got it for writing the best story this year.

Shady : (2)?

Amir : The story is about successful people, how they think and work.

Shady : How long did it take you to write this story?

Amir : (3) Would you like to read it?

Shady : (4) How do you get the ideas for your stories?

Amir : (5) There, you can find a lot of useful websites.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

football – sleep – musical – horse – slept – how

4

Last week, I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most of them have played a (1) instrument. A few people have ridden a (2) Not many people in my class have (3) in a tent. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane. Half of the students in the class haven't been to a (4) match.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Colours are all around us. People see things in colour. The primary colours are red, green, yellow and blue. Each colour may be dark or light. Each person has his own favourite colour. Colours decide how people feel and think about the world around them. When people see their favourite colour, they feel happy and comfortable. Colours may make us positive about things we buy or the company

that makes them. People like different colours in clothes, cars, vegetables, fruit, accessories and shoes. Sometimes, colours help us organise our life, like the colours of traffic lights.

However, some people have a problem with colours. They have colour blindness. This means they find it difficult to tell you for sure that something is green, brown or red. Some animals see things in black and white. Some other animals, like the spiders, can see some colours that people cannot see. Cats and dogs can see blue and green light better than people.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about
a) problems b) lights c) companies d) colours
2. The colours people see may be
a) dark or light b) short or long
c) easy or difficult d) big or small
3. can see some colours that people cannot see.
a) Cats b) Dogs c) Spiders d) Bats

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What problem do some people have with colours?
.....
5. How do cats and dogs see blue and green light?
.....
6. How do you think colours can organise our life?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is someone who offers his work for no money.
a) A space scientist b) A volunteer
c) An engineer d) A sports champion
2. is something you plan for and hope to do in the future.
a) A country b) A century c) A kettle d) A goal

3. When my uncle called me late at night, I was not sleeping. I was studying.
- a) awake b) interesting c) negative d) noisy
4. My brother has got a scholar-..... to a university in England.
- a) -ment b) -ship c) -ance d) -ness
5. In the early morning, it sometimes becomes foggy on the roads. "Foggy" here means "It is to see".
- a) easy b) nice c) difficult d) wonderful
6. Good friends usually support you all the time. "Support" here is like ".....".
- a) go and come b) eat and drink
- c) play and relax d) help and encourage

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The first train from Tanta to Cairo (leave) at 5:30 am.
2. The (expensive) thing in my kitchen is the fridge.
3. Our class has a plan. Groups of the class (do) new projects next.
4. Have you ever (cook) a meal for the family?
5. I was (excite) to watch the new film last night.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of someone you know"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Usama wants to make a complaint because he ordered a microwave online, but it hasn't arrived.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Usama : (1)

Assistant : Oh dear! What's wrong?

Usama : (2)

Assistant : (3)

Usama : I made the order three weeks ago.

Assistant : (4)

Usama : OK. I'm Usama and the order number is 18976.

Assistant : I'll call the delivery company to know the problem. Then I'll call you back.

Usama : (5)

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

special – advice – Initiative – none – both – with

Last month, our English teacher asked us to write a paragraph about the Decent Life (1) I went to the school library (2) my friend Ali. There were two librarians. They were wonderful. They gave us some useful (3) on how to use the internet to find more information. They were helpful and I thanked (4) of them.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

How old will you be in 2030? Do you think life will be different then? Do you think you will have the skills that help you to face life challenges? To be ready for the future, you have to improve your skills like computing skills, problem solving communication and self-learning.

You should be ready physically for work and life by eating healthy food, doing exercise and having enough sleep at night. Your body needs food, exercise and sleep. It is also necessary to be ready by working hard to succeed and get the knowledge which helps you to enjoy your life.

It is also necessary to be open to different cultures and accept different points of view. They might be better than your own opinion. A successful person should be flexible. In addition, technology controls our life. That is why we should improve our technical skills. Once you have improved all these skills, you will be prepared for future jobs as well as future life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A successful person has to be
a) physically strong b) hard working
c) flexible d) all of them
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) challenges b) technical skills c) points of view d) cultures
3. will help you to enjoy your life.
a) Knowledge b) Challenges c) Competitions d) Contests

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does your body need to be ready for life and work?

.....

5. What skills do you think are needed for future jobs?

.....

6. Why should you improve your technical skills?

.....

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

1. is when unkind or cruel things are said about someone online.
a) Advert b) Biography c) Scholarship d) Cyberbullying
2. A/An is a person whose job is to try to change the way people do things in society.
a) driver b) campaigner c) artist d) pilot
3. To get the adjective from the noun "comfort", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ian b) -ical c) -able d) -ous

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Eman is back from school and her mother is opening the door.

Mother : Hi, Eman, how was your day at school?

Eman : (1).....

Mother : (2).....?

Eman : Because my best friend, Fayrouz felt ill suddenly.

Mother : (3).....?

Eman : During the science lesson.

Mother : What made her feel ill?

Eman : (4).....

Mother : Bad food! You should visit her and you can buy her some flowers.

Eman : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

water – countries – neither – land – cities – both

Sinai in Egypt is home to many attractions, activities, fascinating wildlife both on (1)..... and in the sea, amazing (2)..... such as Dahab, Sharm El-Sheikh and so much more. The Sinai attractions provide you with the chance to explore (3)..... the beauty of the desert and its geographical wonders alongside the Red Sea with its cool (4).....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Electricity is an essential part of our daily lives. People use electricity for lighting, heating, cooling, and refrigeration and for operating computers, electronics, machinery and public transportation systems. Most electricity is generated from non-renewable sources, such as coal and natural gas. Efforts are being made to produce more electricity from solar, wind and nuclear sources so that the natural sources can be saved.

There are many small steps in which we can save electricity. In summer, find times when you can open up the windows for air and cooling instead of switching on the air conditioners or fans. Use energy-saving bulbs as they are brighter and use much less electricity. When you are not charging electronic devices, disconnect them. Most importantly, installing solar panels can help you because they help in saving a lot of energy. Finally, some small changes in each home can make **a big difference** to the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
 a) Both water and electricity are essential to our lives, so we have to save them
 b) Using natural resources is important to generate electricity and to increase pollution
 c) Electricity is important in modern life, so we must save it
 d) The world will lose its light if there is no gold
- We should as they are brighter and use much less electricity.
 a) not use fans or bulbs
 b) use energy-saving bulbs
 c) use energy-saving bombs
 d) not use solar panels
- According to the passage "**a big difference**" means
 a) change things in a good way
 b) help in playing with electricity
 c) help you to save water
 d) change things in a comic way

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why can't life be imagined without electricity?

- Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.

- Would you like to use solar panels in your future house? Why/ Why not?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An is a place where you can play volleyball, tennis and other sports.
 a) monument b) sports centre c) aquarium d) bank
- To is to find or find out something that people didn't know before.
 a) receive b) intend c) discover d) pass
- The synonym of the word "quickly" is
 a) slowly b) lately c) widely d) fast

4. We went to the exhibit and saw many paintings. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive b) -ment c) -ion d) -ous
5. They put many colourful papers and balloons on the walls. They the walls.
a) decorated b) painted c) charged d) imagined
6. To have the same chances in life as other people means to have equal
a) sights b) opportunities c) pleasure d) opinions

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona usually visits her grandparents (in) the weekend.
2. We (be) married for over 50 years.
3. As I (give) my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.
4. My mother told me that I (not/able) to speak until I was about 4.
5. I was (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of your role model"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Soha and Sama are chatting about a programme shown on TV.

Soha : Did you watch last Friday's programme about space travel?

Sama : (1).....

Soha : (2).....?

Sama : Because I have no interest in space travel.

Soha : (3).....?

Sama : I am interested in sports.

Soha : Which sport do you like best?

Sama : (4).....

Soha : Where do you practise it?

Sama : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

4

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

bags – shells – better – artists – carpets – best

Egyptian handicrafts are very famous around the world. Egyptian (1)..... make different beautiful things. They make jewellery boxes decorated with (2)..... They also make high-quality leather (3)..... These products are the (4)..... quality all over the world. A lot of people everywhere are interested in buying them.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Last month, my parents decided to take me to Port Said. They said we were going to have a wonderful time on the beach. Mother suggested we would go shopping for half an hour before going to the beach. We agreed and went to El-Nahda Street which was a wonderful place for buying clothes and souvenirs

at reasonable prices. It was full of small shops and department stores where you could find almost anything you wanted. She said I needed a pullover for the winter and a skirt.

Well, we started walking. There were so many lovely items that we forgot all about going to the beach. After a long tour, we were able to buy some of our needs. Noon came and we decided to have lunch at a restaurant. Then, we went back to the same street. Mother saw a marvellous Chinese carpet and stood amazed in front of it. She insisted on buying it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "reasonable" means
a) boring b) good c) expensive d) upset
2. The family spent on the beach.
a) noon b) one hour c) two hours d) no time
3. Mother likes most.
a) shopping b) walking c) eating d) running

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What was my parents' plan for the journey?
.....
5. Why do you think they went back to El-Nahda Street?
.....
6. Give a suitable title to the passage.
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

1. We add the suffix "-ive" to the verb "create" to form a/an
a) noun b) pronoun c) adjective d) adverb
2. You should tell your parents if someone tries to you online.
a) cyberbully b) support c) encourage d) help
3. My is to be a successful scientist in the future.
a) concert b) competition c) volunteer d) dream

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hala is talking to Abeer about an interesting book.

Abeer: Hello, Hala. What are you doing?

Hala : (1)

Abeer: (2)?

Hala : It's called *David Copperfield*.

Abeer: Is it interesting?

Hala : (3)

Abeer: (4)?

Hala : It was written by Charles Dickens.

Abeer: Can you lend me this book when you have finished reading it?

Hala : (5)

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

is – places – messages – Pyramids – are – ancient

I have three friends in England. I usually send them (1) One of them (2) going to visit Cairo next year. We have some arrangements. We are visiting the (3), temples and the Egyptian Museum which are full of (4) treasures of the pharaohs.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Travel has become much easier than ever before. People began to go on journeys all over the world much more often than they used to in the past. Now, at the start of the new century, travel has become a major industry. Some people travel on business, while others go abroad to study. But by far, the greatest number of people who travel to other countries are tourists. Tourists visit other countries to spend their holidays there to see the world and to observe another culture.

Tourism is one of the fastest-growing industries in the world today. When people travel to another country, they spend money there: in hotels, in restaurants and on buying souvenirs. This is good for the economy of the country they are visiting.

Making friends with people from other countries is another benefit of tourism because this is one of the ways in which people of different races and cultures can begin to understand each other.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about ".....".
a) Benefits of travel b) Making friends
c) Staying in hotels d) Eating in restaurants
- Making friends can be another benefit of tourism because
a) people can forget each other
b) people can understand each other
c) people can misunderstand each other
d) people can remember each other
- The underlined pronoun "their" refers to
a) tourists b) countries c) journeys d) centuries

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why did people begin to go on holidays all over the world more often?
.....
- Summarise the last paragraph in the text in one sentence.
.....
- Do you think, tourism is good for the economy of the country? Why? Why not?
.....



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- A/An is a place for looking after orphan children.
a) garden b) station c) orphanage d) aquarium
- "....." is the unkind things we say or write about someone online.
a) Texting b) Suggesting c) Thinking d) Cyberbullying
- It was a dream as I was asleep. The antonym of "asleep" is
a) fast b) awake c) dead d) wake

4. To make a noun from the word "inform", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -tion b) -ation c) -al d) -less
5. Huge tankers carry oil across seas and oceans. A tanker is a kind of
a) animal b) ship c) railway d) meal
6. She feels upset because she has an important exam. The word "upset" means ".....".
a) worried b) calm c) peaceful d) quiet

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Could Maher (swam) when he was five?
2. The museum is (amaze)! There are so many old things here.
3. Neither Adel nor Amr (be) in the club yesterday.
4. Luxor plane (arriving) at 9:30.
5. My father (have) this car since I was a child.

Writing

- 6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of online shopping"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Manal is asking for her teacher's help.

Manal : Good morning, Mr Ali. (1)

Mr Ali : Good morning, Manal. (2)?

Manal : I don't know how to deal with the "Reading" task.

Mr Ali : First, (3)

Manal : OK. What should I do after guessing the meaning of the new words?

Mr Ali : Try to read it at a normal speed—neither fast nor slowly.

Manal : (4)?

Mr Ali : After that, you should summarise the main idea of each paragraph.

Manal : OK, sir. Thank you for being kind and patient.

Mr Ali : (5)

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

has – share – is – together – time – place

A community is like a big family. It is a (1) where people live, work and play. People in a community help each other and work (2) to solve problems. They (3) roads, parks and buildings. Everyone in the community (4) a special part to play.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Omar and Aseel are very lucky. Their grandfather, Hussein lives with them. He's always ready to play games and read them stories. For the last few days, Grandpa Hussein has been staying away from Omar and Aseel. He leaves the room when they're around. He says, "I'm busy", when they ask him to play.

Finally, Omar and Aseel's father, Ali, asks Grandpa, "Hey Dad, what's the problem? You usually love to play with the kids. Why haven't you played with them for the last few days?"

Grandpa pulls out a small piece of paper from his pocket. It's a prescription for some pills that his doctor gave him. He gives it to his son and says, "Read this. That's why I can't play with the kids." Ali looks at the prescription and reads it. "Take 2 pills a day. KEEP AWAY FROM CHILDREN".

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title for the passage could be ".....".
a) Reading stories b) A kind grandfather
c) Playing games d) Noisy kids
- Grandpa can't play with the kids now because he is
a) ill b) busy c) sad d) kind
- The underlined pronoun "this" in the last paragraph refers to
a) the doctor b) Mr Ali
c) Mr Hussein d) the prescription

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why does Grandfather, Hussein, leave the room when the kids are around?
.....
- Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence of your own.
.....
- Do you think Hussein will play with the kids again? Give a reason.
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We add the suffix "-ly" to the word "friend" to form a/an ".....".
a) adverb b) adjective c) preposition d) verb
- Tourists come to Egypt to the wonderful natural world.
a) express b) excite c) exist d) experience
- A is a building where interesting and valuable objects are kept.
a) museum b) monument c) memory d) medal

4. Please, food to people who don't have enough.
a) plant b) repair c) donate d) make
5. Handicrafts help us to earn money. "....." is the antonym of "earn".
a) Gain b) Lose c) Deliver d) Win
6. A/An is a prize that a person is given for doing something well.
a) card b) word c) board d) award

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (For) I started my job, I've worked with hundreds of computers.
2. My uncle (live) in Zagazig for 20 years. Now, he lives in Cairo.
3. Nayera (not/watch) TV while eating dinner. It is her habit.
4. (Both) you leave, or I will phone the police.
5. In addition to (is) beautiful, she's rich.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

“Which is better for you, life in a city or in a village?”

[illegible]

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about their favourite hobbies.

Ahmed : What do you do in your free time, Ali?

Ali : I often read.

Ahmed : Wonderful! (1).....?

Ali : I love reading short stories. (2).....?

Ahmed : I have only one hobby, (3).....

Ali : Fishing! Oh good for you. I may give it a try sometimes.

Ahmed : (4).....

Ali : OK. I will wait for your call.

Ahmed : Thank you.

Ali : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

memories – life – care – happiness – cares – sadness

A true friend is the person who (1)..... for you. He will always want your
(2)..... . A life without a good friend is empty. Friendship will fill you with
(3)..... that you can remember for the rest of your (4)..... .

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Ismailia mango festival is an annual event held in August. The governorate holds it to celebrate the mango season. Mango is one of the most beloved fruits in our country. The festival has many events such as road shows with mango-shaped cars, mango-cutting competitions and musical shows. The main events take place in Ismailia City, Gold Club and Mohamed Ali Street. They are open to the public for free.

The festival aims to create a memorable and enjoyable experience. It attracts more tourists and supports local businesses, hotels and industries. The festival is attended by VIPs including the city governor and ambassadors from all over the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The festival is held in
a) August b) September c) June d) July
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) the mango b) the festival c) Ismailia d) the governorate
3. The mango festival helps
a) education b) medicine c) camping d) business

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the text?
.....
5. How does the governorate celebrate?
.....
6. Do you think that the festival is useful for the city? Why/ Why not?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

1. To means to help and encourage someone.
a) receive b) support c) fail d) disappoint
2. An is something that happens to you in your life.
a) experiment b) expert c) experience d) exercise
3. It wasn't a dream. I was awake. The antonym of "awake" is ".....".
a) asleep b) fast c) noisy d) slow
4. The government is going to renew more schools. The suffix "....." changes the verb "renew" into an adjective.
a) -ly b) -able c) -ment d) -tion



Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed meets a tourist in a shopping centre.

Ahmed : Good morning, sir. Where are you from?

Tourist : I'm from Canada.

Ahmed : (1).....?

Tourist : Yes, this is my first visit to Egypt.

Ahmed : Which places would you like to visit?

Tourist : (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Tourist : I am going to stay here for two weeks.

Ahmed : What Egyptian foods have you tried?

Tourist : (4).....

Ahmed : Have a nice stay in Egypt.

Tourist : (5).....



Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

the better – the best – role – rule – creative – championships

4

I love my grandma very much. She is my (1) model in life. For me, she is (2) person in the world. When she was young, she used to take part in (3) and she won many medals and prizes. She always encourages me to be (4) I believe her to be my hero.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

My name is Tarek. I do well in school and people think I am smart because of it. But it's not true. In fact, three years ago, I had some hard time at school. I used to watch video games and waste most of my time playing and chatting with my friends. However, I decided to get serious about school and made a few changes. First, I decided I would become interested in whatever I learn. Then I started to

4. You need a for your smartphone or personal computer to maintain your privacy and safety.
a) passage b) passport c) passenger d) password
5. The word "appear" can be a noun by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ition b) -ance c) -ation d) -ness
6. When I was little, my parents that I had dyslexia.
a) covered b) discovered c) uncovered d) recovered

a) passage

b) passport

c) passenger

d) password

5. The word "appear" can be a noun by adding the suffix "_____".

a) -ition

b) -ance

c) -ation

d) -ness

6. When I was little, my parents that I had dyslexia.

a) covered

b) discovered

c) uncovered

d) recovered

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Neither of those necklaces (be) cheap.
2. Last week, Aya played the guitar in two concerts. She was (amaze).
3. You (must) tell anyone about your friend's secret. I advise you.
4. The first metro train (leave) at 6:30.
5. Haythem hasn't created any apps (already).

2. Last week, Aya played the guitar in two concerts. She was (amaze).

3. You (must) tell anyone about your friend's secret. I advise you.

4. The first metro train (leave) at 6:30.

5. Haythem hasn't created any apps (already).

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of your community"

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about STEM schools.

Ahmed : Have you ever heard about STEM schools, Ali?

Ali : (1).....

Ahmed : (2).....?

Ali : It represents Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths.

Ahmed : (3).....?

Ali : Teachers help students through the projects they do.

Ahmed : Do you think there will be more STEM schools in Egypt in the future?

Ali : (4).....

Ahmed : Thanks a lot.

Ali : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

peaceful – when – while – flight – railway – journey

4

Egypt has the oldest (1) in Africa. I like travelling by train because it is very interesting to look out of the window. I take the train (2) I want to visit my grandfather in Upper Egypt. In the (3), you can see ferries crossing the Nile, green valleys, (4) villages and busy cities.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Should we work all the time without having a rest? The answer is that we can't continue working without stopping. From time to time, we need some rest to do some interesting activities. If we don't do that, we can make mistakes and our work might get worse. If we work all the time, we may lose the ability to think clearly and have no energy to continue working, so sleeping is very important. It renews our energy. Sports and games are also important, especially for people who stay in closed offices and are not able to do exercise.

Some activities such as swimming and walking may give them a lot of energy, so we shouldn't waste our weekends. We should try to forget all about our work, we can then enjoy ourselves.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Working all the time without stopping makes us feel
a) happy b) tired c) healthy d) strong
2. We should during the weekends.
a) forget our work b) work more
c) stay in offices d) make mistakes
3. Some activities give you more energy such as
a) sleeping and smoking
b) watching TV and playing computer games
c) swimming and walking
d) eating and staying home

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How can we renew our energy?
.....
5. Summarise the second paragraph of the text in one sentence.
.....
6. Do you think that having a rest is very important?
.....



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

1. The President started the Decent Life for people who live in villages.
a) Effect b) Initiative c) Festival d) Machine
2. A/An is something you make when you are unhappy about something.
a) complaint b) email c) order d) list
3. "....." gives the antonym of "hide".
a) Leave b) See c) Show d) Use

4. To make the negative form of "polite", we add the prefix ".....".

- a) un- b) in- c) im- d) em-

5. The photograph was taken half a century ago. It was taken years ago.

- a) fifteen b) fifty c) a hundred d) five

6. Our school has a staff of 30. "Staff" here means ".....".

- a) workers b) buildings c) classes d) subjects

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. Huda has already (cuts) the meat.
2. While he (sleep), the doorbell rang.
3. He (join) a sports club. This is his plan.
4. The film was terrible, I think it was the (bad) film I've ever seen.
5. She doesn't (has to) take the umbrella.



Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

7

"A short story of a famous Egyptian person you like most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nader is talking to Ali about his favourite sport.

Nader : What is your favourite sport, Ali?

Ali : (1).....

Nader : Did you watch the last World Cup matches?

Ali : (2).....

Nader : (3).....?

Ali : I felt happy to see all these wonderful preparations.

Nader : (4).....?

Ali : I watched the final match at home with my family.

Nader : What are your hopes for the Egyptian national football team?

Ali : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

greatly – discount – university – was – clever – were

Mona is a clever girl. She got a scholarship at a (1) in the USA to study electronics. She was chosen because she is a (2) computer programmer. Mona (3) able to create an app that helped doctors (4) After university, she returned to Egypt to help more people.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Education is the most important thing in our life. First of all, education gives us the ability to read and write. It helps us to understand the world around us. If people are well-educated, they can know their duties and rights quite well. With the help of education, we can develop new ways for a better life. A good education is extremely essential for everyone to learn and succeed in life.

Everyone has the right to a good education to achieve their goals in life. Everyone has their own dreams of being somebody important in the community. Parents also dream that their kids will have good professions like doctors, engineers, officers, or any of the other important professions. They always have high hopes for their children. Education doesn't only offer a good job but also helps to understand life from a different point of view. All our goals can be achieved through education. Education improves the quality of life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about
a) life b) education c) professions d) universe
2. With the help of education, we can new ways for a better life.
a) draw b) delete c) develop d) damage
3. Education helps people to get professions.
a) low b) bad c) cruel d) good

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
.....
5. How do parents like their kids to be?
.....
6. Do you agree with the writer that good education is important for everyone?
Why/ Why not?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a message that you send electronically.
a) website b) order c) email d) blog
2. Lots of went to the stadium to watch the final match.
a) competitions b) designs c) discounts d) spectators
3. A mechanic repaired our car last week. The synonym of "repair" is ".....".
a) text b) fix c) care d) mix

- 4.** To get the opposite of the word "agree", we add the prefix ".....".
a) dis- b) im- c) un- d) in-
- 5.** Everyone likes Mohamed Salah, the footballer. He is a person.
a) horrible b) popular c) dangerous d) boring
- 6.** That man works with a charity to help old people. That means he is a
a) gymnast b) customer c) volunteer d) bully

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother (able) fix the computer yesterday.
2. I have never (win) a competition at school.
3. Today's English lesson was very (interested). I learnt a lot.
4. The train (arrive) in Luxor at seven o'clock every day.
5. It is (good) to buy clothes in shops than online.

Writing

- 6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of helping people in your community"

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Basel is booking a train ticket to Aswan.

Ticket officer: Good evening, sir. How can I help you?

Basel : (1) How much is it?

Ticket officer : (2)

Basel : (3)?

Ticket officer : The train to Aswan leaves at 9:30.

Basel : (4)?

Ticket officer : The journey takes three hours.

Basel : Which platform does the train leave from?

Ticket officer : (5)

Basel : Thank you very much.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

good – floors – ferries – streets – better – expensive

4

Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram to travel around the city. It is easy to use and it isn't (1) Trams are electric, so they are (2) for the environment than any other types of transport. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual. They have two (3) I like sitting at the top and watching the (4) below.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Magdy Abdel Sayed is a campaigner for people who are disabled. He has been disabled all his life. He has done lots of amazing things, yet he has had lots of **challenges**. When he was a child, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people. Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good education too. They found a school for him afterwards and he was an excellent student. Although, he faced so many challenges, he never stopped trying. He always believed that having difficulties does not mean you cannot reach your goals. He won an award from Cambridge University.

He also believed in helping people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for charities. Now, he works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title for the text is ".....".
a) The disabled and challenges b) The disabled and universities
c) The disabled and charities d) The disabled and equipment
- The underlined word "challenges" in the passage is close in meaning to
a) parents b) years c) difficulties d) awards
- Magdy wanted to help other people. As a result, he works as a
a) teacher b) volunteer c) professor d) doctor

B) Answer the following questions:

- Infer how Magdy's parents were good.
.....
- In two sentences, summarise the second paragraph in your own words.
.....
- If you work in a charity, what would you do?
.....

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- A is a new, very fast form of transport that travels above the ground.
a) motorcycle b) motorbike c) hyperloop d) school bus
- We are going from Cairo to Luxor. Luxor is our
a) invitation b) destination c) education d) invention
- Noha bought a computer and got free headphones. This means she got a
a) poster b) website c) special offer d) microwave

- 4.** We add the suffix "....." to turn the word "wood" into an adjective.
a) -en **b)** -ly **c)** -ian **d)** -ful
- 5.** Waleed can repair his bike. The antonym of the word "repair" is
a) drive **b)** damage **c)** mend **d)** fix
- 6.** To means to say unkind or cruel words about someone online.
a) joke **b)** breath **c)** relax **d)** cyberbully

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the (easy) exam I have ever done.
2. (Have) he ever forgotten your birthday party?
3. You must watch this film. It (start) at nine this evening.
4. I saw my friend in the park while he (read) a book.
5. The match was (bored), so I stopped watching it.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Omar and Karim are talking about working for charities.

Omar : Hello, Karim! Pleased to meet you.

Karim : (1).....

Omar : What do you think of working for charities?

Karim : (2).....

Omar : Do you work for a charity?

Karim : (3).....

Omar : (4).....?

Karim : I help the elderly people there.

Omar : (5).....?

Karim : I usually work there at the weekends.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

However – monuments – Furthermore – peaceful – adventure – directions

Visiting different places is one of the best things you can do. It is a great

(1) A lot of people come to Egypt to visit the ancient (2)

in Luxor and Aswan. Also, Egypt has wonderful and (3) places.

(4), you can ride boats and canoes on the Nile.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

When you help people, surely, one day, someone will help you. A shoemaker was very poor. However, he was kind and helpful. All people loved him. One day, there was nothing left in his house but leather for only one pair of shoes. He cut out the leather and left it on his bench to make the shoes. The next morning, he went into his shop to make it, but he found a pair of shoes nicely made and ready to be sold. He sold it. With the money, he bought leather for two pairs of

shoes. Then he said that he would make two pairs of shoes and sell them. He cut out the leather for the shoes and left it on his bench. The next morning, he found two pairs of shoes already made. They were well made. They were also sold very quickly. This thing happened more and more. Finally, he became happy and very rich. He could help a lot then.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is ".....".
a) Helping and kindness b) How to make shoes
c) Our community d) How to be poor
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ".....".
a) A pair of shoes b) The leather c) The house d) The bench
- At the end of the story, the shoemaker could support people.
a) much b) not many c) a few d) a lot of

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Do you think the shoemaker was a good man or a bad one?

.....

5. Why do you think he could sell the shoes very quickly?

.....

6. What do you think the shoemaker would become?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed called back. This means he a phone call.
a) ordered b) returned c) looked d) talked
- He was a great champion. The antonym of "champion" is ".....".
a) player b) winner c) beginner d) loser
- The students here have done something important. They have made a good
a) achievement b) mistake c) cyberbullying d) friend



4. The suffix " " turns the adjective "dark" into a noun.

- a) -ness b) -ous c) -ed d) -ing

5. A is something you make when you are unhappy about something.

- a) sale b) discount c) complaint d) competition

6. A is a long, narrow boat for one or two people.

- a) raft b) craft c) canoe d) ship

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

1. We are (start) a new project next Sunday. It's arranged.

2. The plane (take) off at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

3. I haven't drunk anything _____ (since) two hours.

4. We **(mustn't)** keep our password secret.

5. She has played in two concerts (yet).

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about the something you bought online"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hossam is asking Ali about his father's job.

Hossam : What's your father's job, Ali?

Ali : (1).....

Hossam : (2).....?

Ali : He works in a prep school.

Hossam : What does he teach?

Ali : (3).....

Hossam : Does he like his work?

Ali : (4).....

Hossam : (5).....?

Ali : No, I want to be a doctor.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

attractive – in – on – garden – population – heavy

My name is Salem and I live (1)..... Minia. It is in the middle of Egypt. The (2)..... of Minia is about 6 million people. If you come to Minia, you can visit many (3)..... places like the international (4)..... on the east bank of the Nile and wonderful monuments in Tal El-Amarna.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A lot of people admire famous persons such as scientists, film stars, sportsmen and writers. They love them and consider them role models, and often try to follow them. However, there are other heroes in our life. **They** may be less famous, but they play important roles in supporting their communities and providing a better life.

We should respect every active farmer who works hard from sunrise to sunset to grow our food, the brave soldier who is ready to die for his country; the clever doctor who works day and night to fight diseases and help sick people to become well; the honest teacher who works hard to prepare his students for a better life in the future; the good citizen who does social and voluntary work. All of these are good examples of the real heroes, who should get much love and respect.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is ".....".
a) Clever doctors b) Active farmers
c) Honest teachers d) Real heroes
- help their students to have a better life.
a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Soldiers
- We should always the heroes in our life.
a) forget b) respect c) dislike d) hate

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

5. Why should we respect soldiers?

.....

6. Who is your role model in life?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- The aquarium has different kinds of
a) cars b) buses c) ships d) fish
- A is a word that you type to log into a computer.
a) password b) keyboard c) letter d) mouse
- The of the word "formal" is "informal".
a) synonym b) antonym c) same d) meaning

4. A/An is a person who does work without getting money.
a) engineer b) pioneer c) volunteer d) mountaineer
5. To form the adjective from the verb "care", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ous c) -al d) -er
6. It was a real to answer all the questions.
a) speech b) challenge c) charge d) distance

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The computer is (expensive) than the phone.
2. As she (watch) the film, her mother was cooking lunch.
3. He is a (bore) person. I don't like to listen to him.
4. Nada (be) friends with Maha since they were children.
5. He has done his homework (yet).

Writing

- 6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about the holiday you had last summer"

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Fareeda and Huda are talking about shopping.

Fareeda : Yesterday, I went to the market.

Huda : (1)

Fareeda : I went with my mother.

Huda : What did you buy?

Fareeda : (2)

Huda : What colour is that carpet?

Fareeda : (3)

Huda : Oh, red is a wonderful colour. (4)

Fareeda : It's 200 pounds. Do you want to see it?

Huda : (5) Because I want to buy a carpet too.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

4

plane – community – and – rural – plan – nor

The Decent Life Initiative is a great (1) that helps people who live in (2) areas. It has made a difference to our (3) It aims to improve both public services (4) health care. We should support it.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Ali's father is a poor, clever fisherman who lives with his family in a simple house by the sea. Ali always goes fishing with his father. Once, he took their small boat and decided to go fishing by himself as his father was ill. Ali spent all the day at sea but he couldn't catch any fish. He began to feel sad and disappointed. However, he finally took off his clothes to have a swim and return home.

Unfortunately, his small wallet fell into the water with all his money in it. Ali jumped quickly into the water to look for his wallet but he couldn't find it. Instead, he could catch a huge fish. He carried it on his boat and went home. His father was happy with him, but Ali was still sad. Ali's mother started to cut the fish to make food for the family. Suddenly, she found her son's wallet inside the fish. She happily called her son and told him that the fish brought the wallet back for him.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Before returning home, Ali lost his
 a) boat b) wallet c) clothes d) shoes
- Ali's father isn't a fisherman.
 a) poor b) clever c) good d) rich
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) the fish b) the wallet c) the money d) the home

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Ali go fishing alone?

.....

5. When did Ali begin to feel sad and disappointed?

.....

6. Do you think the story ended happily? Why/ Why not?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- To people means to try to make them do something good.
 a) encourage b) disappoint c) create d) annoy
- A nature is a place for rare birds, plants and animals.
 a) revise b) receive c) reserve d) save
- She is a volunteer at a charity. She works for
 a) a lot of money b) much money c) some money d) no money

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Sara and Ali are talking about Ali's new mobile phone.

Sara : What a nice mobile phone! When did you buy it?

Ali : (1).....

Sara : How much is it?

Ali : (2).....

Sara : (3).....?

Ali : I bought it from a mobile shop.

Sara : (4).....?

Ali : Yes, it is a smartphone.

Sara : Can you come with me to get one?

Ali : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

at – on – weekend – Egyptian – pool – playground

On Friday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre (1).....
10 o'clock. Sometimes, I go swimming in the afternoon with my friends in
the swimming (2)..... There are some interesting museums in
Cairo. My favourite is the (3)..... Museum because I'm interested in
history. It's a good place to go at the (4).....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I was born in a small village near Qena. I lived in my village for twenty-five years, then I decided to travel and live in Cairo. Life in my village was really hard because there were no **facilities**. We didn't use to have electricity or clean water. After spending ten years in Cairo, I became a very successful businessman.

This year, I decided to go back to my village to see my family and friends again. When I first arrived, I thought I got lost. Everything in my village was different. There are new schools and hospitals. There are new facilities for disabled people. Houses are now provided with electricity and clean water. The streets are wider and cleaner now. My friends told me that they can find good jobs and they live a happy life now. They said that the "Decent Life Initiative" has improved their life. They asked me to come back and live with them again in the village.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The best title for the text is ".....".
 a) Decent Life Initiative b) Buying a house
 c) Trying a new food d) Winning a competition
- Omar is years old now.
 a) 30 b) 35 c) 40 d) 45
- The underlined word "facilities" means
 a) volunteers b) competitions c) public services d) jobs

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

- What are houses in the village provided with now?

- Do you think Omar will come back and live in the village again? Why/ Why not?

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3

- You can see beautiful fish at the
 a) botanical garden b) library c) bank d) aquarium
- A/An is an electronic message.
 a) order b) complaint c) letter d) email
- You should choose a peaceful place to study in. The synonym of "peaceful" is ".....".
 a) noisy b) quiet c) dirty d) ugly

A Language Functions

30

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Salma and Fatma are talking about a project on Charles Dickens.

Salma : Where can we get information about Charles Dickens?

Fatma : (1).....

Salma : (2).....?

Fatma : Yes, I have got some information about him.

Salma : Did he write famous novels?

Fatma : (3).....

Salma : How about meeting tomorrow to finish the project?

Fatma : (4).....

Salma : (5).....?

Fatma : At 5:00 p.m.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

important – healthier – physical – practise – healthiest – do

Nowadays, students spend long hours studying or working on computers. Therefore, they need the opportunity to do some (1)..... activity during the school day. This will help to increase their fitness and make them (2)..... . Sports should remain an (3)..... part of the school community. All children should be given the chance to (4)..... sports.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Once there was an old lady whose husband had died and left her a big fortune and two sons. The two sons got married and went to live abroad. She became too old to live alone and look after herself. She went to live in a hotel near the sea. This rich lady had a pair of ugly dogs. She loved them although **nobody else did**. After a year, a new young waiter came to work in the hotel. He began to do

everything to please the old lady. He helped her to get into and out of the car which she hired when she wanted to go for a drive. Also, he pretended to like her unpleasant dogs. He cleaned them and looked after them in his free time. He thought that the rich lady would leave him a lot of money when she would die. But, when she died a few years later, he discovered that she had left him only the two things which she loved most in the world and which she thought he loved **them** too, the two dogs. All her money and jewellery went to her sons.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The most suitable title for the passage is ".....".
 a) Dogs and cats b) Money and jewellery
 c) The old lady and the waiter d) The mother and her daughters
- The lady's sons lived their mother.
 a) near b) far from c) with d) next to
- Nobody else did.** The word "did" means nobody else the dogs.
 a) loved b) had c) hated d) cleaned

B) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to?

- For whom did the old lady leave her money and jewellery?

- Do you think the waiter was happy at the end of the story? Why/ Why not?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A means a good or cheap price.
 a) discount b) canoe c) deal d) handicraft
- When you become more calm and less worried, you
 a) order b) log in c) snorkel d) relax
- The word "....." has the same meaning of "encourage".
 a) include b) support c) make d) remain

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hassan and Karim are planning to meet up tomorrow.

Karim : Hi, Hassan. Would you like to visit El-Orman Garden with me?

Hassan : (1), I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.

Karim : (2) ..?

Hassan : Great, I wanted to visit the library.

Karim : (3) ..?

Hassan : I like reading exciting stories.

Karim : How can we go there?

Hassan : (4) ..

Karim : OK, we can meet tomorrow at the bus station.

Hassan : (5) ..

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

time – community – on – work – elderly – to

My friend and I are looking for some voluntary (1) We should all care about our (2) We want to help (3) people and young children (4) read. We can do that in our spare time. If you are interested, please contact us using our email address or call us.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Buying and selling is a part of everyday activities. People used to do this a long time ago. But shopping habits have changed a lot. In the past, you could deal directly with a person. These days, there is a new concept of shopping called "online shopping". Many people love to shop online which has many advantages. It saves time and effort. You can buy what you want anytime without moving. So, I decided to buy online. I ordered a microwave as a present for my mother on her birthday.

After two days, the delivery arrived at my house and I opened the box to put a new microwave in the kitchen. My mother was very happy with it because it was great and looked good in her kitchen and it was easy to use. It also made really delicious meals. The delivery was quick, too!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ".....".
a) Shopping in the mall b) Shopping online
c) Birthday party d) Buying a microwave
2. The writer bought a for his mother.
a) toaster b) kettle c) microwave d) coffee machine
3. Online shopping is useful because it
a) is expensive b) takes a long time
c) costs much money d) saves time and effort

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to?
.....
5. Do you think the writer's mother was happy? Why/ Why not?
.....
6. Summarise the second paragraph of the text in one sentence.
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a long seat for two people or more.
a) bed b) bench c) beach d) poster
2. To succeed in your exams means to them.
a) fail b) taste c) test d) pass
3. The synonym of the word "unhappy" is ".....".
a) stupid b) slow c) sad d) lazy
4. To make the opposite of the word "formal", we use the prefix ".....".
a) ir- b) in- c) dis- d) im-

5. The is a place where you can see beautiful fish.
a) bank b) aquarium c) museum d) restaurant
6. Our teacher always supports us. The word "supports" here means
a) dislikes b) hates c) encourages d) fights

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (not/finish) my homework yet.
2. Neither Nora nor Huda (like) washing the dishes.
3. The bank is (between) to the shopping centre.
4. Villagers are (exciting) to hear about the plan.
5. Laptops are (expensive) than kettles.

Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a place you visited"

[illegible]

A Language Functions

30

5

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Sohaila and Nada are talking about their future jobs.

Sohaila : Hi Nada, what would you like to be when you grow up?

Nada : Hi, Sohaila. (1).....

Sohaila : Wow! You would be amazing in the white coat,
(2).....?

Nada : I'd like to work in the city, I don't like the countryside.

Sohaila : I agree with you, the city is full of many facilities.

Nada : (3).....?

Sohaila : (4).....

Nada : Great, I work as a doctor and you will design computer programmes.

Sohaila : I hope our dreams come true.

Nada : (5).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

able – delivery – account – discount – online – could

4

I had a bad experience with (1) shopping. Two years ago, I ordered a smartwatch from a website. I chose my favourite model. They offered a big (2) Unfortunately, there was a delay in (3) It arrived after a month. Besides, when I saw it, I was shocked; it wasn't the same as the one I ordered. At last, I was (4) to cancel the order.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

Many people like physical challenges, they ask questions like, "How fast can I run?", "How high can I jump?". Because people enjoy challenges, they like to play sports and watch other people play them. They like climbing, running, swimming, lifting and so on.

There are many reasons why people enjoy these challenges. One is curiosity. Another is the personal feeling of success and achievement.

Some challenges are not physical but social or mental. Leonardo da Vinci, was an Italian artist who painted the famous picture "The Mona Lisa". Also Albert

Schweitzer. He was a French philosopher, physician and musician. So throughout history, people have accepted challenges. Today, we still have many challenges before us. Medical science faces the challenge of treating diseases. Engineers and planners must build new cities and new kinds of transport. Scientists must develop new forms of energy and there is always the challenge of space. We live in an age of challenges.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text can be
 a) treating diseases b) difficult sports
 c) physical and mental challenges d) new forms of energy
- Leonardo da Vinci was a/an
 a) artist b) carpenter c) doctor d) pilot
- The text mentioned persons.
 a) three b) four c) five d) two

B) Answer the following questions:

- Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

- Do you think people will face more challenges in the future? Why/ Why not?

- Why do some people enjoy climbing?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A/An is a place where we care for children with no parents.
 a) club b) stadium c) park d) orphanage
- I bought a shirt in the wrong size. The opposite of the word "wrong" is
 a) correct b) ugly c) bad d) funny
- The suffix "....." is added to the word "peace" to make it an adjective.
 a) -ment b) -ful c) -ness d) -tion
- means writing or pictures that people paint or draw on walls or buildings.
 a) Leaflets b) Gravity c) Graffiti d) Goods

5. I can't you in the game because you are still young.
a) contain b) include c) think d) dismiss
6. The contest in the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship has been fantastic. The word "contest" here means
a) cooperation b) competition c) organisation d) completion

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

1. The match between Egypt and Djibouti was (excite).
2. The train to Cairo (leave) at 6:30 p.m.
3. I (live) in Aswan since I was born.
4. Both Ali and his brother (be) good at English.
5. Heba hurt her leg badly and she (have) to see a doctor.

D

Writing

- 6** Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review for your school magazine on how to help your community"

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no text or other markings on the paper.

A Language Functions

30

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Kamal are talking about the wonders of Egypt.

Ahmed : Good morning, Kamal. Can I ask you a few questions?

Kamal : Good morning, Ahmed. Yes, of course.

Ahmed : (1).....?

- a) Why do tourists come to Egypt b) How long have tourists come to Egypt
c) How do tourists travel to Egypt d) When do tourists travel to Egypt

Kamal : To see the wonders of the ancient world.

Ahmed : Do we have ancient wonders in our country?

Kamal : (2).....

- a) Yes, we have hotels and restaurants b) Yes, we have rivers and lakes
c) Yes, we have farms and animals d) Yes, we have the Pyramids and temples

Ahmed : (3).....?

- a) What about the animals b) What about the food
c) What about the natural world d) What about pollution

Kamal : They can experience the natural world like the desert and the Red Sea.

Ahmed : What are the activities they can do by the Red Sea?

Kamal : (4).....

- a) Planting trees and growing crops b) Relaxing on the beach and snorkelling
c) Building new schools and hospitals d) Visiting the museum and the Cairo Tower

Ahmed : Great! Have you ever been snorkelling?

Kamal : (5).....

- a) Yes, and I saw beautiful coral reefs b) Yes, and I saw elephants and lions
c) Yes, and I played video games d) Yes, and I read books and magazines

B Vocabulary and Structure

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is something that people build to remind them of an important person or event.

- a) aquarium b) library c) monument d) mountain

2. As you are a/an, you have to ask customers what they want to buy.

- a) air host b) shop assistant c) programmer d) engineer

3. A "....." is something that you say or write when you are unhappy about something because you think it is wrong.
a) complaint b) camping c) championship d) cyberbullying
4. We add the suffix "-al" to the word "tradition" to give the
a) adjective b) verb c) noun d) adverb
5. "Contest" and "Competition" are
a) antonyms b) opposites c) synonyms d) adverbs
6. He has won the gold medal, so he must be very
a) unhappy b) worried c) angry d) proud

3 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. I think it is (the best) to buy clothes in shops than online.
a) good b) as good as c) better d) best
2. My friends (start) a new project next March. They have arranged everything.
a) have started b) are starting c) will start d) start
3. (Had) Jana ever forgotten her father's birthday?
a) Does b) Has c) Have d) Was
4. You (have to) say unkind words to people on social media.
a) oughtn't b) don't have c) shouldn't d) needn't

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Reading is my hobby. I read storybooks, magazines and newspapers. This hobby started when I was a little boy. My parents used to read fairy tales and other stories to me. I started reading with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would not know before. I learned about so many things that I would not know before. I learned about how people lived in the **olden** days of magic and mystery. I learned about the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things about our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about **it** in a book or on the internet. Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. It is indeed a good hobby.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To know about dangerous animals without having to go to a jungle, you can
 - a) read about them in a book or on the internet
 - b) go there to see them yourself
 - c) ask your friends about them
 - d) go to the zoo with your family
2. The underlined word "olden" means
 - a) the things that will happen in the future
 - b) the things that happen daily
 - c) the things that will never happen
 - d) the things that happened in the past
3. Reading is an interesting in addition to helping the person to know many things.
 - a) problem
 - b) invention
 - c) hobby
 - d) game

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
5. Summarise the first paragraph of the passage.
6. How can we benefit from reading to plan for our future life?

5 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

got – tourist – get – dangerous

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the castle in our city. Some of the walls are (1) and some people leave rubbish in the castle. We are going to (2) some builders to repair the walls. Children at our school are going to clean up the rubbish. We think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a (3) attraction.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a laptop computer you bought online"

.....

.....

.....



1

Alexandria Zone



Language Functions

20

3

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Omar is at a train station.

Omar : I want a ticket to Tanta, please. How much is it?

Clerk : (1)

Omar : (2) ?

Clerk : It leaves at 11:30 am.

Omar : (3) ?

Clerk : It leaves from Platform 7.



Reading Comprehension

2

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

discount – go – cheaper – to go – Customers

(1) would like (2) shopping at times of (3) It's
a great chance to buy things on sale. Things are sold (4) than any time else.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

5

There was once a foolish old man who had a bag full of gold. He dug a hole in the ground and put the bag of gold into it. Then he covered the hole with a big stone. He used to visit the hiding place nearly every day. He would take away the stone and put his fingers into the hole to touch the gold. Then he would feel very happy. One day, he took the stone away and put his fingers into the hole, but he didn't find the gold. His treasure was stolen. He felt angry and sad. His wife said to him, "There is no reason for you to be sad. Your gold was useless to us. You still have the hole. You can visit it whenever you like and imagine that your treasure is still there".

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did the old man feel whenever he touched his gold?

.....

2. Where did the old man hide his bag of gold?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The old man was when he lost his treasure.
a) sad b) glad c) happy d) afraid
5. The old man's treasure was
a) useful b) stolen c) silver d) helpful

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The suffix "....." gives the adjective of "fame".
a) -ous b) -ive c) -ful d) -ion
2. Rana was when she missed the start of the film.
a) annoying b) relaxed c) relaxing d) annoyed
3. are objects made by a person in a traditional way, such as baskets, bowls, etc.
a) Shells b) Passwords c) Handicrafts d) Changes
4. The library at 8:30 in the morning.
a) open b) opens c) will open d) opening

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have you ever (be) to Alexandria?
2. You must (to read) quietly in the library.
3. It is (easy) to shop online now than before.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A place you visited and enjoyed last year"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Noha wants to buy a jacket from a shop.

Shop assistant : Hello, can I help you?

Noha : Yes, please. I'm looking for a jacket.

Shop assistant : (1) ?

Noha : I'd like the green one.

Shop assistant : (2) ?

Noha : It's nice. (3) ?

Shop assistant : It costs 450 pounds.

Noha : That's great. I'll take it.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

recommend – of – selfies – beautiful – terrible

Balteem is a (1) place to visit in summer. There are lots (2) things to do there. You can enjoy the beach and take (3) with your family by your camera. It's an attractive place, so I (4) it to visit soon.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in rural areas in Egypt. The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services. It provides more health care, better education and better job opportunities. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to **deliver** medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. It will continue to help poor people around the country.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
2. What does the Decent Life Initiative aim to?
.....
3. Why do you think the Decent Life Initiative is important for children?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Decent Life Initiative has helped people who live in areas.
a) urban b) remote c) modern d) rural
5. The opposite of the underlined word "deliver" is
a) give b) receive c) mention d) send

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last night, I had a strange I thought I was flying.
a) toy b) decision c) game d) dream
2. This is the worst photo I've taken.
a) just b) never c) ever d) already
3. I live in a small village in Egypt. I usually the same things.
a) do b) has c) make d) give
4. Moustafa to go to work on time.
a) should b) have c) must d) has

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Televisions are (expensive) than the kettles.
2. I was (disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.
3. Both Ali and Gamal (is) at the same school last year.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A biography of a person you admire"

.....

.....

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mariam is making a complaint about a kettle that she bought online.

Mariam : Hello, can I speak to the manager, please?

Assistant : Yes, of course. (1).....?

Mariam : I have bought a kettle and I want to make a complaint.

Assistant : (2).....?

Mariam : It doesn't work well.

Assistant : Did you read the instructions leaflet well?

Mariam : No, I didn't.

Assistant : Why?

Mariam : (3).....

Assistant : Sorry, give me your email and I will send you the instructions leaflet.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

local – spare – elderly – busy – voluntary

My friend and I are looking for some (1) work. We want to help (2) people. We are going to ask about (3) community centres about reading for people who became old. We read a lot in our (4) time but we want to do something useful for other people.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called "yellow fever".

By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchen. We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms! Now, people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

1. Do you think fridges are an important invention? Why/ Why not?
2. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence of your own.
3. When was the ice machine invented?

4. Modern fridges are going to
 a) be more funny b) be cheaper
 c) use less energy d) make more noise

5. The word "**efficient**" means
 a) quick and calm b) cool
 c) hot and noisy d) expensive

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Children shouldn't stay awake till late hours, the synonym of "awake" is
a) disabled b) asleep c) sleepless d) faint
- She likes to wear a/an around her neck.
a) necklace b) ring c) bracelet d) earring
- Doing helps the government study problems.
a) activities b) surveys c) headings d) reasons
- I need comfortable shoes today because I'm going to walk
a) indoors b) indoor c) outdoor d) outdoors

1. Would you like (meets) up tomorrow, Ahmed?
2. We (build) a new house next month. We have arranged everything.
3. Tarek usually has (both) an egg or some fruit for breakfast.

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A biography of a famous person you admire"

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Manal is asking Abeer about a personal experience.

Manal : Have you ever been to a different country?

Abeer : (1).....

Manal : (2).....?

Abeer : I went to England last year.

Manal : Did you enjoy your time there?

Abeer : (3).....

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

website – was – delivery – were – good

Last month, I bought a kettle from an online (1) I waited for three weeks for (2) When the kettle arrived, it (3) broken. I made a complaint to send it back and get another one. They sent me a (4) kettle and took the broken one.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Reading is a useful and important habit in our modern life. We read books when we are alone or have free time. A lot of people prefer watching TV, but I like reading because it widens my scope of knowledge. It helps me to find new ideas and a lot of information which help me to make my life better. It gives me the chance to think and dream. Although we live in the age of the computer, the internet and there is a TV set in every house: we need to read books which are easier to carry and move with us everywhere and every time.

Try to read a book in the shade of a tree in a garden or a field and I'm sure you will enjoy it very much. You can also go to a public library.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When can you read books?

2. Why is reading useful and important?

3. Where can you read a book?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. people prefer watching TV.

a) A few

b) Many

c) Much

d) Little

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a) reading a book

b) the house

c) the internet

d) the computer

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like the blue shirt and the green shirt. Which one should I buy?

a) either

b) both

c) neither

d) nor

2. We saw some beautiful trees in the gardens.

a) botanical

b) passenger

c) smart

d) elderly

3. We have a new He's a student from Lebanon and his room is next to mine.

a) school

b) foreigner

c) lodger

d) tourist

4. Our class do a test last week.

a) had to

b) was

c) have to

d) should

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He does not go to school (at) Fridays.

2. The bus to Alex (leave) the station at 8 o'clock.

3. It is (good) to buy things in shops than online.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A biography of a person you like"

Exam 1

A Language Functions

26

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Soha is at a shop buying a camera for her brother.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Soha : Yes, of course. (1).....

- a) I want to buy a camera b) I want to buy a ticket
c) I want to buy a car d) I want to buy a cat

Assistant : We have good cameras. This one is very good.

Soha : (2).....?

- a) How much are they b) How much is it
c) How many cameras do you have d) How old are you

Assistant : It's only 2000 pounds.

Soha : Oh, it's expensive. (3).....?

- a) Can I try this shirt b) Can I borrow books
c) Can I see a cheaper one d) Can I help you

Assistant : OK. That one is cheaper. It's 1000 pounds.

Soha : (4).....

- a) I'll leave it b) I'll sell it
c) I'll eat it d) I'll take it

Assistant : OK. You can pay in cash or by credit card.

B Reading Comprehension

- 2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

6

I'm Ali. I would like to give my mother an award because she is the best mother in the world. She looked after me, my brother and sister. She wasn't able to go to university when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she did very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one

4. The prefix "....." is related to space.

- a) bio- b) mono- c) hyper- d) astro-

5. He is the champion of the last match. "Champion" means

- a) loser b) winner c) spectator d) organiser

6. The antonym of "international" is

- a) global b) universal c) worldwide d) local

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. Do you enjoy the piano?

- a) play b) playing c) played d) plays

2. What will the weather like tomorrow?

- a) be b) is c) was d) been

3. How I get from the school to the supermarket?

- a) does b) was c) is d) do

4. While I was playing games, my phone

- a) rang b) ring c) ringing d) rings

5. Ali hasn't finished his work

- a) already b) yet c) just d) for

6. When I was little, I ride a bike.

- a) can b) will c) could d) shall

D Writing

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

4

- a) We couldn't catch him.
b) We called the police and they arrested him.
c) We could get back anything he stole.
d) One day, a thief broke into our flat.

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

4. ()

A Language Functions

26

4

- 1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Sara is talking with **Noha** about an interesting story.

Noha : Hello, Sara. What are you doing?

Sara : (1)

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| a) I am looking at a website | b) I am playing chess |
| c) I am doing my homework | d) I am reading a story |

Noha : (2)?

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| a) What's your name | b) What's it called |
| c) Who are the characters | d) What's your hobby |

Sara : It is called David Copperfield.

Noha : Is it interesting?

Sara : (3)

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| a) Yes, it is | b) Yes, it does |
| c) No, it isn't | d) No, it doesn't |

Noha : (4)?

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) How do you feel about it | b) What's it called |
| c) Who was it written by | d) What's your opinion about it |

Sara : It was written by Charles Dickens.

B Reading Comprehension

6

- 2** Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. **They** enjoy the fine weather. They visit many places in Egypt such as the Cairo Tower in Cairo and the Pyramids in Giza. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. They usually take photos of the **ancient** temples in Egypt and they buy many things such as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt. Other tourists like the beautiful beaches in Egypt, so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists visit the Cairo Tower in
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Cairo d) Giza
2. Tourists enjoy the weather in Egypt.
a) bad b) cold c) wonderful d) snowy
3. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) tourists b) Egypt c) beaches d) temples
4. Tourists visit Luxor and Aswan in
a) summer b) spring c) fall d) winter
5. The underlined word "ancient" means very
a) new b) old c) near d) interesting
6. Tourists go to to enjoy the beaches there.
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Hurghada d) Cairo



Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. A is a form of transport that carries people or cars across the water.
a) ferry b) plane c) metro d) tram
2. I like to play games. I don't like going out.
a) outdoor b) indoor c) outdoors d) indoors
3. To make the noun of the word "pave", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ment b) -sion c) -tion d) -ness
4. I have passed the exam. "Passed" has the opposite meaning of ".....".
a) fell b) lived c) left d) failed
5. I think the new job will help you more money to live a better life.
a) win b) earn c) lose d) rob
6. A/An is a book or text about someone's life.
a) archaeology b) geology c) phytogeography d) biography

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. The first lesson starts eight a.m.
a) on b) at c) between d) next
2. I like this TV, but I think the smart one is the one in the shop.
a) better b) least c) best d) worse

3. Ayman his friends next Friday. It is arranged.
 a) met b) is going to meet c) is meeting d) will meet
4. I a bike since I was twelve years old.
 a) had b) has had c) have had d) have
5. Samir in Cairo in 2001.
 a) born b) bore c) was born d) be born
6. I got up late yesterday, but I reach school on time.
 a) am able to b) was able to c) wasn't able to d) able to



Writing

- 5** Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

4

- ★ I arrived there in the morning.
- ★ I went back home in the evening.
- ★ Yesterday, I went to the zoo.
- ★ I bought a ticket and saw animals.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>a) Yesterday, I went to the zoo.
 I arrived there in the morning.
 I went back home in the evening.
 I bought a ticket and saw animals.</p> | <p>c) Yesterday, I went to the zoo.
 I arrived there in the morning.
 I bought a ticket and saw animals.
 I went back home in the evening.</p> |
| <p>b) Yesterday, I went to the zoo.
 I bought a ticket and saw animals.
 I arrived there in the morning.
 I went back home in the evening.</p> | <p>d) I went back home in the evening.
 Yesterday, I went to the zoo.
 I arrived there in the morning.
 I bought a ticket and saw animals.</p> |



Teacher's Materials

20 ²⁴/₂₅

الصف 3 الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

CONTENTS



1. PERSONAL DATA FORM

يقوم الطالب بكتابة
المعلومات الخاصة
به في هذا الجزء
وتقديمها للمعلم.

نموذج البيانات الشخصية (للطالبة المتقدمين للحصول على درس خاص)

Name:

الاسم بالكامل

Grade:

الصف الدراسي

School:

اسم المدرسة

Birth Date:

تاريخ الميلاد

Telephone:

رقم الهاتف (أرضي/موبايل)

Home:	Mobile:
-------	---------

For emergencies, call:

للتوارئ، اتصل:

Name:	Telephone Number:
-------	-------------------

Signature of Student:

توقيع الطالب

Signature of Parent:

توقيع ولي الأمر

Describe your ability in English: (Circle the best description.)

قم بعمل هذا التدريب
لكي يتمكن معلمك من
تحديد نقاط الضعف لديك
ليقوم بتطويرها.

Understanding is

always difficult

sometimes difficult

never difficult

Speaking is

always difficult

sometimes difficult

never difficult

Reading is

always difficult

sometimes difficult

never difficult

Writing is

always difficult

sometimes difficult

never difficult

With My Best Wishes

Mr:

Expert Teacher of English

2. Placement Test

قم باختبار طلابك للتعرف على مستواهم ومعرفة نقاط القوة والضعف لديهم للعمل على تطويرها من خلال هذا الاختبار.

25

Level 1: Understanding

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- Look at his speed, he have an accident!
a) has b) can c) will d) is going to
- If I go to the shops on Saturday, I some new headphones.
a) buy b) bought c) am buying d) will buy
- It wasn't an easy lesson, but the teacher it to us in a perfect way.
a) got b) explained c) studied d) understood
- To get a good job, you should have many
a) skulls b) skills c) scales d) presents
- German as a second language in our school.
a) is speaking b) speaking c) speaks d) is spoken
- On my way home, I usually to drink a cup of coffee.
a) stops b) stopping c) am stopping d) stop
- I like watching films. They are very exciting.
a) adventure b) nature c) culture d) future
- Look at kids playing in the garden over there; they're so cute.
a) this b) that c) these d) those
- My older brother is very worried because he has a/an for his new job.
a) interview b) view c) break d) review
- Shall we go to the on Friday? There's a new play on.
a) museum b) theatre c) park d) hall



Level 2: Speaking

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Bassem is talking with Rahma about hobbies.

Bassem: What's your favourite hobby, Rahma?

Rahma : (1).....

Bassem: Which musical instrument do you play?

Rahma : (2).....

Bassem: (3).....?

Rahma : I started playing the violin last year.

Bassem: (4).....?

Rahma : No, it's very easy to play.

Bassem: Could you please teach me how to play it?

Rahma : (5).....

Rahma: Let's start tomorrow.



Level 3: Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mona and Hend are two sisters. Their father is a farmer. They often help him on the farm during the holidays. Their mother is a housewife. They always help her clean the house and cook meals. Mona is fourteen years old. Hend is two years younger than Mona. They always walk to school together. They are good at English. Their favourite hobby is reading.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?
2. Which subject are they good at?
3. What do you think of Mona and Hend?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Hend is years old.
 a) eight b) ten c) twelve d) sixteen
5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a) Mona and her father b) Hend and her mother
 c) father and mother d) Mona and Hend



Level 4: Writing

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about:

"What you did last summer"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Placement Test Score

Score	Level
0-12	Poor
13-16	Good
17-21	Very Good
22-25	Excellent

3 Follow-up Activities

Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

.....	حداثف نباتية	.....	محمية طبيعية
.....	بحيرة	.....	أطلال/أنقاض

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

peaceful	.....	.....
careful	.....	.....
important	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a place where you can see beautiful fish
.....	something that people build to remind us of an important person or event
.....	a place where you can borrow and read books
.....	move, drive or go to the left or the right

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يؤدي وظيفة/مهمة	.....	يتبادل الأدوار
.....	يكشف	.....	مهتم بـ



Name:

Unit 1 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a place where two roads meet.
a) monument b) corner c) bank d) lake
2. is the cars, lorries, motorbikes, etc. that use a road.
a) A reserve b) A station c) An event d) Traffic
3. I wanted to buy our weekly needs, so I went to the centre.
a) art b) music c) shopping d) sports
4. To get to the library, go on. It's on the corner.
a) straight b) street c) along d) stream
5. "Near" is to "close" as "....." is to "calm".
a) far b) peaceful c) noisy d) boring
6. The prefix "....." can be added to "attract" to get an adjective.
a) -er b) -ion c) -ous d) -ive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



1. (Going) straight on this road, then turn right.
2. My house is (next) the bank and the library.
3. I was born (on) October.
4. I'll travel (at) Thursday morning.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	رصيف محطة	.....	معرض
.....	مريح	.....	فضاء

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

expensive	.....	.....
easy	.....	.....
below	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a form of transport that carries people or cars across water
.....	someone who is travelling on a plane, train, car, etc. and is not driving it
.....	something you can use to find when a train or bus arrives or leaves
.....	something you can use to follow directions

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يلحق/ يأخذ قطارًا	.....	ينظر من
.....	يتطلع إلى	.....	مفيد لـ



Name:

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. A is a form of transport that uses rails like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities.
a) ship b) ferry c) tram d) train
2. A is an area of land between two hills or mountains.
a) mountain b) map c) vehicle d) valley
3. He usually travels on a train. He is a usual on it.
a) platform b) vehicle c) passenger d) poster
4. We went to the bus to catch the bus.
a) stop b) space c) exhibition d) centre
5. The synonym of "expensive" is
a) cheap b) costly c) difficult d) simple
6. To get the adjective from "comfort", we add the suffix
a) -er b) -ion c) -able d) -ation

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. The first metro train (leave) at 8:20.
2. When (do) the plane to Rome leave?
3. On which day (do) the exhibition close?
4. When (do) the play?



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	منشور	.....	إعلان
.....	نقد عبر الإنترنت	.....	مفقود

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

closed	.....	.....
fantastic	.....	.....
politely	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	inside a building
.....	pretty things that people wear, such as rings, necklaces, etc.
.....	pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay
.....	one hundred years

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يأخذ/يصنع قراراً	.....	يرد على
.....	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	.....	يتزوج



Name:

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is pretty things that people wear, such as rings, necklaces, etc.

- a) A review b) A mask c) A brochure d) Jewellery

2. "....." means pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay.

- a) Jewellery b) Pottery c) A gardener d) A century

3. My father likes to everything before doing it. He's very careful.

- a) harm b) accept c) arrange d) protect

4. He can't go out of the room. It's

- a) closed b) open c) empty d) full

5. It's a lovely dress. I like it very much. The synonym of "lovely" is ".....".

- a) similar b) horrible c) ugly d) beautiful

6. To get the noun of the verb "suggest", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -er b) -ion c) -ly d) -ive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. What time (does) the next train?

2. Where does the train to Aswan (goes) from?

3. In Egypt, school (start) in September and ends in May.

4. What do you usually do (in) Mother's Day?



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2

Main Vocabulary

.....	دراسة/استبيان	.....	ذكى
.....	مشغل كاسيت	.....	عقد/قلادة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

busy	.....	.....
popular	.....	.....
lucky	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a price that is less than usual
.....	a machine that cooks food very quickly using special waves
.....	equipment that you connect to or is part of a phone, radio, computer, etc. so that you can listen to it
.....	a good or cheap price

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	فى عرض خاص	.....	ينفق مالا على
.....	بأفضل الأسعار	.....	ينتظر



Name:

Unit 2 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a container or device in which water is boiled.
a) kettle b) fan c) oven d) fridge
2. A is a machine we use to keep food cold and help food stay fresh longer.
a) heater b) boiler c) fridge d) microwave
3. Both TVs have a big I am going to buy one of them.
a) sail b) amount c) discount d) sail
4. You must traffic rules to avoid accidents.
a) follow b) ignore c) allow d) refuse
5. To get the opposite of "popular", we add the prefix ".....".
a) in- b) un- c) im- d) dis-
6. The synonym of "smart" is ".....".
a) stupid b) clever c) intelligent d) b & c

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. (Neither) my parents encourage me to depend on myself.
2. Both Rami (or) Kamal got full marks.
3. Either day (are) fine for me.
4. You speak (loudly) than a loudspeaker.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	يشحن	.....	بطارية
.....	يزين/يزخرف	.....	خشبي

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

plug in	.....	.....
turn on	.....	.....
modern	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	complete information on a piece of paper or online
.....	a special, secret word that you must write or say before you can use a computer or go into a place
.....	an object made by a person in a traditional way, such as a basket, bowl, etc.
.....	put in information so that you can use a computer

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يكتشف عن	.....	يكسب مالاً
.....	محبوب لدى	.....	تهانينا على



Name:

Unit 2 Lessons 3&4

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to put electricity into something such as a phone.
a) plug **b)** log **c)** charge **d)** fill
2. To is to make a machine start working.
a) log in **b)** turn on **c)** go into **d)** come in
3. They put many colourful papers and balloons on the walls. They the walls.
a) charged **b)** congratulated **c)** imagined **d)** decorated
4. He always wears in black. It's his
a) handicraft **b)** style **c)** shell **d)** password
5. This is an amazing film. The antonym of "amazing" is ".....".
a) new **b)** bright **c)** ordinary **d)** surprising
6. The suffix "....." changes the word "art" into the person who works with art.
a) -or **b)** -er **c)** -ian **d)** -ist

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. They (not/play) video games yesterday.
2. We (play) football yesterday evening.
3. As he (take) a shower, his dog ate his steaks.
4. I (play) football last Friday.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	شركة	.....	إيجابي
.....	سلبي	.....	عنوان (موضوع)

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

main	.....	.....
mixed	.....	.....
broken	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	to send a message electronically
.....	return a phone call
.....	when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make something for them
.....	something that you say or write when you are unhappy about something because you think it is wrong or not very good

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يحافظ على الهدوء	.....	سعيد بـ
.....	يقدم شكوى	.....	قلق على



Name:

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to send a message electronically.
a) answer **b)** email **c)** order **d)** complain
2. A is something that you make when you are unhappy about something.
a) toast **b)** pot **c)** complaint **d)** title
3. I a kettle, but I'm still waiting for the delivery.
a) ordered **b)** toasted **c)** explained **d)** uncle
4. This chair isn't good to sit on. It's
a) helpful **b)** useful **c)** broken **d)** unbroken
5. What's the main aim of this lesson? The synonym of "main" is
a) nasty **b)** sad **c)** secondary **d)** essential
6. I can't study. It's noise here. To correct the underlined word, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive **b)** -y **c)** -ly **d)** -ous

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. I've got (either) time nor money to go on holiday.
2. His car is (expensive) than my car.
3. She's (good) girl at the party. Everyone likes her.
4. I (work) very hard last night.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2

Main Vocabulary

.....	محيط	.....	الرعاية الصحية
.....	تكافؤ الفرص	.....	مبادرة

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

local	.....	.....
repair	.....	.....
decent	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	services, such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community
.....	a small area of a town, or village and the people who live in it
.....	time when you are not working
.....	the part that you walk on in a city that is next to a road

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يقوم باستبيان/استطلاع	.....	تسهيلات/خدمات لـ
.....	يهدف إلى	.....	لديه تأثير على

(1 - 7) Poor



(8 - 12) Good



(13 - 15) Excellent



+

Name:

Unit 3 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. "..... opportunity" means having the same chances in life as other people.
a) Elderly b) Equal c) Disabled d) Accessible
2. To is to take a letter or an object to a place or building.
a) affect b) improve c) encourage d) deliver
3. Parents give their children everything they need. They them with everything.
a) improve b) deliver c) provide d) encourage
4. My grandfather likes the life of farmers because he likes life.
a) rural b) city c) public d) indecent
5. The synonym of "public" is ".....".
a) international b) national c) global d) natural
6. Good buses run on electric..... . They are good for the environment.
a) -er b) -ian c) -al d) -ity

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. They (meet) their uncle at the airport at five.
2. Yesterday's lesson was (amaze).
3. (Do) you travelling to Paris next Sunday?
4. My parents were (excite) when I passed the exams.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	الرسم على الجدران	.....	منشورات
.....	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية	.....	فن الخط

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

fail	.....	.....
greet	.....	.....
sunny	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	the quality of being kind, helpful and caring towards other people
.....	If you are surprised, you do not expect something and it seems strange or unusual.
.....	to say hello to or welcome someone
.....	someone who pays to live in a house

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يتصل	.....	مشروع في
.....	يتبرع من أجل	.....	يساعد لإيجاد مقعد



Name:

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a board that people put on a wall to put messages on.
a) whiteboard b) noticeboard c) smart board d) blackboard
2. If you are, you do not expect something and it seems strange or unusual.
a) salty b) historic c) kind d) surprised
3. My father is the person who for what we need.
a) joins b) greets c) pays d) fails
4. There is a little in this room, just a chair and a bed.
a) furniture b) media c) calligraphy d) experience
5. We add the prefix "....." to "respect" to get the opposite.
a) un- b) dis- c) im- d) ir-
6. The antonym of "sunny" is ".....".
a) surprising b) clear c) bright d) cloudy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. Omar (not/going) join a boarding school.
2. The street is (go) to be closed on Saturday.
3. When are they going (leave) school?
4. The engineer is (go) design a new plane. He intends to do that.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	يتصل بـ	.....	مكان جذب سياحي
.....	نتيجة	.....	يكمل
.....	خاتمة	.....	بالإضافة إلى ذلك

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

above	.....	.....
happiness	.....	.....
summary	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	correct for unimportant or everyday situations
.....	to write a conclusion

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يذهب لركوب الأمواج	.....	يعطى مبررات لـ
.....	يقدم لـ	.....	يمشي بامتداد

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means adding extra information.
a) However **b)** Furthermore **c)** Firstly **d)** Conclusion
2. To is to write a conclusion.
a) summarise **b)** start **c)** begin **d)** protect
3. How can I communicate with you? I want to you.
a) conclude **b)** charge **c)** contact **d)** connect
4. We should do our best to the project on time.
a) contact **b)** conclude **c)** compete **d)** complete
5. We add "....." to "formal" to get its opposite.
a) ab- **b)** in- **c)** im- **d)** dis-
6. Every student feels great happiness because they got high marks in the exams. The synonym of "happiness" is ".....".
a) pleasure **b)** sadness **c)** kindness **d)** furniture

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. I heard some (surprise) news on the radio.
2. Hussein bores me. I think he is a (bore) person.
3. The sky is dark. It (going/be) a storm.
4. I (play) tennis with my friends next Friday. I talked with them.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

.....	آلة موسيقية	.....	خيمة
.....	دار أيتام	.....	رسم بياني
.....	مغامرة	.....	حفل زفاف

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

forget	.....	.....
wait	.....	.....
win	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	something that happens to you
.....	to swim using equipment that allows you to breathe while your face is under the water

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	جيد/سيئ فى	.....	يتزوج من
.....	فى الوقت المحدد	.....	يعطى فرصة لـ



Name:

Unit 4 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. To is to swim using equipment that allows you to breathe under the water.
a) swim b) snorkel c) sink d) die
2. The word "....." means at any time.
a) for b) already c) ever d) never
3. My sister is going to get married. There will be a wonderful party.
a) musical b) concert c) sports d) wedding
4. They went camping in a nearby forest. They slept in a
a) tent b) graph c) chart d) mountain
5. To get another noun of "head", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ition b) -ache c) -ed d) -al
6. The antonym of "forget" is ".....".
a) leave b) win c) remember d) wake

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. I've never (eat) Chinese food.
2. How (far) have they known each other?
3. My father has (been) to France. He'll come back next week.
4. They've been in London (since) six months.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	حفلة موسيقية	.....	ينضم إلى
.....	حلم	.....	يتحقق من

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

awake	.....	.....
lost	.....	.....
strange	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
.....	walk or drive behind someone in the same direction
.....	a book, film, play, etc. that continues the story of an earlier one, usually made or written by the same person
.....	feel strongly about someone or something

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يتوقف للراحة ليلاً	.....	على طوافه
.....	ينادي	.....	في النهاية

(1 - 7) Poor



(8 - 12) Good



(13 - 15) Excellent



+

Name:

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. To is to give money for work someone has done.
a) pay **b)** join **c)** care about **d)** follow
2. A is pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water.
a) sequel **b)** canoe **c)** dream **d)** raft
3. Students should their answers before they end the test.
a) follow **b)** check **c)** join **d)** teach
4. I asked my father to let me the school trip.
a) join **b)** follow **c)** check **d)** learn
5. This question is difficult. We can't answer it. The synonym of "difficult" is "
.....".
a) lost **b)** missing **c)** easy **d)** hard
6. To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix "
.....".
a) dis- **b)** un- **c)** im- **d)** in

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. Have we (have) enough to eat?
2. He (write) five emails this week.
3. Have you (never) been to London?
4. That tree has been there (since) 5 hundred years.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	يؤثر على	.....	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
.....	مدرب	.....	يتطوع

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

disability	.....	.....
clever	.....	.....
achieve	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a learning difference that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read, write or spell
.....	to find or find out something that people did not know before
.....	the final number that people or teams get at the end of an exam or sports match
.....	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يدون ملاحظات	.....	يمارس الجمباز
.....	يلقى حديثاً/خطاباً	.....	يُعيد إلى

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 4 Lessons 5&6

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. is a learning difference which means that people find it difficult to read, write or spell.
a) Influenza b) Stomachache c) Dyslexia d) Headache
2. To is to find or find out something that people did not know before.
a) discover b) hurt c) draw d) achieve
3. I studied hard to a perfect grade.
a) organise b) miss c) volunteer d) achieve
4. I'm waiting for my exam nervously.
a) coaches b) results c) disabilities d) brains
5. To get the noun of "achieve", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ics b) -ness c) -ment d) -ion
6. The antonym of "discover" is ".....".
a) hide b) find out c) reach d) pass

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. She (be) abroad since 2020.
2. I (bought) this bike for two months.
3. You have (make) too much noise this time.
4. Have you (never) been to Japan?



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2

Main Vocabulary

.....	تحدُّ	.....	نوع
.....	متخصص بالرياضيات	.....	بطل رياضى

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

design	.....	.....
join	.....	.....
reduce	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	someone that you want to copy because you respect them
.....	someone who travels to meetings around the world
.....	to decide to take part in something such as a competition
.....	a person whose job is to try and change the way people do things in society

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	جائزة فى/من أجل	.....	يتقاضى راتباً مقابل
.....	يحل	.....	يصبح أعمى

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 5 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. There is not enough air in the space capsule to keep the three
alive.

- a) managers b) astronauts c) engineers d) artists

2. A/An is something that you hope to do in the future.

- a) goal b) skill c) award d) bridge

3. He works very hard to his goal.

- a) educate b) achieve c) design d) win

4. He wants to work as a for a charity.

- a) championship b) bridge
c) volunteer d) mathematician

5. Her dream to enter the famous university came true. The synonym of
"enter" is ".....".

- a) take part in b) leave c) exit d) avoid

6. To get the adjective from "music", we add the suffix ".....".

- a) -al b) -ous c) -able d) -ive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. He (send) the email many days ago.

2. She (never/travel) to Paris.

3. It (rain) a lot these days.

4. We have joined this club (for) 2012.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	يحتوى/يستوعب/يعقد	.....	سيرة ذاتية
.....	نجاح	.....	الشباب

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

excellent	.....	.....
nervous	.....	.....
possible	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	a person or team that takes part in a competition
.....	the group of people who work somewhere
.....	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something
.....	a group of people who can meet during a health emergency

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يعزف فى حفلات	.....	يبتكر تطبيقاً
.....	موسيقية	.....
.....	بحلول الليل	.....	يقوم بجولة فى

(1 - 7) Poor



(8 - 12) Good



(13 - 15) Excellent



+

Name:

Unit 5 Lessons 3&4

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is the software you can use on your computer or phone.
a) organiser **b)** app **c)** bubble **d)** biography
2. A is someone who watches a sport or an event.
a) coronavirus **b)** biography **c)** tournament **d)** spectator
3. This room is full. It twenty people.
a) wins **b)** creates **c)** holds **d)** organises
4. My school has very friendly teachers. I like all its
a) staff **b)** software **c)** ministry **d)** success
5. To get the opposite of "possible", add the prefix ".....".
a) dis- **b)** im- **c)** un- **d)** ab-
6. "....." gives the same meaning as "winner".
a) Bubble **b)** Spectator **c)** Tournament **d)** Champion

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. I don't want to see that film. I (already/see) it.
2. They (have) finished their meal yet.
3. She has (yet) gone to the cinema.
4. I've had lunch (yet), but I'll join you for coffee.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	ثقافة	.....	تلوث الماء
.....	اختبار قيادة	.....	المياه المعاد تدويرها
.....	يؤدي	.....	لاعب رياضي

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

international	.....	.....
repair	.....	.....
result	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	money that a university or school gives to someone to pay for their education
.....	Technology, Engineering and Maths School

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يربط/يوصل بـ	.....	يؤلف موسيقى البيانو
.....	يبدأ تأسيس شركة	.....	يرتدي/يلبس

(1 - 7) Poor



(8 - 12) Good



(13 - 15) Excellent



+

Name:

Unit 5 Lessons 5&6

Quiz

10

6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to use things, such as bottles or sheets of paper again so that they can be used again.
a) cycle **b)** share **c)** connect **d)** recycle
2. A/An is a person who does a sport, especially athletics.
a) environment **b)** teenager **c)** athlete **d)** scientist
3. Everyone thinks money will all their problems.
a) save **b)** solve **c)** guess **d)** share
4. The chair is broken. We should get someone to it.
a) perform **b)** connect **c)** damage **d)** repair
5. To form the adjective of the word "nature", add the suffix ".....".
a) -al **b)** -ous **c)** -ful **d)** -ive
6. The antonym of "international" is
a) global **b)** local **c)** noisy **d)** busy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. I (eat) my lunch an hour ago.
2. She has travelled to Rome (since) ten years now.
3. Have you (see) my book?
4. I (have received) a letter from her two days ago.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2

Main Vocabulary

.....	الصحة النفسية/العقلية	.....	سلوك
.....	يبلغ عن/تقرير	.....	قدرات

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

glad	.....	.....
support	.....	.....
avoid	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	to say unkind or cruel things about someone online
.....	seeing only good things
.....	unhappy because something bad has happened
.....	unhappy because you are not with other people/ having no friends with you

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يتعرض للتمر	.....	باهتمامات متشابهة
.....	غير عطوف مع	.....	مخرج بسبب

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 6 Lessons 1&2

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. "....." means really good, fantastic.
a) Negative b) Lonely c) Incredible d) Upset
2. life is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people.
a) Social b) Mental c) Positive d) Anxious
3. You shouldn't make friends with bad people. You should them.
a) cyberbully b) support c) protect d) avoid
4. We should be careful about our towards old people.
a) cyberbullying b) appearance c) behaviour d) abilities
5. To get the opposite of "necessary", add the prefix ".....".
a) dis- b) un- c) en- d) re-
6. The synonym of "scary" is ".....".
a) frightening b) brave c) unhappy d) proud

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. You (must to) return the shirts. They are too small for you.
2. I should (eating) more vegetables, but I hate them.
3. We (must) give him everything he wants or his behaviour will be bad.
4. You (not/have to) take me home because my father is coming.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4

Main Vocabulary

.....	عملية التنفس	.....	مشاعر
.....	تعليق/يعلق	.....	يدرك

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

recently	.....	.....
continue	.....	.....
improve	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment
.....	to become more calm and less worried, or make someone feel this
.....	to say something to make people laugh
.....	to allow or want someone or something to be part of something

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يكون صداقات مع	.....	يؤدي اختباراً
.....	يراجع لـ	.....	يحول إلى

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 6 Lessons 3&4

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. means being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings.
a) Kindness b) Mindfulness c) Happiness d) Sadness
2. To is to become more calm and less worried, or make someone feel this.
a) breathe b) include c) joke d) relax
3. When he that he made a mistake, he said sorry.
a) commented b) breathed c) realised d) relaxed
4. There are many on my post, but I don't have time to read them.
a) posters b) comments c) signs d) reviews
5. To get the noun from the adjective "happy", add the suffix "".
a) -ion b) -ly c) -ment d) -ness
6. The synonym of "improve" is "".
a) develop b) damage c) contain d) continue

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. Did you (had) to get up early yesterday?
2. Was Ali (could) read when he was five?
3. What couldn't you (did) when you were young?
4. It was really noisy, so I (couldn't) to sleep last night.



Name:

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6

Main Vocabulary

.....	العصف الذهني	.....	بدلاً من ذلك
.....	سن المراهقة	.....	تلميح/نصيحة
.....	فرد/عضو	.....	مذكرات/يوميات

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

display	.....	.....
depressed	.....	.....

Definitions

.....	easy to understand
.....	to manage or be able to do something, although it is difficult
.....	to stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking

Language Expressions & Prepositions

.....	يُلتَقى مع/يلتقى مع	.....	على مسافة طويلة من
.....	يعد ملحقاً إعلانياً	.....	دعنى أعرف

(1 - 7) Poor 😞

(8 - 12) Good 😊

(13 - 15) Excellent 😄



Name:

Unit 6 Lessons 5&6

Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. To is to stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking.
a) explain b) display c) agree d) interrupt
2. To be means easy to understand.
a) digital b) final c) clear d) depressed
3. I read some that may help me organise my study.
a) tips b) dreams c) diaries d) posters
4. The museum wonderful objects.
a) explains b) displays c) depresses d) interrupts
5. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of the verb "depress".
a) -ed b) -ly c) -er d) -al
6. The antonym of "depressed" is ".....".
a) happy b) frustrated c) clear d) final

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. (you/could) play chess when you were six?
2. I wasn't able (ride) a bike at the age of four.
3. Why (do) you have to do P.E. when you were at school?
4. We (have) to get up early yesterday because it was a holiday.



4. Advanced Questions

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We usually play football; we play it in the open air.
a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
2. Students shouldn't be care They should take care of their study.
a) -ful b) -less c) -ous d) -ive
3. We should be members in the community.
a) using b) used c) useful d) useless
4. The prefix "....." refers to the opposite in meaning.
a) un- b) in-
c) dis- d) all of these

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He went to Alexandria (at last) week. (last)
2. Do you know when (the film/start) tonight? (the film starts)
3. When (does) the next fashion exhibition? (is)
4. To reach the new supermarket, (to go) straight on. (go)

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's free to go into the park. The antonym of "free" is ".....".
a) busy b) paid c) common d) lucky
2. Don't leave your mobile phone on. Turn it
a) up b) down c) off d) on
3. These bags are ugly. They are colour-
a) -ful b) -less c) -ion d) -ness
4. A person is known by their, so we should choose our friends well.
a) company b) complaint c) title d) noise

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Tamer is the (quick) of the two players. (quicker)
2. While (go) home, I met my old friend Rami. (going)
3. My brother always sleeps while he (read). (reads)
4. Both Waleed and Mohammed (be) good friends. (are)

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We add the suffix "-y" to get the of some verbs.
a) opposite b) noun c) adjective d) adverb
- If students find something, they can put it in "..... and found" box.
a) lose b) losing c) loses d) lost
- It was a trip, so we were
a) pleased/pleasant b) pleasant/pleased
c) please/pleasing d) pleasing/pleased
- These trousers don't you at all.
a) suiting b) unsuitable c) suit d) suitable

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- It's a (tire) job. I work for many hours without stopping. (tiring)
- We (have) a party next Friday. (are having)
- Watch out! A car is coming. It (hit) you. (is going to hit)
- I (go) to the theatre tonight. I already have a ticket. (am going)

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It isn't for children to play here. There aren't any cars.
a) simple b) easy c) safe d) unsafe
- Students are many subjects at school.
a) heard b) known c) taught d) learned
- I gave all the students presents, but I gave Said a one because I love him more.
a) private b) special c) public d) general
- The prefix "....." refers to the opposite of some words.
a) ab- b) re- c) en- d) inter-

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My grandfather, who died last year, (live) here for over thirty years. (lived)
- He (travel) to many countries in the last few years. (has travelled)
- I am so happy because I (pass) my English exam. (have passed)
- Last week was very wet, but it (rain) once this week. (has rained)

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** To get some nouns from some verbs, add the suffix ".....".
- a) -ment b) -ion
c) -ency d) all of these
- 2.** He went to a big centre because he was very ill.
- a) health b) healthy c) sport d) sporty
- 3.** The Africa Cup of Nations is a great event for every Arab country to win.
- a) sport b) sporty c) sports d) sporting
- 4.** She found a natural way for villages to clean dirty water and to recycle water.
- a) use b) uses c) used d) using

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hatim returned from the United States (since) 2020. (in)
2. Have you finished writing the email (yet)? You're quick. (already)
3. I haven't seen Rami (in) the last time we were at the club. (since)
4. The ancient Egyptians (build) the pyramids. (built)

Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many people don't know the of taking break.
a) import **b)** important
c) importance **d)** importantly
2. Don't other people unkind things.
a) say **b)** tell **c)** talk **d)** speak
3. He always feels anxious go to the dentist.
a) at **b)** about **c)** for **d)** to
4. The lesson wasn't explained, so the students asked the teacher to explain it again.
a) doubtfully **b)** clearly **c)** finally **d)** secondly

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Everybody (must) to behave well. (has)
2. The brave firefighter (could) save the girl from the fire. (was able to)
3. She (must) come early. The teacher was angry. (had to)
4. My brother Bido (able) read until he was 9. (wasn't able to)



Model Answers

الصف 3 الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

20²⁴₂₅

Answers
100%

CONTENTS



1. Main Book Answers



Unit 1

Around town



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. Ruins
2. dictionary

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. take
2. on
3. boring
4. won

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b**) library
2. **c**) reach
3. **b**) painting
4. **c**) crashing

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c**) cautious
2. **c**) pollution
3. **d**) corner
4. **b**) A monument
5. **a**) un-
6. **d**) costly
7. **b**) especially
8. **b**) useful
9. **d**) ruins
10. **b**) distant
11. **c**) attractive
12. **d**) -ion
13. **d**) exciting
14. **b**) un-
15. **d**) reserve

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. visit
2. excited
3. botanical
4. sports

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. b) aquarium | 7. b) -ful |
| 2. d) -ful | 8. a) quiet |
| 3. a) historical | 9. d) distant |
| 4. b) lake | 10. d) Traffic |
| 5. c) bank | 11. a) normal |
| 6. c) beautiful | 12. d) botanical garden |

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Go | 11. How far |
| 2. Follow | 12. Take |
| 3. next | 13. to |
| 4. past | 14. across |
| 5. opposite | 15. cross |
| 6. on/at | 16. From |
| 7. on | 17. next |
| 8. turn | 18. on |
| 9. between | 19. and |
| 10. on | 20. take |

Language Exercises (2)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------|----------|
| 1. at | 11. at |
| 2. in | 12. at |
| 3. on | 13. in |
| 4. in | 14. at |
| 5. In | 15. on |
| 6. at | 16. In |
| 7. On | 17. next |
| 8. on | 18. at |
| 9. at | 19. on |
| 10. On | 20. at |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1. at | 5. at |
| 2. at | 6. past |
| 3. at | 7. between |
| 4. next | 8. in |

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 9. on | 15. from |
| 10. in | 16. on |
| 11. on | 17. take |
| 12. on | 18. at |
| 13. on | 19. Go |
| 14. turn | 20. in |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

- Yes, please.
- Go straight on this road, and it will be on your left.
- Is it far from here?
- How far is it?
- Yes, you can visit the Egyptian Museum.



Unit 1 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

- Good evening.
- How do I get to the new shopping mall?
- It's about five kilometres from here.
- Should I take a taxi?
- You're welcome.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. in | 3. attractive |
| 2. population | 4. garden |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. d) fish | 4. a) includes |
| 2. a) Straight on | 5. a) calm |
| 3. d) check | 6. a) -ful |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. Turn | 4. on |
| 2. in | 5. at |
| 3. next | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. platform
2. form
3. floor

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. take
2. leaves
3. about
4. built

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** playing
2. **d)** to becoming
3. **c)** in

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** crowded
2. **b)** passengers
3. **c)** end
4. **b)** -able
5. **a)** difficult
6. **b)** valley
7. **a)** timetable
8. **c)** take
9. **a)** depart
10. **d)** platform
11. **c)** comfortable
12. **b)** metro
13. **a)** tram
14. **a)** public
15. **b)** railway

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. railway
2. when
3. journey
4. peaceful

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** ferry
2. **c)** relaxed
3. **b)** -ation
4. **d)** valley
5. **c)** traveller
6. **b)** un-
7. **a)** crossword
8. **c)** simple
9. **b)** platform
10. **a)** map

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. leaves | 11. takes |
| 2. departs | 12. is |
| 3. does | 13. reaches |
| 4. begins | 14. does |
| 5. is | 15. starts |
| 6. arrives | 16. arrives |
| 7. does | 17. opens |
| 8. has | 18. walks |
| 9. like | 19. opens |
| 10. goes | 20. leaves |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to book a train ticket to Aswan.
2. It's 150 pounds.
3. When is the train to Aswan?
4. How long does the journey take?
5. The train leaves from platform 2.



Unit 1 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. transport | 3. passengers |
| 2. first | 4. comfortable |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) August

2. b) festival

3. d) business

B) 4. The Ismailia Mango Festival.

5. The governorate celebrates the festival through many events such as road shows with mango-shaped cars, mango cutting competitions, and musical shows.

6. Yes, I believe the festival is useful for the city because the festival has positive effects on both the local community and the city.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b) map | 4. a) floors |
| 2. c) passenger | 5. d) begin |
| 3. d) cross | 6. a) -ion |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. arrives | 4. arrives |
| 2. is | 5. meet |
| 3. has | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. share | 3. advert |
| 2. invitation | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1. make | 3. unknown |
| 2. for | 4. sells |

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. arranged | 3. lovely |
| 2. reviews | 4. leaves |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. d) century | 6. c) Jewellery |
| 2. b) gardener | 7. b) indoors |
| 3. d) arrange | 8. d) -ation |
| 4. c) im- | 9. a) Pottery |
| 5. c) horrible | 10. b) wild |
| | 11. a) on |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Shall we play sport?
2. I'm not sure.
3. I'm afraid I can't walk well.
4. What about visiting the museum?
5. Let's meet up and play a computer game.



Unit 1 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'd love to.
2. I'm not sure.
3. What about the museum?
4. How about going to the park?
5. That would be great.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. fantastic | 3. comfortable |
| 2. opens | 4. pottery |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. b) century | 4. b) accept |
| 2. c) Indoors | 5. b) -ion |
| 3. b) rudely | 6. d) bridge |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1. leaves | 4. walk |
| 2. takes | 5. on |
| 3. visiting | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Where is it?
2. We will go there by car.
3. That's right.
4. What time will we meet?
5. I hope so, too.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- A)** 1. go
2. aquarium
3. watching
4. home
- B)** 1. lives
2. busy
3. shopping
4. reserve

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) straight
2. d) floors
3. c) arrive at
4. a) im-
5. c) cheap
6. a) museum
7. d) outdoors
8. d) -ation
9. d) modern
10. d) Electric

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. does
2. leave
3. in
4. never
5. doesn't
6. is prepared
7. to have
8. go
9. go
10. goes



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm not sure
2. Where would you prefer to go?
3. What do you like reading?
4. We can go there by bus.
5. OK, let's go there.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. expensive
2. better
3. floors
4. ferries

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. b)** people enjoy visiting Aswan
2. a) plants
3. c) Aswan
- B) 4.** People can visit the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island and the Nubian Museum.

5. Nubia is a good place to visit because it has many historical monuments and interesting places to see.
6. Because Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d) exhibition | 4. b) engineering |
| 2. b) platform | 5. d) bridge |
| 3. c) careless | 6. d) -ation |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. leaves | 4. on |
| 2. at | 5. does |
| 3. Go | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. c) You can go to the bus station.
2. a) Where's it?
3. b) No, it isn't.
4. d) Did you visit it before?
5. c) Yes, I did.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. d) arrives
2. a) starts
3. c) next to
4. a) on



Unit 2

Let's go shopping



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. kettle
2. fridge
3. offered

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. for
2. spend
3. lucky

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** offer
2. **d)** for
3. **a)** laugh
4. **c)** discount

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** discount
2. **b)** sale
3. **c)** quietly
4. **c)** fridge
5. **a)** -ant
6. **d)** speaker
7. **a)** smart
8. **d)** customers
9. **b)** common
10. **b)** microwave
11. **d)** on
12. **a)** headphones
13. **d)** survey
14. **a)** oven
15. **b)** buy

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. machines | 3. paid |
| 2. assistant | 4. deal |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. d) kettle | 6. a) discount |
| 2. c) smart | 7. c) delivery |
| 3. b) special offer | 8. b) popular |
| 4. a) stupid | 9. d) item |
| 5. b) quality | 10. d) sale |

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Exercises on Comparing adjectives

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. sweeter | 11. the most pleasant |
| 2. more interesting | 12. worst |
| 3. the heaviest | 13. louder |
| 4. better | 14. the most difficult |
| 5. than | 15. higher |
| 6. highest | 16. the most exciting |
| 7. more | 17. safer |
| 8. the largest | 18. less expensive |
| 9. Which | 19. more delicious |
| 10. cheapest | 20. easier |

Language Exercises (2)

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. were | 11. All |
| 2. need | 12. teams |
| 3. Either of | 13. is |
| 4. wants | 14. All |
| 5. films | 15. was |
| 6. was | 16. were |
| 7. and | 17. either |
| 8. looks | 18. or |
| 9. want | 19. is |
| 10. either | 20. either |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. either | 11. more expensive |
| 2. more popular | 12. expensive than |
| 3. All | 13. nor |
| 4. Either | 14. more delicious |
| 5. neither | 15. more expensive |
| 6. the cleverest | 16. more beautifully |
| 7. the largest | 17. Neither |
| 8. was | 18. them |
| 9. were | 19. Both |
| 10. nor | 20. All |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'm looking for a new T-shirt.
2. What colour would you like?
3. It's nice.
4. How much is it?
5. No, thanks.



Unit 2 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Who did you go with?
2. I bought a carpet.
3. It's red.
4. How much is it?
5. Yes, I want to see it.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. greener | 3. traditional |
| 2. store | 4. customer |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b) Smart | 4. a) smart |
| 2. b) discount | 5. b) buyer |
| 3. d) store | 6. b) -ly |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. is | 4. are |
| 2. best | 5. easiest |
| 3. more famous | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|--------|-----------------|
| 1. in | 3. instructions |
| 2. off | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. with | 3. ordinary |
| 2. look | |

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. c) fill in | 9. b) Handicrafts |
| 2. d) style | 10. a) soft |
| 3. a) wooden | 11. a) -ist |
| 4. b) plug | 12. c) sign in |
| 5. b) boring | 13. b) password |
| 6. d) -ful | 14. b) -ion |
| 7. a) turn on | 15. a) decorate |
| 8. a) charge | |

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 1. artists | 3. bags |
| 2. shells | 4. best |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. d) stop | 7. a) plugged |
| 2. d) -en | 8. d) interesting |
| 3. b) decorated | 9. b) -al |
| 4. a) turned | 10. d) complete |
| 5. c) Handicrafts | 11. b) -ion |
| 6. a) -ing | 12. d) traditional |

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. spent | 11. were |
| 2. painted | 12. had |
| 3. meet | 13. bought |
| 4. didn't win | 14. didn't invite |
| 5. were | 15. Did |
| 6. played | 16. wanted |
| 7. enjoy | 17. didn't visit |
| 8. wasn't | 18. flew |
| 9. decide | 19. finished |
| 10. stop | 20. arrived |

Language Exercises (2)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. was sleeping | 11. phoned |
| 2. were eating | 12. was taking |
| 3. Were | 13. was studying |
| 4. was listening | 14. playing |
| 5. were working | 15. were sleeping |
| 6. entered | 16. was reading |
| 7. were you | 17. was cleaning |
| 8. when | 18. were playing |
| 9. was making | 19. was doing |
| 10. when | 20. was watching |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. went | 11. studied |
| 2. swim | 12. did you do |
| 3. was reading | 13. was raining |
| 4. was studying | 14. was cooking |
| 5. was doing | 15. was walking |
| 6. played | 16. rang |
| 7. was watching | 17. were playing |
| 8. heard | 18. was studying |
| 9. went | 19. sleeping |
| 10. was playing | 20. saw |



Unit 2 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. earn | 3. quality |
| 2. products | 4. better |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. c) handicrafts

2. d) beautiful

3. d) a and c

B) 4. There are three handicrafts in the text.

5. Egyptian handicrafts are a special art, so we should keep them well.

6. No, I don't think Egyptian handicrafts will end over years because it's our culture.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. a) -ly | 4. a) password |
| 2. d) charge | 5. a) style |
| 3. a) batteries | 6. d) ordinary |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. was raining | 4. read |
| 2. heard | 5. phoned |
| 3. fell | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. complain | 2. toaster |
|-------------|------------|

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. with | 3. sent |
| 2. broken | |

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1. online | 3. delivery |
| 2. can | 4. discount |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. b) positive | 6. a) complaint |
| 2. a) horrible | 7. d) present |
| 3. d) -ion | 8. d) website |
| 4. a) call back | 9. a) un- |
| 5. b) -y | 10. a) essential |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to make a complaint.
2. What's the matter? / What's wrong?
3. Because it's broken.
4. When did you buy it?
5. Yes, I do.



Unit 2 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What's the matter?
2. What's wrong with it?
3. No, I didn't.
4. Because I didn't receive the instructions leaflet.
5. Thanks for your help.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. present | 3. wasn't |
| 2. with | 4. horrible |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) email | 4. a) delicious |
| 2. d) order | 5. d) -er |
| 3. a) terrible | 6. b) horrible |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. advise | 4. finish |
| 2. bigger | 5. playing |
| 3. is | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on: *Left to students.*

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. My laptop isn't working.
2. What's the problem?
3. Yes, it was.
4. Did you turn it on again?
5. ... you how to restore your password.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| A) 1. smart | 3. price |
| 2. deals | 4. cheapest |
| B) 1. assistant | 3. price |
| 2. none | 4. technology |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a) kettle | 5. c) quality |
| 2. b) -ant | 6. c) discount |
| 3. b) start | 7. d) sale |
| 4. c) battery | |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1. Both | 7. both |
| 2. Both | 8. either |
| 3. all | 9. luckier |
| 4. is | 10. worst |
| 5. did | 11. suits |
| 6. when | |



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I want to make a complaint.
2. What's the problem?
3. When did you make the order?
4. Can I have your name and the order number, please?
5. Thank you, I'll wait for your call.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1. website | 3. was |
| 2. delivery | 4. good |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. **b)** shopping online
2. **c)** microwave
3. **d)** saves time and effort
- B) 4. The underlined pronoun "I" refers to the writer.
5. Yes, the writer's mother was happy because the microwave was great, looked good in her kitchen, was easy to use, and made delicious meals.
6. Many people love online shopping because it saves time and effort.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. d) fridge | 4. c) follow |
| 2. d) intelligent | 5. c) relaxed |
| 3. d) charged | 6. a) un- |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| 1. watching | 4. None |
| 2. older than | 5. when |
| 3. either | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. **c)** I want to buy a smart TV.
2. **b)** Yes, they are.
3. **b)** How much is the bigger one?
4. **a)** Does it have a discount?
5. **c)** I'll take it.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** were playing
2. **a)** better
3. **b)** easiest
4. **b)** visited
5. **c)** was



Unit 3

My community



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. leisure
2. project
3. community

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. have
2. of
3. to

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** buy
2. **d)** are
3. **a)** the

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** heading
2. **b)** Facilities
3. **c)** damage
4. **d)** encourage
5. **d)** -ible
6. **a)** provide
7. **b)** en-
8. **d)** kind
9. **b)** Community
10. **a)** un-
11. **a)** education
12. **a)** private
13. **b)** Health
14. **b)** -ion
15. **d)** elderly

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. facilities | 3. pavements |
| 2. including | 4. disabled |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a) old | 7. d) dis- |
| 2. d) local | 8. a) neighbourhood |
| 3. c) volunteer | 9. d) Public services |
| 4. d) -ment | 10. a) -y |
| 5. c) safe | 11. a) well |
| 6. a) survey | 12. b) fix |

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. travelling | 11. isn't staying |
| 2. are | 12. helping |
| 3. aren't working | 13. am leaving |
| 4. are you doing | 14. are getting |
| 5. am going | 15. is meeting |
| 6. are having | 16. is coming |
| 7. is visiting | 17. are building |
| 8. going | 18. starting |
| 9. is flying | 19. are you going |
| 10. am cleaning | 20. isn't playing |

Language Exercises (2)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. amazing | 11. surprised |
| 2. pleased | 12. tired |
| 3. interested | 13. frightened |
| 4. terrifying | 14. disappointed |
| 5. relaxed | 15. confusing |
| 6. annoyed | 16. excited |
| 7. worried | 17. shocked |
| 8. scared | 18. amazing |
| 9. satisfying | 19. frightened |
| 10. boring | 20. exciting |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. am meeting | 11. interested |
| 2. frightened | 12. is coming |
| 3. boring | 13. amazing |
| 4. am playing | 14. frightened |
| 5. exciting | 15. are meeting |
| 6. is visiting | 16. disappointing |
| 7. worried | 17. is going |
| 8. are getting | 18. excited |
| 9. tiring | 19. am flying |
| 10. is building | 20. interesting |



Unit 3 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm reading an article.
2. What is it about?
3. What is it?
4. Yes, I do.
5. Yes, you can.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1. plan | 3. community |
| 2. rural | 4. and |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d) encourage | 4. a) achievement |
| 2. b) deliver | 5. d) dis- |
| 3. c) facilities | 6. b) damage |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. amazing | 4. is meeting |
| 2. surprised | 5. bored |
| 3. am playing | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. kindness
2. experience
3. donated

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. felt
2. for
3. friendly

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** respect
2. **b)** bright
3. **b)** -er
4. **b)** lodger
5. **c)** experience
6. **c)** manager
7. **c)** noticeboard
8. **b)** meetings
9. **a)** bench
10. **c)** -ion
11. **a)** give
12. **b)** -ness
13. **c)** pay
14. **d)** unkind
15. **a)** rest

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. pavement
2. tired
3. asked
4. rest

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** greet
2. **c)** historic
3. **a)** Graffiti
4. **b)** tenant
5. **a)** -ness
6. **d)** pass
7. **c)** surprised
8. **d)** -ition
9. **b)** kindness
10. **c)** friendly
11. **d)** social network services

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. is going to buy | 11. are going to try |
| 2. am not going to | 12. are going to |
| 3. show | 13. is going |
| 4. Are you | 14. are going |
| 5. going | 15. am going to |
| 6. are | 16. to do |
| 7. to jump | 17. aren't going to |
| 8. am going to speak | 18. is going to visit |
| 9. Are you going to | 19. clean |
| 10. to start | |



Unit 3 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. work | 3. elderly |
| 2. community | 4. to |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. b) Our village improvement

2. a) the facilities

3. b) student

B) 4. Emad couldn't write e-mails to Peter

recently because they were busy moving back to their village after "The Decent Life Initiative" had improved it.

5. The improvements in Emad's village include having a primary, preparatory, and secondary school, better facilities, great shops, job opportunities, a modern health care centre, and playgrounds for sports.

6. After 5 years, the villages in Egypt may continue to develop and improve, with better education and quality of life.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. a) lodger | 4. d) friendly |
| 2. c) donate | 5. c) succeed |
| 3. a) sunny | 6. d) -er |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. going | 4. going to get |
| 2. is going to join | 5. aren't going to |
| 3. are you going | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|-------|
| 1. go | 3. on |
| 2. wonderful | |

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) In addition to
2. a) However
3. c) washing

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. like | 3. volunteers |
| 2. painting | 4. again |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. c) addition | 7. b) warmly |
| 2. c) formal | 8. c) sadness |
| 3. d) adults | 9. d) reason |
| 4. a) proper | 10. d) exchange |
| 5. c) in- | 11. d) un- |
| 6. a) -er | 12. b) introduced |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Nice to meet you, Omar.
2. Nice to meet you, too.
3. I'm going to the supermarket.
4. Why are you going to the supermarket?
5. Can I join you?



Unit 3 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Pleased to meet you, too.
2. I think it's a good thing.
3. Yes, I do.
4. What do you do there?
5. When do you usually work there?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. dangerous | 3. rubbish |
| 2. get | 4. tourist |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. b) but | 4. d) suitable |
| 2. c) start | 5. c) pleasure |
| 3. a) warmly | 6. b) -ion |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------|
| 1. amazed | 4. being |
| 2. boring | 5. to have |
| 3. am going to borrow | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I like riding horses most.
2. what about our friend Rasha?
3. My favourite hobby is reading novels.
4. What was the last novel you read?
5. Yes, it is.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| A) 1. facilities | 3. volunteer |
| 2. amazing | 4. elderly |
| B) 1. tired | 3. politely |
| 2. pavement | 4. neighbourhood |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. c) stop | 6. d) in- |
| 2. c) lodger | 7. b) historic |
| 3. c) -ion | 8. a) equal |
| 4. c) facilities | 9. c) repairs |
| 5. b) gave | 10. a) interested in |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. is coming | 6. isn't playing |
| 2. amazing | 7. might |
| 3. am going to | 8. digging |
| 4. is leaving | 9. isn't going to rain |
| 5. is travelling | 10. are going to |



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm reading a book.
2. What is it called?
3. Yes, it is.
4. Who was it written by?
5. Yes, of course.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 1. place | 3. share |
| 2. together | 4. has |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. d) rural 3. b) water
2. b) receive

- B)** 4. The main idea of the passage is that the Decent Life Initiative is making a difference by improving public services for people living in rural areas of Egypt.
5. The Decent Life Initiative aims to provide better health care, education, job opportunities, and clean water to people in rural villages.
6. The Decent Life Initiative is important for children because it helps build schools and provides better education.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. d) encourage | 4. a) joined |
| 2. a) bench | 5. d) old |
| 3. b) Initiative | 6. c) -tion |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. amazing | 4. worried |
| 2. am meeting | 5. are you going |
| 3. aren't going to | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. **b)** Where are you going?
2. **a)** Why are you going there?
3. **d)** My family will come with me.
4. **b)** We can go swimming and snorkelling.
5. **d)** Thank you.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** excited
2. **d)** annoying
3. **a)** is playing
4. **c)** to travel
5. **a)** going



Unit 4

Have you ever travelled by plane?



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. competition | 3. married |
| 2. orphanage | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1. win | 3. on |
| 2. ride | |

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. b) travelled | 9. b) -al |
| 2. a) stay | 10. a) chance |
| 3. b) -ition | 11. b) adventures |
| 4. b) Snorkelling | 12. d) musical |
| 5. a) achieve | 13. d) report |
| 6. b) got | 14. b) sensitive |
| 7. b) Ever | 15. c) on |
| 8. b) graph | |

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. experiences | 3. ridden |
| 2. musical | 4. travelled |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. b) -ache | 7. d) experience |
| 2. b) orphanage | 8. d) in- |
| 3. c) adventure | 9. b) express |
| 4. b) got | 10. c) Snorkelling |
| 5. c) lose | 11. c) experience |
| 6. c) remember | |

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. worked | 11. long |
| 2. since | 12. since |
| 3. slept | 13. ever |
| 4. haven't | 14. haven't |
| 5. won | 15. since |
| 6. never | 16. has |
| 7. was | 17. long |
| 8. made | 18. never |
| 9. Have you | 19. met |
| 10. have | 20. for |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. been | 11. since |
| 2. for | 12. finished |
| 3. done | 13. born |
| 4. for | 14. been |
| 5. never | 15. never |
| 6. since | 16. haven't met |
| 7. has been | 17. for |
| 8. flown | 18. has travelled |
| 9. ever | 19. ever |
| 10. has known | 20. has been |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have lived in this house since I got married.
2. How long have you been married to my grandad?
3. How long have you known him?
4. Yes, they did.
5. They moved to your house five years ago.



Unit 4 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. My favourite sport is football.
2. How long have you played it?
3. When did you start it?
4. No, I haven't.
5. I usually play it on holidays.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. musical | 3. slept |
| 2. horse | 4. football |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c) chart | 4. a) snorkel |
| 2. d) headache | 5. a) -al |
| 3. a) wedding | 6. c) forgotten |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. cooked | 4. hasn't seen |
| 2. have | 5. joined |
| 3. has gone | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. countryside
2. join
3. concert

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. had
2. in
3. understood
4. missing

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) to have
2. d) private
3. a) so
4. c) travelled
5. b) keeps

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) returning
2. c) care about
3. a) -y
4. a) language
5. b) canoe
6. c) grandparents
7. b) found
8. a) teenage
9. b) -ed
10. a) follow
11. c) awesome
12. d) countryside
13. b) sequel
14. d) join

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. deaf
2. sign
3. care
4. won

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) canoe
2. b) awake
3. b) raft
4. a) deaf
5. d) safe
6. c) -er
7. b) -ing
8. d) dream
9. d) lost
10. b) unusual
11. b) learns

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. has rained
2. didn't win
3. cooked
4. read
5. has worked
6. lived
7. walked
8. played
9. have read
10. have visited
11. have waited
12. have learned
13. has written
14. has been
15. visited
16. has had
17. went
18. read
19. wanted
20. have played

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have been to the countryside.
2. Who did you go with?
3. What did you do there?
4. I returned yesterday.
5. Yes, I did.



Unit 4 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. since | 3. together |
| 2. moved | 4. wedding |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) life

2. d) teacher

3. c) dangerous

B) 4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to people.

5. He has spent five months travelling around the world.

6. The camping trip taught him about camping equipment and problems.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a) -y | 4. b) hear |
| 2. a) follow | 5. b) scared |
| 3. c) dream | 6. b) awake |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. been | 4. haven't worn |
| 2. celebrated | 5. have visited |
| 3. have lost | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. brain
2. miss
3. practise

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. give
2. from
3. intelligent
4. drew

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. dyslexia
2. both
3. understand
4. special

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c**) theme
2. **d**) no money
3. **b**) missed
4. **b**) discovered
5. **d**) smart
6. **a**) achieve
7. **b**) dis-
8. **b**) Dyslexia
9. **c**) arranged
10. **d**) ab-

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'm very sad.
2. I lost my smartwatch.
3. When did you lose it?
4. Where did you lose it?
5. Thank you very much.



Unit 4 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have learned to drive a car.
2. I learned that last month.
3. Who taught you that?
4. Yes, of course.
5. When can we start?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. never | 3. achieve |
| 2. an artist | 4. prize |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. c) fail | 4. b) coach |
| 2. c) volunteer | 5. c) discover |
| 3. d) powerful | 6. a) -ed |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| 1. was | 4. hasn't received |
| 2. completed | 5. Has |
| 3. tidied | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have lived there since I was born.
2. How long have you been married to my grandfather?
3. Do you like the country?
4. I think young people like big cities.
5. That's right.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| A) 1. ever | 3. snorkelled |
| 2. wonderful | 4. diving |
| B) 1. since | 3. instrument |
| 2. do | 4. ride |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. b) done | 6. d) done |
| 2. b) orphanage | 7. a) joining |
| 3. d) in- | 8. b) giving |
| 4. a) leave | 9. b) events |
| 5. d) discovered | 10. d) failed |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------|--------------------|
| 1. ever | 5. hasn't returned |
| 2. since | 6. have lost |
| 3. in | 7. has had |
| 4. sent | |



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Where did you get it?
2. What colour is it?
3. Yes, I have.
4. I felt very happy.
5. That's a good idea.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. dyslexia | 3. encouraged |
| 2. understand | 4. results |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. c) dream 3. a) beautiful
2. d) bed

- B) 4. He put the rock under his bed.
5. You should believe in yourself and work hard.
6. No. I don't believe in things that bring good luck because we should work hard to achieve what we want.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. a) result | 4. a) checks |
| 2. a) discovering | 5. b) leave |
| 3. d) won | 6. c) -al |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. hasn't travelled | 4. haven't received |
| 2. Since | 5. broke |
| 3. ever | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. **d)** I went to the zoo with my family.
2. **b)** Which animals did you see?
3. **a)** I loved the monkeys the most.
4. **c)** Did you take any pictures?
5. **a)** Yes, you can.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** never
2. **d)** for
3. **d)** since
4. **a)** learned
5. **d)** watched



Unit 5

Young role models



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. crosswords
2. musician
3. astronaut

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. achieve
2. for
3. in

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) model
2. a) as
3. d) unable

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) disabled
2. c) role model
3. a) create
4. d) astronaut
5. c) equipment
6. a) business person
7. b) -er
8. d) goal
9. a) leave
10. b) Scientists
11. c) -ent
12. c) received
13. b) award
14. d) enter
15. b) increase

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. article | 3. has been |
| 2. campaigner | 4. equipment |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. b) championship | 6. c) achievement |
| 2. b) campaigner | 7. a) see |
| 3. c) mathematician | 8. d) passed |
| 4. b) volunteer | 9. b) winner |
| 5. a) crosswords | 10. a) challenge |

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. have visited | 11. arrived |
| 2. wasn't | 12. finished |
| 3. didn't invite | 13. built |
| 4. watched | 14. won |
| 5. has never built | 15. has known |
| 6. haven't baked | 16. travel |
| 7. explored | 17. were |
| 8. has the city changed | 18. was |
| 9. has seen | 19. has been |
| 10. learned | 20. was |

Speaking Exercises

Finish the following dialogue:

1. Thank you.
2. When did you start it?
3. Who told you about it?
4. It was great.
5. Yes, I am.



Unit 5 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Who is Samar Abdelfattah?
2. Because I want to be a space scientist.
3. Are you interested in studying space?
4. I want to be an artist.
5. I draw every day.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. role | 3. campaigner |
| 2. medicine | 4. worked |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. c) hyperloop | 4. a) achievement |
| 2. d) goal | 5. a) similar |
| 3. b) prize | 6. b) -ian |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. have practised | 4. met |
| 2. had | 5. scored |
| 3. never forgotten | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. hold | 3. pandemic |
| 2. interview | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|-------------|--------|
| 1. playing | 3. for |
| 2. champion | |

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b) competitor | 9. d) biography |
| 2. a) perfect | 10. d) anxious |
| 3. b) -er | 11. d) app |
| 4. d) quarter-finals | 12. b) -er |
| 5. b) ordinary | 13. c) outside |
| 6. a) event | 14. b) bubble |
| 7. c) possible | 15. b) poem |
| 8. d) competition | |

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. interested | 3. concert |
| 2. have | 4. competition |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a) winner | 6. d) organiser |
| 2. b) im- | 7. b) -ive |
| 3. d) make | 8. c) loser |
| 4. a) watching | 9. a) workers |
| 5. c) organised | 10. a) in- |

Language Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. already
2. haven't
3. read
4. Has
5. yet
6. already
7. watched
8. hasn't bought
9. have already visited
10. arrived
11. has already bought
12. already
13. hasn't eaten
14. yet
15. hasn't learned
16. already
17. has created
18. played
19. hasn't come
20. have already packed

Speaking Exercises

Finish the following dialogue:

1. My favourite sport is football.
2. Did you take part in a tournament?
3. Which competition did you enter?
4. Yes, I have.
5. Because I don't have time.



Unit 5 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|--------|
| 1. volunteer | 3. app |
| 2. technology | 4. yet |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. d) real heroes

2. a) Teachers

3. b) respect

B) 4. The underlined word "They" refers to other heroes in our life.

5. We should respect soldiers because they are brave and ready to die for their country.

6. My role model in life is my father.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a) creative | 4. d) loser |
| 2. d) biography | 5. d) opposite |
| 3. d) health | 6. a) Quiet |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. hasn't visited | 4. studied |
| 2. already | 5. Has she met |
| 3. yet | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. performed | 3. score |
| 2. returned | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. came | 3. cause |
| 2. by | |

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) How
2. a) to learn
3. d) in
4. c) into

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. was
2. loved
3. scientist
4. finished

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) -al
2. c) international
3. a) hero
4. d) athlete
5. b) believe
6. d) find
7. c) damage
8. d) succeed in
9. b) driving
10. d) respond

Speaking Exercises

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I went to Cairo.
2. Why did you go to Cairo?
3. Yes, I did.
4. Great news!
5. How much is it?



Unit 5 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. That's great news!
2. When was that?
3. No, I haven't.
4. When will you get the award?
5. I'm really happy for you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. award
2. competition
3. has
4. contests

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) scholarship
2. c) result
3. a) hero
4. b) solve
5. d) dirty
6. b) -ion

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. already
2. hasn't learned
3. yet
4. Has the plane landed
5. already

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm worried about the exam results.
2. When will we get them?
3. It has been 14 days since we finished exams.
4. I hope you will get high marks, too.
5. Where do you intend to spend the summer holiday?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| A) 1. for | 3. made |
| 2. civilisation | 4. equinox |
| B) 1. have come | 3. experience |
| 2. wonders | 4. activities |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c) astronaut | 6. a) different |
| 2. b) passed | 7. b) musician |
| 3. a) Championship | 8. c) impossible |
| 4. c) worked | 9. b) award |
| 5. c) programmer | 10. c) incredible |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. in | 6. Did |
| 2. arrived | 7. have come |
| 3. already | 8. haven't visited |
| 4. haven't done | 9. were |
| 5. Has she cleaned | |



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What did you get it for?
2. What is the story about?
3. I took a week to write it.
4. Yes, I would.
5. I get the ideas for my stories on the internet.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. championship | 3. tournament |
| 2. competitors | 4. used |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) The Disabled and Challenges

2. c) difficulties

3. b) volunteer

B) 4. Magdy's parents were good because

they found a school for him to get good education.

5. Magdy had difficulties, but he achieved his goals and won an award.

He volunteered for charities and helped disabled people to find jobs.

6. If I worked for a charity, I would help the disabled and help them find good jobs.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b) campaigner | 4. c) engineering |
| 2. b) musician | 5. c) re- |
| 3. a) job | 6. b) take part |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. hasn't finished | 4. haven't finished |
| 2. come | 5. loved |
| 3. has already bought | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. **b)** Yes, I've been in a competition.
2. **d)** Which one have you been in?
3. **a)** Who won it?
4. **c)** Yes, I did.
5. **b)** Yes, I have.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** already
2. **a)** haven't finished
3. **b)** has already
4. **c)** yet
5. **a)** yet



Unit 6

What's wrong?



Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. behaviour
2. Social
3. height

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. have
2. spend
3. about
4. brave

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c**) is
2. **a**) playing
3. **d**) happy
4. **b**) alone
5. **c**) thousand

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c**) negative
2. **a**) disappoint
3. **d**) un-
4. **b**) secret
5. **a**) horrible
6. **c**) upset
7. **d**) encourage
8. **b**) popular
9. **a**) appearance
10. **d**) proud
11. **c**) media
12. **c**) en-
13. **d**) mental
14. **a**) positive
15. **c**) avoid

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. normal | 3. than |
| 2. bullying | 4. unsafe |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. b) happy | 6. b) uncomfortable |
| 2. a) lonely | 7. b) annoy |
| 3. d) Cyberbullying | 8. b) online |
| 4. b) support | 9. a) -ing |
| 5. c) upset | 10. b) encourage |

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. have | 11. Does |
| 2. has to | 12. don't have to |
| 3. have to | 13. wear |
| 4. doesn't have to | 14. have to |
| 5. Do | 15. doesn't have to |
| 6. have to | 16. visit |
| 7. Does | 17. don't have to |
| 8. have to | 18. water |
| 9. study | 19. do |
| 10. don't have to | 20. doesn't have to |

Language Exercises (2)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. mustn't | 11. run |
| 2. shouldn't | 12. do |
| 3. be | 13. mustn't |
| 4. might | 14. mustn't |
| 5. touch | 15. do |
| 6. recycle | 16. shouldn't |
| 7. might | 17. might |
| 8. mustn't | 18. cross |
| 9. go | 19. be |
| 10. share | 20. must |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. doesn't have to | 11. shouldn't |
| 2. keep | 12. be |
| 3. has | 13. must |
| 4. do | 14. leave |
| 5. don't have to | 15. shouldn't |
| 6. hurry | 16. don't have |
| 7. should | 17. have to |
| 8. read | 18. must |
| 9. have | 19. must |
| 10. don't have to | 20. have to |

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have got a bad message.
2. Why do you think they're doing that?
3. Have you told anyone about it?
4. You should tell your father.
5. You're welcome.



Unit 6 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. No, I don't.
2. Because I get some bad messages.
3. Don't worry.
4. What should I read?
5. What can we do on social media?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. bullying | 3. physical |
| 2. important | 4. most |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. b) Mental health | 4. a) cyberbully |
| 2. c) embarrassed | 5. d) un- |
| 3. c) Anxious | 6. b) brave |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. have to | 4. might |
| 2. mustn't | 5. doesn't have to |
| 3. should/must | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:
Left to students.



Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. comment
2. mistake
3. realised

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. for
2. stayed
3. lost
4. Develop

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b**) every day
2. **d**) join
3. **c**) was able
4. **b**) is called

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d**) continued
2. **b**) -ness
3. **a**) breathe
4. **d**) un-
5. **c**) damage
6. **b**) waterfall
7. **a**) -ly
8. **a**) jokes
9. **c**) un-
10. **a**) life jacket
11. **c**) relax
12. **d**) locked
13. **b**) avoid
14. **a**) Mindfulness
15. **c**) popular

Time to Practise

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. improve
2. include
3. relax
4. had to

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d**) -ly
2. **b**) joking
3. **a**) luckily
4. **d**) reason
5. **b**) include
6. **d**) Serious
7. **d**) stay up
8. **d**) continue
9. **a**) -er
10. **d**) sure

Language Exercises (1)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. had to | 11. go |
| 2. had to | 12. to study |
| 3. have to | 13. did |
| 4. to wear | 14. had to |
| 5. didn't have to | 15. Did |
| 6. had to look | 16. didn't have to |
| 7. had to | 17. had to |
| 8. had to | 18. had to |
| 9. have to | 19. had |
| 10. didn't have to | 20. didn't have |

Language Exercises (2)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. could | 11. could |
| 2. read | 12. reach |
| 3. to finish | 13. solve |
| 4. wasn't able to | 14. couldn't |
| 5. wasn't able to | 15. were |
| 6. Could you | 16. Was |
| 7. wasn't able | 17. wasn't able to |
| 8. to do | 18. couldn't |
| 9. Were | 19. climb |
| 10. couldn't | 20. wasn't able to |

Time to Practise

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. didn't have to | 11. was able to |
| 2. wasn't able | 12. was able to |
| 3. didn't have to | 13. didn't have to |
| 4. had to | 14. couldn't |
| 5. were able to | 15. couldn't |
| 6. could | 16. Did |
| 7. didn't have to | 17. have to |
| 8. swim | 18. wasn't able to |
| 9. were able to | 19. couldn't |
| 10. wasn't able to | 20. Could you |



Unit 6 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. sad | 3. had to |
| 2. broke | 4. walk |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. **b)** relaxing
2. **d)** fortunately
3. **a)** two

B) 4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to breathing exercises.

5. Breathing exercises are one of the simplest ways. Sit down in a quiet and safe place to breathe in and out to a slow count of three. Write down your thoughts. It may help you relax.

6. I think mindfulness is the best way to relax.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. c) relax | 4. b) review |
| 2. b) joke | 5. a) un- |
| 3. d) stay up | 6. c) sadness |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. couldn't | 4. had to |
| 2. weren't able | 5. had |
| 3. talk | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. seem | 3. diary |
| 2. explain | |

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. got
2. about
3. took

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. have to
2. bully
3. interrupt
4. quiet

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c**) member
2. **a**) clear
3. **d**) -ed
4. **c**) hide
5. **c**) serious
6. **a**) meet up
7. **b**) listener
8. **b**) interrupt
9. **c**) weather
10. **b**) understanding

Speaking Exercise

Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm not good.
2. What's the problem?
3. Tell me about your problem.
4. What makes you say that?
5. She's not working hard at school anymore.



Unit 6 Lessons (5 & 6) Test Yourself

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I have a problem.
2. What's the problem?
3. Why will your parents be angry with you?
4. Go on! It might help to talk about it.
5. Thank you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. seems
2. cope
3. depressed
4. should

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b**) cope with
2. **b**) interrupt
3. **a**) -ly
4. **b**) depressed
5. **d**) member
6. **b**) listener

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. must/have to
2. should
3. might
4. wasn't able
5. have to

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

Longman Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, they do.
2. What's your problem?
3. What about you?
4. I feel worried about exams.
5. I'll do that.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| A) 1. must | 3. cyberbully |
| 2. password | 4. available |
| B) 1. kind | 3. positive |
| 2. must | 4. rules |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. b encourage | 6. a frightening |
| 2. a alone | 7. d Complex |
| 3. d teenager | 8. c necessary |
| 4. c ordinary | 9. b -iness |
| 5. b improve | 10. d bad |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. mustn't
2. doesn't have to
3. Did
4. should
5. had to
6. wasn't able
7. didn't have to
8. bad
9. necessary
10. should



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What's it about?
2. Go on.
3. I broke her favourite toy.
4. Do you feel really bad about it?
5. You should talk to Sara about what happened.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. exercises | 3. peaceful |
| 2. hold | 4. mindfulness |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. d) all of them

2. c) points of view

3. a) Knowledge

B) 4. To be ready for life and work, your body needs food, exercise and sleep.

Eating healthy, staying active and getting enough rest.

5. Skills needed for future jobs include computing skills, problem-solving, communication and self-learning.

6. Improving your technical skills is important because technology plays a role in our lives. It will help you to be ready for any job.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. a) encourage | 4. b) joking |
| 2. d) secret | 5. d) un- |
| 3. b) cheerful | 6. d) cyberbully |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. was able to | 4. ride |
| 2. couldn't | 5. has to |
| 3. have to | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. c) What's wrong?
2. a) What happened?
3. d) Go on
4. c) I got bad results.
5. d) You should revise well next time.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. d) take
2. a) don't have to
3. a) should
4. b) was able to
5. d) couldn't

2. Ongoing Assessment Booklet Answers

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** peaceful
2. **b)** lake
3. **a)** helpful
4. **c)** cheap
5. **d)** Straight on
6. **d)** -ive

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. turn
2. on
3. at
4. between

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. How can I go to the Grand Egyptian Museum?
3. How long does it take to go there?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** library
2. **c)** in
3. **a)** opposite
4. **a)** on

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Go
2. in
3. at

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. transport
2. first
3. carries
4. comfortable

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. at | 4. from |
| 2. starts | 5. closes |
| 3. begins | 6. on |

**Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 1. c) desert | 3. a) leave |
| 2. c) attractive | 4. d) starts |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. The main idea of the passage is that some people think Sydney has the best transport system.
2. The fastest kind of transport in Sydney is fast trains leaving from Central Station.
3. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ferries.
- B)** 4. c) ferries
5. d) comfortable

**Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. attractive | 3. pollution |
| 2. polluted | 4. have |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. d) -ion | 4. b) begin |
| 2. b) indoor | 5. a) relaxing |
| 3. b) gardener | 6. a) Pottery |

**Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. different | 3. reviews |
| 2. inside | 4. opens |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. c) century | 3. d) have |
| 2. b) pottery | 4. a) leaves |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. turn
2. on
3. does

4. Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Sama to tell her about your trip to El-Orman Garden.

Left to students.



Unit 1 Mini-Test

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'd love to.
2. We will go there by train.
3. What time does it leave?
4. How long does it take?
5. The train leaves from platform 2.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. transport
2. comfortable
3. including
4. go

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** metro
2. **b)** passenger
3. **a)** lake
4. **a)** journey
5. **b)** un-
6. **d)** useful

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s):

1. on
2. Walk
3. does
4. is
5. plays

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Unit 1 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Here you are.
2. How much does it cost?
3. Which platform does the train go from?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. transport | 3. comfortable |
| 2. passengers | 4. stop |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. The text is about the Orman Garden in Egypt.
2. The Orman Garden opens at 9 am.
3. The garden includes wild flowers, plants from all over the country, a small lake, a museum, about 600 types of ancient plants and trees, water fountains, bridges and walking paths.
- B)** 4. a) hundred 5. d) forest

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. d) for | 3. d) starts |
| 2. b) pool | 4. b) on |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. in | 3. closes |
| 2. from | |

**Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. c) microwave | 4. a) un- |
| 2. b) kettle | 5. a) offer |
| 3. c) customer | 6. d) paid |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|-----------------|
| 1. is | 3. more popular |
| 2. fits | 4. nor |

**Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I want to buy a new jacket.
2. What colour do you want?
3. I'll take it.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. a) customers | 3. b) older |
| 2. d) discount | 4. a) nor |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more expensive
2. the most
3. could

4. Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Dalia to tell her about some of the items that you have in your kitchen.

Left to students.

**Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. traditional
2. stores
3. all
4. buy

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was doing
2. were
3. was watching
4. have
5. nor
6. was playing

**Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) wooden
2. d) password
3. a) when
4. c) was driving

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. The main idea of the passage is about handicrafts in Egypt.
 2. The jewellery boxes are made of wooden boxes decorated with shells in traditional designs.
 3. The leather of the Egyptian bags is of the best quality and very soft.

- B)**
4. c) bags
 5. d) old

**Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. used
2. traditional
3. customers
4. order

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. c) company | 4. c) email |
| 2. a) amazing | 5. d) -ly |
| 3. b) handicraft | 6. d) traditional |

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. decided | 3. complaint |
| 2. delivery | 4. back |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. c) explain | 3. c) went |
| 2. b) product | 4. d) was talking |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. when | 3. worst |
| 2. Either | |

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:
Left to students.



Unit 2 Mini-Test

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'm looking for a shirt.
2. Yes, we have.
3. What colours do you have?
4. Can I see a blue one?
5. I'll take it.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. handicrafts | 3. either |
| 2. colourful | 4. popular |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. b) oven | 4. b) review |
| 2. d) charge | 5. b) -al |
| 3. a) positive | 6. b) quietly |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s):

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1. longer | 4. was reading |
| 2. or | 5. was going |
| 3. better | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Unit 2 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I want to make a complaint.
2. What's the problem?
3. Can I take your phone number?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. ordered | 3. delicious |
| 2. with | 4. about |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. The main idea of this email is making a complaint about the poor quality of a television.
 2. The writer bought his television on 15th December.
 3. The writer wants to replace his television with high quality with no extra cost.

- B)**
- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 4. a) 15 | 5. c) broken |
|----------|--------------|

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. b) quality | 3. c) wrote |
| 2. b) make | 4. c) saw |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. colder | 3. heard |
| 2. was | |

**Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c) achievement | 4. b) -ible |
| 2. c) architect | 5. b) unhealthy |
| 3. d) safe | 6. a) pavement |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. starting
2. am meeting
3. are having
4. interesting

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Yes, we do.
2. Where does your uncle live?
3. Yes, sure.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a) repair | 3. c) isn't he |
| 2. a) leisure | 4. d) surprised |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. disappointed | 3. boring |
| 2. is spending | |

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 1. opportunities | 3. education |
| 2. disappointed | 4. make |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. going to study | 4. to solve |
| 2. Are | 5. are we going |
| 3. is going to buy | 6. am going to make |

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. d) communicate | 3. d) aren't going to |
| 2. c) respect | 4. d) is going to take |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Importance of Helping Others.

2. We will remember the day when a stranger was kind.

3. The writer enjoys helping others.

B) 4. c) directions

5. a) help

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. to do | 3. attraction |
| 2. Furthermore | 4. complete |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. d) castle | 4. a) un- |
| 2. c) adult | 5. c) conclude |
| 3. b) result | 6. a) summary |

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. noticeboard | 3. delivered |
| 2. bench | 4. kindness |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a) attraction | 3. d) to visit |
| 2. c) go | 4. b) going to stay |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 1. disappointed | 3. clean |
| 2. excited | |

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on: *Left to students.*



Unit 3 Mini-Test

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I'm worried.
2. What are you worried about?
3. What should we do?
4. We can plant trees.
5. I'm going to plant trees next Friday.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. Initiative | 3. advice |
| 2. with | 4. both |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. b) bench | 4. a) greet |
| 2. a) tenant | 5. c) -ness |
| 3. d) pleasant | 6. b) young |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s):

- | | |
|----------------------|------------|
| 1. are going to sell | 4. to move |
| 2. are flying | 5. bored |
| 3. exciting | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Unit 3 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. No, I don't.
2. Nice to meet you.
3. How about going to the club?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. volunteer | 3. doing |
| 2. elderly | 4. disabled |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. Community Projects in Egypt.
 2. Greenish uses the power of youth.
 3. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to Greenish.

- B)**
- | | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 4. d) heart | 5. d) all of these |
|-------------|--------------------|

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. c) clean up | 3. c) is going |
| 2. b) introduce | 4. d) to move |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. are having | 3. am going to travel |
| 2. interesting | |

**Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a) orphanage | 4. a) remember |
| 2. b) Snorkelling | 5. d) instrument |
| 3. a) -ache | 6. b) lose |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. has been | 3. have done |
| 2. had | 4. long |

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I have lived in this house for 44 years.
2. Where were you born?
3. Have you ever been to another country?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** snorkel
2. **c)** waited
3. **a)** ever
4. **d)** been to

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. have lived
2. since
3. never

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. countryside
2. never
3. local
4. museums

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. for
2. Did
3. spent
4. didn't
5. didn't go
6. haven't drunk

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** joined
2. **a)** sign
3. **c)** has written
4. **d)** went

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1.** The importance of reading.
- 2.** The clever students are those who try to read more in their spare time.

3. Students can waste their time by watching TV or using the internet uselessly.

B) 4. d) free

5. c) knowledge

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. problem

3. comfortable

2. entering

4. community

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) achieve

4. a) -ist

2. c) tiny

5. c) failed

3. b) Dyslexia

6. b) windsurf

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. moved

3. results

2. preparatory

4. came

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) huge

3. d) never

2. d) give

4. b) invented

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. since

2. travelled

3. Has

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.



Unit 4 Mini-Test

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I have.

2. Which cities have you been to?

3. When did you go there?

4. Yes, I did.

5. Yes, I do.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. had | 3. sign |
| 2. special | 4. about |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a) canoe | 4. d) coach |
| 2. d) join | 5. b) -ing |
| 3. b) awake | 6. a) hard |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s):

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. lived | 4. played |
| 2. haven't visited | 5. has travelled |
| 3. has read | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Unit 4 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. What about you?
2. It was great.
3. Have you been to the USA many times?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. sign | 3. hearing |
| 2. deaf | 4. explains |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. The writer has lived in Cairo all their life.
 2. The parents took the writer for some tests.
 3. The writer volunteers at a charity for children with dyslexia and teaches them about art.

- B)**
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 4. b) parents | 5. d) artist |
|---------------|--------------|

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. c) behave | 3. b) didn't sleep |
| 2. a) character | 4. a) ever |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|---------|
| 1. lost | 3. ever |
| 2. has watched | |

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. b) goal | 4. d) decrease |
| 2. c) received | 5. d) enter |
| 3. a) different | 6. c) -ment |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. have lived
2. travel
3. Did
4. has worked

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I did.
2. When did you finish it?
3. Did you find a job?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. b) role | 3. b) have been |
| 2. a) challenge | 4. a) since |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. has worn | 3. haven't read |
| 2. had | |

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. musical | 3. nervous |
| 2. since | 4. concert |

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. haven't done | 4. hasn't finished |
| 2. yet | 5. haven't |
| 3. have done | 6. already |

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. b) creative | 3. b) yet |
| 2. d) quarter-finals | 4. d) already |

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1.** Samar Abdelfattah is now a space engineer and business person.
- 2.** Samar's team was the only team from Africa and the Middle East.
- 3.** The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to other young engineers.

- B) 4. c**) type 5. **d**) the USA

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. was | 3. scholarship |
| 2. teenager | 4. athletes |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) athlete | 4. d) -ion |
| 2. b) cause | 5. a) -al |
| 3. a) scholarship | 6. c) teenager |

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. got | 3. awards |
| 2. nervous | 4. come |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a) repair | 3. b) yet |
| 2. d) musician | 4. a) have cut |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| 1. yet | 3. done |
| 2. already | |

4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.



Unit 5 Mini-Test

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. I've been to Paris.
3. I've been there for two weeks.
4. Why did you go there?
5. Did you enjoy the competition?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. competition
2. award
3. has
4. contests

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a) model | 4. a) spectators |
| 2. a) competitor | 5. d) im- |
| 3. c) scored | 6. b) competition |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s):

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. hasn't | 4. has created |
| 2. wrote | 5. travelled |
| 3. already | |

5. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Unit 5 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Congratulations!
3. What is the award for?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1. education | 3. create |
| 2. volunteer | 4. yet |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1.** The passage is about the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt.

2. 32 countries joined the championship.
3. Cleaners worked day and night to clean the stadiums and hotels and make them safe.

B) 4. b) no

5. d) championship

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) hold
2. a) contest
3. c) already
4. d) Have

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. haven't
2. haven't gone
3. have already listened

**Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2
Follow up Worksheet**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) social
2. a) horrible
3. a) secret
4. c) -ing
5. d) receive
6. b) support

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. don't have to
2. mustn't
3. don't have to
4. might

**Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I feel bad about being fat.
2. What should I do?
3. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) embarrassed
2. d) say
3. b) mustn't
4. b) have

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. mustn't
2. don't have
3. have to

- 4. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:**
Left to students.

**Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow up Worksheet**

- 1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. sad | 3. had to |
| 2. broke | 4. walk |

- 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. had to | 4. Did |
| 2. didn't have to | 5. have to |
| 3. were able | 6. couldn't |

**Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet**

- 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **a)** baker's
2. **a)** mental
3. **b)** Could you
4. **d)** had to

- 2. Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- A) 1.** Eyad didn't want to come to school the next day.
- 2.** We should think before doing something when someone suggests it.
- 3.** The underlined pronoun "He" refers to Eyad.
- B) 4. b)** student **5. c)** joke

**Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow up Worksheet**

- 1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. energy | 3. comfortable |
| 2. shouldn't | 4. forget |

- 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. d) tip | 4. d) Mindfulness |
| 2. a) horrible | 5. a) practise |
| 3. d) un- | 6. c) dentist |

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. depressed | 3. member |
| 2. to | 4. was able |

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. d) make | 3. b) couldn't |
| 2. c) members | 4. c) had |

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. wasn't able to | 3. don't have to |
| 2. to get | |

4. Write an email of SIX (6) sentences to your friend Hana to tell her about teenage problems.

Left to students.

3. Final Revision & Exams Booklet Answers



Part 1 Final Revision

Al-Adwaa Test on Units 1 & 2

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to make a complaint.
2. What's the problem?
3. I ordered it a week ago.
4. I'd like to have my money back.
5. Where is your shop?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. between
2. interesting
3. nature
4. enjoyed

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. d) Ismailia.

2. c) between

3. b) 3 times

B) 4. It refers to Ismailia.

5. It's known in Egypt as The City of Beauty and Enchantment because it's very beautiful.

6. It was named after Khedive Ismail.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) bank

4. c) interesting

2. c) deal

5. c) new

3. b) unhappy

6. b) -er

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. does

4. hardest

2. on

5. either

3. were watching

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Nice to meet you.
3. What are you going to do next weekend?
4. How about going together?
5. That's great.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. graffiti
2. encouraged
3. going to
4. attraction

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. **c)** the problem of dyslexia
 2. **d)** asked a teacher to give me special lessons
 3. **d)** both drawing and painting
- B)**
4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to the writer's parents.
 5. The writer had dyslexia, but he was helped and became an artist.
 6. I think the writer plans to help other children by teaching them about art.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. c) graffiti | 4. b) greet |
| 2. b) surprised | 5. a) tenant |
| 3. d) -ment | 6. b) stupid |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. surprising | 4. done |
| 2. known | 5. are going |
| 3. saw | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. It was great.
2. Why was it great?
3. When did your teacher give you the prize?
4. It was for writing a poem.
5. Thank you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. bullying | 3. must |
| 2. experienced | 4. common |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. b) Taking a warm bath or shower

2. a) Reading

3. c) way

B) 4. Ways to Relax.

5. To practise deep breathing, find a quiet place to sit, close your eyes, take slow, deep breaths in through your nose and out through your mouth, and focus on your breath.

6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to reading.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. a) goal | 4. c) support |
| 2. d) cope with | 5. b) im- |
| 3. a) anxious | 6. d) succeed in |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. yet | 4. couldn't |
| 2. Was | 5. have |
| 3. already | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises

Unit 1

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. When does it start?
2. We can take the 8:30 train.
3. It finishes at 12:30 pm.
4. Is there a train at that time?
5. Sounds good.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. past
2. go
3. does the lesson start
4. opens
5. leaves
6. ends
7. does this plane arrive
8. is
9. leave
10. does

Unit 2

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What is the problem?
2. I'm sorry about that.
3. Can I take your phone number, please?
4. Yes, of course.
5. You're welcome.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. more expensive | 8. better |
| 2. the most useful | 9. wants |
| 3. easier | 10. went |
| 4. busiest | 11. bought |
| 5. is | 12. were walking |
| 6. Is | 13. best |
| 7. worst | 14. Both |

Unit 3

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. No, I'm not enjoying it.
2. Why aren't you enjoying that book?
3. What type of books do you like?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Thanks a lot.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. disappointed | 7. is going to be |
| 2. surprised | 8. is going to start |
| 3. amazed | 9. is going to talk |
| 4. interesting | 10. going to play |
| 5. excited | 11. surprising |
| 6. are going to clean up | 12. tiring |

Unit 4

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. played | 12. known |
| 2. ever seen | 13. since |
| 3. for | 14. for |
| 4. since | 15. been |
| 5. has lived | 16. Has |
| 6. has been | 17. made |
| 7. had | 18. never |
| 8. married | 19. written |
| 9. lived | 20. won |
| 10. for | 21. has learned |
| 11. lived | 22. been |

Unit 5

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I won the story writing competition!
2. Was it at school?
3. Did you come first last year?
4. I will get the prize tomorrow.
5. Thank you, Mum.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. passed | 7. yet |
| 2. have visited | 8. has already talked |
| 3. wanted | 9. finished |
| 4. have worked | 10. has worked |
| 5. travelled | 11. has read |
| 6. built | 12. has created |

Unit 6

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What happened?
2. It might help to talk about it, you know.
3. Oh no!
4. No, I didn't.
5. I was too nervous to talk to her.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. has to | 7. could |
| 2. didn't have to | 8. has to |
| 3. wasn't able to | 9. must |
| 4. has to | 10. shouldn't |
| 5. weren't able | 11. has to |
| 6. mustn't | 12. don't have to |



End of Term Practice

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Hi. I have a problem with my laptop.
2. What is the problem?
3. it was charged well.
4. When can I take it?
5. you will make sure there is no problem with battery.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. when | 3. dyslexia |
| 2. discovered | 4. results |

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. **b)** how to keep food cool
2. **a)** made ice
3. **b)** noisy and making the room hot
- B)** 4. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges. With the advent of electricity, fridges became more common in households and by the present day, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.
5. Places which sold meat started to have fridges by 1900 because they needed to keep meat fresh for longer periods of time.
6. Yes, people will continue to develop the fridge. Other things people can make better include transportation and renewable energy production.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **b)** rest
2. **c)** -able
3. **d)** asleep
4. **c)** pays rent for a room in a house
5. **b)** made
6. **c)** group of people working in our school

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. boring
2. driven
3. don't have to
4. more useful
5. is

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.



Part 3 Final Exams

(1) Governorates Exams

1. Cairo Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to make a complaint.
2. What's the problem?
3. It stopped working.
4. When did you buy it?
5. Yes, I do.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. role | 3. campaigner |
| 2. medicine | 4. worked |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. b) Space

2. c) sleep

3. a) astronauts

B) 4. The astronaut felt great because they had reached the space station and would have more people to help them.

5. There were six astronauts on the space station first.

6. It is difficult to be an astronaut because it is hard work.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. b) platform | 4. b) discount |
| 2. c) discourage | 5. a) lodger |
| 3. d) charge | 6. a) -ness |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. were able
2. is going
3. better
4. both
5. for

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

2. Giza Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to buy a present for my mother.
2. What do you want to buy?
3. How much is it?
4. Yes, it is.
5. You're welcome.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. hot | 3. staying |
| 2. tourists | 4. traffic |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. b) Our village improvement

2. a) facilities

3. b) student

B) 4. Emad couldn't send emails recently because they were busy moving back to their village after "The Decent Life Initiative" improved it.

5. The improvements in Emad's village include the primary, preparatory, and secondary schools, job opportunities, modern health care centre, playgrounds for sports and community facilities.

6. After 5 years, the villages of Egypt are likely to be more developed with many, facilities and a better life.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) kettle

4. a) complaint

2. b) -er

5. b) orphanage

3. d) safe

6. d) boring

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. nor

4. do

2. on

5. wasn't

3. more popular

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

3. Qalubia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want to buy a new mobile phone.
2. I want to buy a smart mobile phone.
3. What do you think of this one?
4. It's 5000 pounds.
5. Anything else?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. bullying | 3. physical |
| 2. important | 4. most |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. **d)** The importance of computers

2. **b)** computers

3. **c)** great

B) 4. Computers are more efficient than human beings because they have very good memories, can store huge amounts of information.

5. Computers are widely used in fields such as health, where they help in keeping patient records and providing information quickly and easily.

6. I do not think computers will control the world one day because they are tools created by humans.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** quiet

5. **b)** championship

2. **b)** -al

6. **d)** social network

3. **d)** Public services

services

4. **a)** discovering

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is building

4. starts

2. best

5. didn't invite

3. hasn't seen

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

4. Menofia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What did you get it for?
2. What is the story about?
3. It took two weeks to write it.
4. Yes, I'd love to.
5. I get the ideas for my stories from the internet.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. musical | 3. slept |
| 2. horse | 4. football |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. d) colours

2. a) dark or light

3. c) Spiders

B) 4. Some people have colour blindness, which makes it difficult for them to see certain colours such as green, brown or red.

5. Cats and dogs can see blue and green light better than people.

6. Colours can help organise our life by serving as signals. For example, the colours of traffic lights help organise traffic on the roads.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) A volunteer

5. c) difficult

2. d) A goal

6. d) help and

3. a) awake

encourage

4. b) -ship

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. leaves

4. cooked

2. most expensive

5. excited

3. are going to do

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

5. Dakahlia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I want to make a complaint.
2. I ordered a microwave online, but it hasn't arrived yet.
3. When did you make the order?
4. Can I take your name and the order number?
5. Thank you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. Initiative | 3. advice |
| 2. with | 4. both |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. c) flexible

2. c) points of view

3. a) Knowledge

B) 4. Your body needs healthy food, exercise, and enough sleep to be ready for life and work.

5. I think the skills needed for future jobs are problem solving, communication and self-learning.

6. I should improve my technical skills because technology controls our life.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d) Cyberbullying | 4. b) buyer |
| 2. b) campaigner | 5. d) intelligent |
| 3. c) -able | 6. a) awake |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. at
2. since
3. big
4. interesting
5. don't have

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

6. Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. It was not good.
2. Why do you say that?
3. When did that happen?
4. She ate bad food.
5. That's a good idea.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. land | 3. both |
| 2. cities | 4. water |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. c) Electricity is important in modern life, so we must save it

2. b) use energy-saving bulbs

3. a) change things in a good way

B) 4. Life can't be imagined without electricity because it is an essential part of our daily lives. We use it in many fields.

5. We can save electricity in many ways such as opening up the windows, using energy-saving bulbs and installing solar panels.

6. Yes, I would like to use solar panels in my future house because they help in saving a lot of energy.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b) sports centre | 4. c) -ion |
| 2. c) discover | 5. a) decorated |
| 3. d) fast | 6. b) opportunities |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. at
2. have been
3. was giving
4. wasn't able
5. disappointed

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

7. Beheira Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. No I didn't.
2. Why didn't you watch it?
3. What are you interested in?
4. I like tennis best.
5. I practise it in the club.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. artists
2. shells
3. bags
4. best

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. **b)** good

2. **d)** no time

3. **a)** shopping

B) 4. My parents' plan for the journey was to shop and to go to the beach.

5. I think they went back to El-Nahda Street to buy a carpet.

6. A trip to Port Said.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** adjective

4. **b)** discover

2. **a)** cyberbully

5. **b)** teach

3. **d)** dream

6. **c)** passenger

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Both

2. arrives

3. hasn't travelled

4. Were

5. least

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

8. Damietta Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'm reading an interesting book.
2. What is it called?
3. Yes, it is.
4. Who was it written by?
5. Yes, of course.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. messages | 3. Pyramids |
| 2. is | 4. ancient |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) Benefits of travel

2. b) people can understand each other

3. a) tourists

B) 4. People began to go on holidays all over the world more often because travel has become much easier than ever before.

5. Tourism is important to the economy and it increases understanding between people of different cultures.

6. Yes, I think tourism is good for the economy of the country because it brings in money. Additionally, it promotes cultural exchange and understanding between people of different cultures.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. c) orphanage | 4. b) -ation |
| 2. d) Cyberbullying | 5. b) ship |
| 3. b) awake | 6. a) worried |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. swim | 4. arrives |
| 2. amazing | 5. has had |
| 3. was | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

9. Sharkia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I need your help.
2. How can I help you?
3. you should guess the meaning of the new words.
4. What should I do after that?
5. You're welcome.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. place
2. together
3. share
4. has

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. b) A kind grandfather.

2. a) ill

3. d) the prescription

B) 4. Grandfather, Hussein, leaves the room when the kids are around because the doctor orders him to keep away from children.

5. Omar and Aseel's grandfather is kind, but nowadays he's ill.

6. Yes, I think Hussein will play with the kids again because he is kind and he loves them.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) adjective
2. d) experience
3. a) museum
4. c) donate
5. b) Lose
6. d) award

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Since
2. lived
3. doesn't watch
4. Either
5. being

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

10. Ismailia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What do you love reading?
2. What about you?
3. I love fishing.
4. I'll call you when I go fishing.
5. You're welcome.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. care | 3. memories |
| 2. happiness | 4. life |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) August

2. b) the festival

3. d) business

B) 4. The main idea of the text is to describe the Ismailia mango festival, its events and its purpose.

5. The governorate celebrates the mango season by holding the Ismailia mango festival, which includes events such as road shows, mango-cutting competitions and musical shows.

6. Yes, I think that the festival is useful for the city because it attracts more tourists and supports local businesses.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) support

4. b) -able

2. c) experience

5. a) creative

3. a) asleep

6. d) results

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was

4. is going to spend

2. interested

5. watching

3. Neither

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

11. Suez Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Is this your first visit to Egypt?
2. I would like to visit Aswan and Luxor.
3. How long are you going to stay here?
4. I've tried koshari.
5. Thank you.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. role
2. the best
3. championships
4. creative

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. d) How to be successful
2. b) interested
3. c) remember
- B) 4. Three years ago, Tarek used to watch video games, waste time playing and chatting with friends.
5. Tarek wants to say that working hard and being interested in what you learn can lead to success.
6. Yes, I think Tarek will get a good job in the future because now he works hard.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. b) switch off | 4. d) password |
| 2. d) botanical garden | 5. b) -ance |
| 3. a) bench | 6. b) discovered |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1. is | 4. leaves |
| 2. amazed | 5. yet |
| 3. shouldn't | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

12. New Valley Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. No, I haven't.
2. What does it represent?
3. What do teachers do there?
4. Yes, I do.
5. You're welcome.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. railway | 3. journey |
| 2. when | 4. peaceful |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. **b)** tired

2. **a)** forget our work

3. **c)** swimming and walking

B) 4. We can renew our energy by sleeping.

5. If we work all the time without taking breaks, we may have no energy to continue working.

6. Yes, I think having a rest is very important to recharge and avoid making mistakes in our work.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Initiative

4. **c)** im-

2. **a)** complaint

5. **b)** fifty

3. **c)** Show

6. **a)** workers

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. cut

2. was sleeping

3. is going to join

4. worst

5. have to

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

Left to students.

13. Matrouh Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. My favourite sport is football.
2. Yes, I did.
3. How did you feel?
4. Where did you watch the final match?
5. I hope they win the World Cup one day.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. university | 3. was |
| 2. clever | 4. greatly |

3. Read the following text, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. **b)** education.
2. **c)** develop
3. **d)** good
- B) 4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to parents.
5. Parents like their kids to have good professions like doctors, engineers, officers, or any of the other important professions. They have high hopes for their children.
6. Yes, I agree with the writer that good education is important for everyone because it helps in achieving personal and social goals.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) email | 4. a) dis- |
| 2. d) spectators | 5. b) popular |
| 3. b) fix | 6. c) volunteer |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. was able to | 4. arrives |
| 2. won | 5. better |
| 3. interesting | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

14. Fayoum Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I want a ticket to Aswan.
2. It's 150 pounds.
3. What time does the train to Aswan leave?
4. How long does the journey take?
5. The train leaves from platform 4.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. expensive | 3. floors |
| 2. better | 4. streets |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. c) The disabled and charities

2. c) difficulties

3. b) volunteer

B) 4. Magdy's parents were good because they found a school for him and they supported his education.

5. Some schools did not have the right equipment for disabled as a campaigner. Magdy Abdel and his parents decided to find a school.

6. If I worked in a charity, I would help support people in need.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. c) hyperloop | 4. a) -en |
| 2. b) destination | 5. b) damage |
| 3. c) special offer | 6. d) cyberbully |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. easiest
2. Has
3. starts
4. was reading
5. boring

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

15. Beni Suef Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Pleased to meet you, too.
2. I think working for charities is great.
3. Yes, I do.
4. What do you do there?
5. When do you work there?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. adventure | 3. peaceful |
| 2. monuments | 4. Furthermore |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) Helping and kindness

2. b) The leather

3. d) a lot of

B) 4. I think the shoemaker was a good man because he was kind and helpful to others.

5. He could sell the shoes very quickly because they were well made and of good quality.

6. I think the shoemaker would become successful and wealthy.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) returned

4. a) -ness

2. d) loser

5. c) complaint

3. a) achievement

6. c) canoe

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. starting

2. takes

3. for

4. must

5. already

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

16. Minia Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. He is a teacher.
2. Where does he work?
3. He teaches English.
4. Yes, he does.
5. Do you want to be a teacher, too?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. in
2. population
3. attractive
4. garden

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. d) Real heroes

2. a) Teachers

3. b) respect

B) 4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to famous persons such as scientists, film stars, sportsmen and writers.

5. We should respect soldiers because they are ready to die for their country.

6. My role model in life is my father.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) fish

4. c) volunteer

2. a) password

5. a) -ful

3. b) antonym

6. b) challenge

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more expensive
2. was watching
3. boring
4. has been
5. already

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

17. Assiut Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. Who did you go with?
2. I bought a carpet.
3. The carpet is red.
4. How much is it?
5. Yes, I do.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. plan
2. rural
3. community
4. and

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. b) wallet
 2. d) rich
 3. a) the fish
- B)**
4. Ali went fishing alone because his father was ill.
 5. Ali began to feel sad and disappointed when he couldn't catch any fish.
 6. Yes, I think the story ended happily because Ali was able to catch a huge fish and his mother found his wallet inside the fish.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) encourage
2. c) reserve
3. d) no money
4. b) hear
5. c) lose
6. b) -ful

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. yet
2. boring
3. leaves
4. were
5. on

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

18. Qena Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I bought it last week.
2. It is 5000 pounds.
3. Where did you buy it?
4. Is it smartphone?
5. Yes, of course.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. at | 3. Egyptian |
| 2. pool | 4. weekend |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. a) Decent Life Initiative

2. b) 35

3. c) public services

B) 4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to Omar's friends.

5. Houses in the village are now provided with electricity and clean water.

6. I think that Omar will come back and live in the village again because the improvements in the village make it a better place to live in.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) aquarium

4. d) password

2. d) email

5. c) -ese

3. b) quiet

6. a) kettle

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. on

2. easier

3. amazing

4. ever

5. mustn't

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

19. Sohag Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. We can get information about him on the internet.
2. Have you got any information about him?
3. Yes, he did.
4. That's a good idea.
5. When can we meet?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. physical
2. healthier
3. important
4. practise

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. c) The old lady and the waiter

2. b) far from

3. a) loved

B) 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the two dogs.

5. The old lady left her money and jewellery to her sons.

6. No, I don't think the waiter was happy at the end of the story because he only received the dogs.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) discount

4. c) in-

2. d) relax

5. b) awake

3. b) support

6. c) complaint

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. at

2. less expensive

3. exciting

4. been

5. arrives

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

20. Luxor Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I am not sure.
2. Why don't we visit the library?
3. What do you like reading?
4. We can go there by bus.
5. That's great.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. work
2. community
3. elderly
4. to

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. **b**) Shopping online
2. **c**) microwave
3. **d**) saves time and effort
- B) 4. The underlined pronoun "I" refers to the writer.
5. Yes, I think the writer's mother was happy because it was great and looked good in her kitchen and it was easy to use.
6. The delivery arrived and the mother was very happy with it.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. b) bench | 4. b) in- |
| 2. d) pass | 5. b) aquarium |
| 3. c) sad | 6. c) encourages |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. haven't finished
2. likes
3. next
4. excited
5. more expensive

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

21. Aswan Governorate

1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. I'd like to be a doctor.
2. Where would you like to work?
3. What about you?
4. I'd like to be a computer programmer.
5. I hope so, too.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. online
2. discount
3. delivery
4. able

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. **c**) physical and mental challenges
2. **a**) artist
3. **d**) two
- B)** 4. Many people enjoy challenges like climbing, running, swimming, lifting and so on.
5. Yes, I think people will face more challenges in the future because of technology in many fields.
6. Some people enjoy climbing because they like the physical challenge and the feeling of success.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. d) orphanage | 4. c) Graffiti |
| 2. a) correct | 5. b) include |
| 3. b) -ful | 6. b) competition |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------------|--------|
| 1. exciting | 4. are |
| 2. leaves | 5. had |
| 3. have lived | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

22. Port Said Governorate

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

1. **a)** Why do tourists come to Egypt
2. **d)** Yes, we have the Pyramids and temples
3. **c)** What about the natural world
4. **b)** Relaxing on the beach and snorkelling
5. **a)** Yes, and I saw beautiful coral reefs

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) monument | 4. a) adjective |
| 2. b) shop assistant | 5. c) synonyms |
| 3. a) complaint | 6. d) proud |

3. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. c) better | 3. b) Has |
| 2. b) are starting | 4. c) shouldn't |

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)**
1. **a)** read about them in a book or on the internet
 2. **d)** the things that happened in the past
 3. **c)** hobby
- B)**
4. The pronoun "it" refers to the tiger.
 5. The habit of reading as a hobby started for the writer in his childhood, with parents reading many types of stories to them.
 6. By reading, we can learn from other people's experiences, and educate ourselves about different topics, which can help us make decisions and plan for our future life.

5. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. dangerous | 3. tourist |
| 2. get | |

6. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

Left to students.

(2) Al-Azhar Exams

1. Alexandria Zone

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. It's 70 pounds.
2. What time does it leave?
3. Which platform does it leave from?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. Customers | 3. discount |
| 2. to go | 4. cheaper |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A) 1. The old man felt very happy whenever he touched his gold.
2. The old man hid his bag of gold in a hole in the ground.
3. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to the old man.

- B) 4. a) sad
5. b) stolen

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. a) -ous | 3. c) Handicrafts |
| 2. d) annoyed | 4. b) opens |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. been | 3. easier |
| 2. read | |

6. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

2. Kafr El-Sheikh Zone

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. What colour would you like?
2. What do you think of this?
3. How much does it cost?

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. beautiful | 3. selfies |
| 2. of | 4. recommend |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is that the Decent Life Initiative in Egypt is making a positive impact on rural communities by providing better public services.

2. The Decent Life Initiative aims to improve the quality of public services, including healthcare, education and job opportunities.

3. The Decent Life Initiative is important for children because it is providing better education by building schools in villages and ensuring clean water for their overall well-being.

B) 4. d) rural

5. b) receive

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. d) dream | 3. a) do |
| 2. c) ever | 4. d) has |

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more expensive
2. disappointed
3. are

6. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

3. Damietta Zone

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. What's the matter?
2. What is the problem?
3. Because I don't have the instructions leaflet.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. voluntary | 3. local |
| 2. elderly | 4. spare |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. Yes, I think fridges are an important invention because they help us to keep food cool and safe.
2. In the past, people used ice or snow underground to keep food cool, and John Gorrie invented an ice-making machine in 1842 to help patients with yellow fever.
3. The ice machine was invented in 1842.
- B)** 4. **c)** use less energy
5. **a)** quick and calm

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** sleepless 3. **b)** surveys
2. **a)** necklace 4. **d)** outdoors

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. to meet 3. either
2. are building

6. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

4. Assiut Zone

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I have.
2. Which country did you go to?
3. Yes, I did.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. website 3. was
2. delivery 4. good

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- A)** 1. I can read books when I am alone or have free time.
2. Reading is useful and important because it widens the scope of knowledge, helps find new ideas and information, and allows for better decision-making.

3. I can read a book in the shade of a tree in a garden or field, or at a public library.

B) 4. b) Many

5. a) reading a book

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) both

3. c) lodger

2. a) botanical

4. a) had to

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. on

3. better

2. leaves

6. Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

Left to students.

(3) Inclusive Exams

Exam 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

1. a) I want to buy a camera

2. b) How much is it

3. c) Can I see a cheaper one

4. d) I'll take it

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

1. d) all of them

4. b) prize

2. c) parents

5. d) well

3. a) The best mother

6. b) proud

in the world

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sailor

4. d) astro-

2. a) Recycling

5. b) winner

3. d) festival

6. d) local

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) playing

4. a) rang

2. a) be

5. b) yet

3. d) do

6. c) could

5. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

1. (d)

3. (b)

2. (a)

4. (c)

Exam 2

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

1. **d)** I am reading a story
2. **b)** What's it called
3. **a)** Yes, it is
4. **c)** Who was it written by

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. c) Cairo | 4. d) winter |
| 2. c) wonderful | 5. b) old |
| 3. a) tourists | 6. c) Hurghada |

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a) ferry | 4. d) failed |
| 2. b) indoor | 5. b) earn |
| 3. a) -ment | 6. d) biography |

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. b) at | 4. c) have had |
| 2. c) best | 5. c) was born |
| 3. c) is meeting | 6. b) was able to |

5. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

c) Yesterday, I went to the zoo.

I arrived there in the morning.

I bought a ticket and saw animals.

I went back home in the evening.